



## Safeguard for Privileged Sessions On Demand Hosted

### REST API Reference Guide

**Copyright 2022 One Identity LLC.**

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.**

This guide contains proprietary information protected by copyright. The software described in this guide is furnished under a software license or nondisclosure agreement. This software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the applicable agreement. No part of this guide may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of One Identity LLC .

The information in this document is provided in connection with One Identity products. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property right is granted by this document or in connection with the sale of One Identity LLC products. EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS AS SPECIFIED IN THE LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR THIS PRODUCT, ONE IDENTITY ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER AND DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTY RELATING TO ITS PRODUCTS INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL ONE IDENTITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE, SPECIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR LOSS OF INFORMATION) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DOCUMENT, EVEN IF ONE IDENTITY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. One Identity makes no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this document and reserves the right to make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time without notice. One Identity does not make any commitment to update the information contained in this document.

If you have any questions regarding your potential use of this material, contact:

One Identity LLC.  
Attn: LEGAL Dept  
4 Polaris Way  
Aliso Viejo, CA 92656

Refer to our Web site (<http://www.OneIdentity.com>) for regional and international office information.

**Patents**

One Identity is proud of our advanced technology. Patents and pending patents may apply to this product. For the most current information about applicable patents for this product, please visit our website at <http://www.OneIdentity.com/legal/patents.aspx>.

**Trademarks**

One Identity and the One Identity logo are trademarks and registered trademarks of One Identity LLC. in the U.S.A. and other countries. For a complete list of One Identity trademarks, please visit our website at [www.OneIdentity.com/legal](http://www.OneIdentity.com/legal). All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

**Legend**

 **WARNING:** A WARNING icon highlights a potential risk of bodily injury or property damage, for which industry-standard safety precautions are advised. This icon is often associated with electrical hazards related to hardware.

 **CAUTION:** A CAUTION icon indicates potential damage to hardware or loss of data if instructions are not followed.

SPSOD REST API Reference Guide  
Updated - 20 April 2022, 07:38  
Version - Hosted

# Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>10</b>
Message format	10
How to configure SPS using REST	14
How to configure SPS using REST: a sample transaction	16
<b>Using the SPS REST API</b>	<b>19</b>
Authenticate to the SPS REST API	19
Authenticate to the SPS REST API using X.509 certificate	22
Retrieve user information	25
Checking the transaction status	28
Open a transaction	29
Commit a transaction	31
Delete a transaction	33
Reviewing the changelog of a transaction	35
Application level error codes	37
Navigating the configuration of SPS	40
Modifying the configuration of SPS	43
Delete an object	43
Create a new object	45
Change an object	49
<b>Basic settings</b>	<b>53</b>
Retrieve basic firmware and host information	53
Listing integrated products with SPS	56
Firmware management	60
Retrieving information about SPS firmware image slots	62
Testing new SPS firmware before upgrade	66
Upgrading SPS to a new firmware	71
Uploading new firmware to SPS	76
Network settings	78
Network configuration options	78
DNS servers	80
Routing between interfaces	83

Naming options .....	86
Network addresses .....	88
Routing table .....	94
Local services of SPS .....	96
Local services: Web login for administrators .....	100
Local services: Web login for users .....	104
Local services: cluster interface .....	109
System backup policy .....	111
Encrypting system backup policy .....	113
Date and time .....	116
Date & time .....	116
NTP servers .....	118
Timezone .....	121
Logs, monitoring and alerts .....	129
Management options .....	129
Web gateway authentication .....	133
Syslog server settings .....	135
Disk fill-up prevention .....	142
Mail settings .....	144
Health monitoring .....	152
SNMP settings .....	155
SNMP traps .....	157
Local services: access for SNMP agents .....	164
Alerting .....	171
System alerts .....	173
Traffic alerts .....	181
Trust stores .....	187
Enabling One Identity Safeguard Remote Access without Starling Join .....	194
Configuring Starling Join .....	198
Retrieving the status of services related to Starling Join/Unjoin .....	203
<b>User management and access control .....</b>	<b>206</b>
User management and access control .....	206
Login settings .....	208
Privileges of usergroups .....	211
Audit data access rules .....	216



Active sessions .....	220
Manage users and usergroups locally on SPS .....	222
Manage usergroups locally on SPS .....	224
Manage users locally on SPS .....	228
Configuring LDAP servers .....	231
Configuring SPS login methods .....	244
<b>Managing SPS .....</b>	<b>256</b>
Troubleshooting options .....	256
Internal certificates .....	259
Passwords stored on SPS .....	262
Private keys stored on SPS .....	267
Private keys generated on SPS .....	271
Certificates stored on SPS .....	287
Local services: enabling SSH access to the SPS host .....	292
Manage the SPS license .....	298
Change contact information .....	302
Splunk integration .....	304
Splunk integration .....	309
Manage SPS clusters .....	315
Promote a SPS node to be the Central Management node in a new cluster .....	318
Join node(s) to the cluster .....	319
Query join status .....	321
Assign a role to a node .....	323
Query nodes .....	324
Query one particular node .....	325
Query the status of all nodes in the cluster .....	326
Query the status of one particular node .....	332
Upload and enable a configuration synchronization plugin .....	338
Disable a configuration synchronization plugin .....	342
Configuration tools in SPS .....	343
Resolving hostnames to IP addresses .....	345
Testing LDAP server connection .....	347
<b>General connection settings .....</b>	<b>354</b>
Channel policy .....	354

Policies .....	360
Archive/Cleanup policy .....	364
Audit policies .....	369
Backup policy .....	378
Real-time content monitoring with Content Policies .....	386
LDAP servers .....	393
Signing CA policies .....	406
Time policy .....	410
Trusted Certificate Authorities .....	413
Local user databases .....	419
User lists .....	425
<b>HTTP connections .....</b>	<b>431</b>
HTTP connections .....	431
HTTP connection policies .....	433
HTTP channels .....	452
HTTP authentication policies .....	453
Global HTTP options .....	460
HTTP settings policies .....	466
Creating custom HTTP error templates .....	473
Uploading a custom logo to your custom HTTP proxy error pages .....	477
<b>Citrix ICA connections .....</b>	<b>481</b>
ICA connections .....	481
ICA connection policies .....	483
ICA channels .....	484
Global ICA options .....	486
ICA settings policies .....	492
<b>MSSQL connections .....</b>	<b>497</b>
Limitations in handling MSSQL connections .....	497
MSSQL connections .....	497
MSSQL connection policies .....	500
MSSQL channels .....	518
MSSQL authentication policies .....	519
Global MSSQL options .....	526
MSSQL settings policies .....	532

<b>RDP connections</b>	<b>538</b>
RDP connections	538
RDP connection policies	540
RDP channels	565
Configuring domain membership	568
Global RDP options	571
RDP settings policies	577
<b>SSH connections</b>	<b>585</b>
SSH connections	585
SSH connection policies	587
SSH channels	611
SSH authentication policies	616
Global SSH options	628
SSH settings policies	634
SSH host keys and certificates	640
<b>Telnet connections</b>	<b>646</b>
Telnet connections	646
Telnet connection policies	648
Telnet channels	668
Telnet authentication policies	669
Global Telnet options	676
Telnet pattern sets	682
<b>VNC connections</b>	<b>686</b>
VNC connections	686
VNC connection policies	688
Global VNC options	689
<b>Search, download, and index sessions</b>	<b>696</b>
Audited sessions	696
Download audit trails	716
Searching in the session database	717
Searching in connection content	733
Generate and retrieve screenshot for content search	736
Session statistics	737
Session histogram	747

Session alerts .....	750
Session events .....	754
Indexing sessions .....	759
Session audit trail downloads .....	762
Local services: configuring the indexer .....	764
Indexer policies .....	772
<b>Reporting .....</b>	<b>780</b>
Reporting .....	780
Reports .....	782
Built-in subchapters .....	792
Pre-defined reports .....	796
Content subchapters .....	801
Custom subchapters .....	809
Connection statistics subchapters .....	814
<b>Health and maintenance .....</b>	<b>821</b>
Monitor appliance health status .....	821
<b>Advanced authentication and authorization .....</b>	<b>824</b>
Usermapping policy .....	824
Plugins .....	829
Upload a plugin .....	831
Delete a plugin .....	833
Check the integrity of a plugin .....	834
Authentication and authorization plugins .....	836
Configuring Authentication and Authorization plugin instances .....	840
Credential store plugins .....	844
Credential stores .....	847
<b>Completing the Welcome Wizard using REST .....</b>	<b>855</b>
Completing the Welcome Wizard using REST .....	855
<b>Enable and configure analytics using REST .....</b>	<b>862</b>
Enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics .....	862
Configure One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics .....	864
<b>About us .....</b>	<b>870</b>
<b>Contacting us .....</b>	<b>871</b>

**Technical support resources ..... 872**

# Introduction

Starting with One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions version 4 F2, certain parts and features of SPS can be configured using a RESTful API (Representational State Transfer Application Programming Interface). The REST server conforms to the [Hypermedia as the Engine of Application State \(HATEOAS\)](#).

The SPS REST API uses JSON over HTTPS. The REST server has a single entry point and all resources are available at paths (URLs) returned in the response for a request sent to the entry point. The only path that is guaranteed not to change is `/api/authentication`. Every other path should be reached by navigating the links returned.

The SPS REST API allows you to create, read, update and delete (CRUD) the configuration resources of SPS.

In this tutorial, all examples are displayed with `curl`, but you can use any other HTTP client. In the examples it is assumed that the REST server is listening on the default HTTP port of SPS (443).

If you receive the "417 - Expectation Failed" error code when using `curl`, use `curl` with the `-http1.0` or the `-H "Expect:"` option.

## Message format

### Response headers

The following headers are included in every response. Other headers are specific to responses to specific requests.

- **Allow:** The SPS REST API allows you to create, read, update and delete (CRUD) the configuration resources of SPS. The value of the header lists the available actions for the resource or object.
- **Content-Language:** The language of the response. Currently only English (en) is supported.
- **Content-Type:** All messages are JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) objects. The SPS REST server sends all REST API responses in `application/json` format.

## Response body

The response body contains JSON objects. These objects always contain a meta field with links to different parts of the REST service. In most cases, the following entries can be found in the meta object. Error messages are returned in the error element.

Element	Type	Description	Notes
meta		Top level element, contains links to different parts of the REST service	
changes	string	Path to the transaction changelog	This value is always <code>/api/transaction/changes</code> . For details, see <a href="#">Reviewing the changelog of a transaction</a> on page 35.
remaining_seconds	integer	Time left until the session times out in seconds	SPS closes idle sessions after a period of inactivity. This value shows the number of seconds left until the timeout. For details on setting the session timeout, see <a href="#">Web interface</a> .
href	string (relative path)	Path of the resource that returned the response. When creating a new object, this is the URL of the created object.	For example, <code>/api/authentication</code>
parent	string (relative path)		
next	string (relative path)	Path of the next sibling of the current resource	For example, <code>/api/configuration</code>
prev	string (relative path)	Path of the previous sibling of the current	

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		resource	
first	string (relative path)	Path of the first sibling of the current resource	
last	string (relative path)	Path of the last sibling of the current resource	
transaction	string (/api/transaction)	The endpoint of the transaction log	For details on how SPS handles transactions, see <a href="#">How to configure SPS using REST</a> on page 14.
items	list of JSON objects	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint	Each object in the list contains a key and a meta object for the endpoint. For example: <div> <pre> {   "meta": {     "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys",     "parent": "/api"   },   "items": [     {       "key": "ssh-rsa-10.10.100.1:22",       "meta": {         "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-rsa-10.10.100.1:22"       }     },     {       "key": "ssh-rsa-10.10.20.35:22",       "meta": {         "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-rsa-10.10.20.35:22"       }     }   ] } </pre> </div>



Element	Type	Description	Notes
			<pre> }, {   "key": "ssh-rsa- 10.40.0.28:22",   "meta": {     "href": "/api/ssh- host-keys/ssh-rsa- 10.40.0.28:22"   } } ] } </pre>

For example:

```

{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api",
    "next": "/api/configuration"
  }
}

```

## Error responses

All error responses are JSON objects with the following keys.

- **meta**: JSON object containing navigation links. For details, see [Message format](#) on page 10.
- **error**: JSON object containing information about the error.

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error		Top level element, contains links to different parts of the REST service	
type	string	The type of the error that occurred	For example, Unauthenticated, or NodeNotFound. For a complete list, see <a href="#">Application level error codes</a> on page 37.
message	string	A textual message that describes the error	For example, Unable to locate the requested path.
details	JSON object	List of additional information about the error (for	For example:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		example, the path where the error occurred)	<pre>"details": {   "path": "no/such/path" }</pre>

The following is a complete error response.

```
{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "path": "password"
    },
    "message": "Syntax error: The given password is too short. Minimum password length: 10",
    "type": "SyntacticError"
  }
},
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/no/such/path",
    "parent": "/api/configuration"
  }
}
```

## How to configure SPS using REST

The SPS REST server uses a transactional model for configuration management.

Certain endpoints require transaction for sending/receiving POST, PUT, GET and so on requests. A transaction creates a "snapshot" of the configuration and will perform all changes on that snapshot. For example, when using transaction in case of a GET request, your requests will be performed on a consistent state of the configuration as opposed to a configuration that might change in the meantime due to user interaction.

The following endpoints require transaction:

- <https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/>
- <https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/cluster/>
- <https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/user/password/>
- <https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/>

Modifying the configuration has the following main steps. The steps are explained in detail in later sections of the tutorial. You find a simple transaction with detailed requests and responses in [How to configure SPS using REST: a sample transaction](#) on page 16.

1. Authenticate on the SPS REST server, and receive a `session_id`. For details, see [Authenticate to the SPS REST API](#) on page 19.
2. Open a transaction. This transaction will collect the changes and modifications you do, compared to the SPS configuration that is active at the time of opening the transaction. It is similar to a shopping cart, where your modifications are the items in the cart. For details, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

Opening a transaction locks the configuration of SPS similarly to accessing SPS from the web interface. At the open transaction stage this step is optional.

3. Change and modify the configuration of SPS as you need. Note that to modify the configuration, you must have the required privileges. For details, see ["Managing user rights and usergroups" in the Administration Guide](#). For details on navigating and modifying the configuration of SPS, see [Navigating the configuration of SPS](#) on page 40 and [Modifying the configuration of SPS](#) on page 43.
4. Commit your transaction to submit your changes to SPS (this is similar to clicking Checkout in a web shop). For details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

If the **Users & Access Control > Settings > Accounting settings > Require commit log** option is selected in the SPS web interface, you must include a commit message (a message object) in the request. This message will be visible on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page of the SPS web interface. Note that on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page, changes performed using the REST API are listed as changes to the **REST server/REST configuration** page.

If you do not want to commit your changes, and would like to restart with the original configuration of SPS, you can simply delete the transaction. This is similar to the rollback transaction in SQL. If your session times out, your transaction is deleted automatically. For details, see [Delete a transaction](#) on page 33.

Note that committing a transaction locks the configuration of SPS similarly to accessing SPS from the web interface. For more information, see ["Multiple users and locking" in the Administration Guide](#).

5. SPS checks and validates the changes in your transaction. If other users have changed the configuration of SPS since you opened the transaction, SPS tries to merge your changes to the current configuration.
6. If your changes are valid, SPS applies them and you have successfully changed the configuration of SPS. Otherwise, the REST server returns an error response.

# How to configure SPS using REST: a sample transaction

This procedure shows a sample transaction with detailed requests and responses. For details on the transaction model, see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14.

1. Authenticate on the SPS REST server, and receive a session\_id.

```
curl --basic --user <username>:<password> --cookie-jar cookies --insecure https://<SPS-IP-address>/api/authentication

Response status: 200
--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api",
    "next": "/api",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---
```

2. Open a transaction.

```
curl --data "" --cookie cookies --insecure -X POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction

Response status: 200
--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---
```

3. Retrieve a resource. The following example shows the resource corresponding to the **Users & Access Control > Settings** page of the SPS web interface.

```
curl --cookie cookies --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/settings

Response status: 200
--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---
{
```

```

"key": "settings",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
  "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
  "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa",
  "previous": null,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
},
"settings": {
  "backend": {
    "cracklib_enabled": false,
    "expiration_days": 0,
    "minimum_password_strength": "good",
    "remember_previous_passwords": 10,
    "selection": "local"
  },
  "method": {
    "selection": "passwd"
  },
  "require_commitlog": false
}
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---

```

4. Change and modify the configuration of SPS as you need. The following example configures SPS to check the password strength of the passwords for users of the SPS web interface.

```

# Body of the PUT request. You can read it from a file, for example,
body.json
{
  "backend": {
    "cracklib_enabled": true,
    "expiration_days": 0,
    "minimum_password_strength": "good",
    "remember_previous_passwords": 10,
    "selection": "local"
  },
  "method": {
    "selection": "passwd"
  },
  "require_commitlog": false
}
# Command to use
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d @body.json --cookie cookies --

```

```
insecure -X PUT https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/settings
```

Response status: 200

--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---
```

5. Commit your transaction to submit your changes to SPS.

```
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d '{"status":
"commit","message": "My commit message"}' --cookie cookies --insecure -X
PUT https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

Response status: 200

--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---
```

If the **Users & Access Control > Settings > Accounting settings > Require commit log** option is selected in the SPS web interface, you must include a commit message (a message object) in the request. This message will be visible on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page of the SPS web interface. Note that on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page, changes performed using the REST API are listed as changes to the **REST server/REST configuration** page.

6. If your changes are valid, SPS applies them and you have successfully changed the configuration of SPS. Otherwise, the REST server returns an error response.

## Using the SPS REST API

The following sections give you a general overview of how the SPS REST API works.

### Authenticate to the SPS REST API

#### Prerequisites:

- The REST server must permit password authentication to the SPS web interface. If only certificate-based authentication is permitted, see [Authenticate to the SPS REST API using X.509 certificate](#) on page 22.

To check the permitted authentication method, query the `/api/authentication/types` endpoint.

- If the `types` field of the response includes the `x509` object, certificate-based authentication is permitted.
- If it includes only the `basic` object, password authentication is permitted.
- If it includes both fields, then certificate-based authentication is permitted for the users, but the `admin` user can authenticate with password as well. Note that in this case, SPS assumes that the `admin` user will authenticate with a password, and expects password-authentication on the `/api/authentication` endpoint. To authenticate with a certificate, use the `/api/authentication?type=x509` endpoint.
- You can access the REST server on the same IP address and port that you use to access the SPS web interface. Note that management (administrator) access must be enabled on the interface. For details on configuring management access, see ["Configuring user and administrator login addresses" in the Administration Guide](#).
- For the user to have full access over the SPS REST API, they must have the **REST server** privilege. The user privileges on the web UI and REST API are synchronized. For example, if the user has the **ICA Control / Connections** privilege then they can access this page on the web UI and also the `/api/configuration/ica/connections` endpoint on the REST API. For details, see ["Modifying group privileges" in the Administration Guide](#).

- Note that the system time of SPS and the client must be synchronized. The authentication cookie is valid for twenty minutes, and both SPS and most REST clients validate this. As a result, if the system time of SPS and the client is significantly different from each other, the authentication seems to be successful, but you will not be able to actually access SPS. (If the session\_id is missing from the cookies file, check the system clocks.)
- Make sure that user credentials are encoded in UTF-8.

## The authentication procedure:

1. To authenticate on the SPS REST server, send a GET request over HTTPS using the basic HTTP authentication method, including your username and password to the /api/authentication resource.
2. If the authentication is successful, the server returns the 200 status code, and a meta object in the response body. Also, the HTTP headers of the response include an HTTP cookie named session\_id. This cookie is used to identify the client in every subsequent HTTP request.
3. For every subsequent request, include the session\_id header with the value of the received session ID. For example:

```
session_id 087658d7e30cdc2552b015dd761b6f7ccb25bbd5
```

4. The authenticated session times out after 20 minutes of inactivity.

Note that the system time of SPS and the client must be synchronized. The authentication cookie is valid for twenty minutes, and both SPS and most REST clients validate this. As a result, if the system time of SPS and the client is significantly different from each other, the authentication seems to be successful, but you will not be able to actually access SPS. (If the session\_id is missing from the cookies file, check the system clocks.)

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/authentication
```

## Headers

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Authorization	Contains the username and password of the user	Required	The string Basic followed by the username:password encoded using the RFC2045-MIME. For example, Basic YWRtaW46YQ==



## Sample request

### Example: Authenticate to the SPS REST server using curl

The following command authenticates on SPS using the curl HTTP client. The `--insecure` option used in the example is used to bypass verifying the certificate of SPS. (Alternatively, you can use the `--cacert` option or the `CURL_CA_BUNDLE` environment variable to specify the Certificate Authority to verify the certificate of SPS. For details, see the [curl man page](#)).

When using the REST API in production environments, make sure to download the CA certificate of SPS from **Basic Settings > Management > SSL certificate > CA X.509 certificate**, and validate the certificate of SPS using this CA certificate, or with the CA certificate you used to sign the **Server X.509 certificate** of SPS.

```
curl --basic --user <username>:<password> --cookie-jar cookies --insecure https://<SPS-IP-address>/api/authentication
```

The cookie containing the session ID is also received (you can display it for example with the `tail -1 cookies` command).

```
localhost FALSE / FALSE 1395325830 session_id  
600dc0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec
```

The following command retrieves the configuration of SPS, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl --cookie cookies --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if the authentication is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{  
  "meta": {  
    "href": "/api",  
    "next": "/api",  
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"  
  }  
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Successful authentication
400	InvalidAuthenticationRequest	Unable to authenticate: no valid credentials found.
401	AuthenticationFailure	Authenticating the user with the given credentials has failed.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the GET method for authentication.

# Authenticate to the SPS REST API using X.509 certificate

## Prerequisites:

- The REST server must permit certificate authentication to the SPS web interface. If only password-based authentication is permitted, see [Authenticate to the SPS REST API](#) on page 19.

To check the permitted authentication method, query the `/api/authentication/types` endpoint.

- If the types field of the response includes the x509 object, certificate-based authentication is permitted.
- If it includes only the basic object, password authentication is permitted.
- If it includes both fields, then certificate-based authentication is permitted for the users, but the admin user can authenticate with password as well. Note that in this case, SPS assumes that the admin user will authenticate with a password, and expects password-authentication on the `/api/authentication` endpoint. To authenticate with a certificate, use the `/api/authentication?type=x509` endpoint.
- You can access the REST server on the same IP address and port that you use to access the SPS web interface. Note that management (administrator) access must be enabled on the interface. For details on configuring management access, see ["Configuring user and administrator login addresses" in the Administration Guide](#).
- For the user to have full access over the SPS REST API, they must have the **REST server** privilege. The user privileges on the web UI and REST API are synchronized. For example, if the user has the **ICA Control / Connections** privilege then they can

access this page on the web UI and also the `/api/configuration/ica/connections` endpoint on the REST API. For details, see ["Modifying group privileges" in the Administration Guide](#).

- Note that the system time of SPS and the client must be synchronized. The authentication cookie is valid for twenty minutes, and both SPS and most REST clients validate this. As a result, if the system time of SPS and the client is significantly different from each other, the authentication seems to be successful, but you will not be able to actually access SPS. (If the `session_id` is missing from the cookies file, check the system clocks.)
- Make sure that user credentials are encoded in UTF-8.

### The authentication procedure:

1. To authenticate on the SPS REST server, send an HTTPS GET request, including your certificate to the `/api/authentication?type=x509` resource. The certificate must be signed by the Trusted CA certificate that is configured on the **Users & Access Control > Settings > X.509 > AUTHENTICATION CA** field of the SPS web interface, or the `/api/configuration/aaa/settings` resource.
2. If the authentication is successful, the server responds with an HTTP 302 redirect to the `/api/` resource, and also , sets an HTTP cookie named `session_id`. This cookie is used to identify the client in every subsequent HTTP request. The response body also includes a meta object.
3. For every subsequent request, include the `session_id` header with the value of the received session ID. For example:

```
session_id 087658d7e30cdc2552b015dd761b6f7ccb25bbd5
```

4. The authenticated session times out after 20 minutes of inactivity.  
Note that the system time of SPS and the client must be synchronized. The authentication cookie is valid for twenty minutes, and both SPS and most REST clients validate this. As a result, if the system time of SPS and the client is significantly different from each other, the authentication seems to be successful, but you will not be able to actually access SPS. (If the `session_id` is missing from the cookies file, check the system clocks.)

### URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/authentication
```

### Headers

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Authorization	Contains the username and	Required	The string Basic followed by the username:password encoded using the

Header name	Description	Required	Values
	password of the user		RFC2045-MIME. For example, Basic YWRtaW46YQ==

## Sample request

### Example: Authenticate to the SPS REST server using curl

The following command authenticates on SPS using the curl HTTP client. The --insecure option used in the example is used to bypass verifying the certificate of SPS. (Alternatively, you can use the --cacert option or the CURL\_CA\_BUNDLE environment variable to specify the Certificate Authority to verify the certificate of SPS. For details, see the [curl man page](#)).

When using the REST API in production environments, make sure to download the CA certificate of SPS from **Basic Settings > Management > SSL certificate > CA X.509 certificate**, and validate the certificate of SPS using this CA certificate, or with the CA certificate you used to sign the **Server X.509 certificate** of SPS.

```
curl --basic --user <username>:<password> --cookie-jar cookies --insecure https://<SPS-IP-address>/api/authentication
```

The cookie containing the session ID is also received (you can display it for example with the tail -1 cookies command).

```
localhost FALSE / FALSE 1395325830 session_id
600dc0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec0ffec
```

The following command retrieves the configuration of SPS, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl --cookie cookies --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if the authentication is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api",
    "next": "/api",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
302	OK	Successful authentication. If the authentication is successful, the server returns the 302 status code, and a meta object in the response body. Also, the HTTP headers of the response include an HTTP cookie named <code>session_id</code> . This cookie is used to identify the client in every subsequent HTTP request. The Location header in the response is <code>/api/</code> .
400	InvalidAuthenticationRequest	Unable to authenticate: no valid credentials found. SPS returns this message if password fallback is enabled for the admin user, but the admin tries to authenticate with a certificate on the <code>/api/authentication</code> endpoint. To authenticate with a certificate, use the <code>/api/authentication?type=x509</code> endpoint.
401	AuthenticationFailure	Authenticating the user with the given credentials has failed.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the GET method for authentication.

## Retrieve user information

You can check the endpoints and methods that a particular user is authorized to access.

### Prerequisites:

- The user must be logged in.

## URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/user_info
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command retrieves user information from SPS about the logged in user, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/user_info
```

This information is also available on the /api/user/info and /api/userinfo endpoints.

## Response

The following is a sample response received if the request to retrieve user information is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "user": {
    "name": "admin",
  }
  "endpoints": [
    {
      "methods": [
        "DELETE",
        "GET",
        "POST",
        "PUT"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    ],
    "url": "/api"
  },
  {
    "...": "..."
  }
],
"meta": {
  "href": "/api/user_info",
  "...": "..."
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
user		Top-level element, contains the details of the user whose access rights information has been retrieved.
name	string	The username of the logged-in user whose information has been retrieved.
endpoints		Top-level element, contains the details of the endpoints that the user is authorized to access.
methods	string	The methods that user is authorized to use, and the permitted HTTP method (for example, GET, POST) for each endpoint. This information is also available on the /api/endpoints endpoint.
url	string	The resource that the user is authorized to access.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	User information has been retrieved successfully.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

# Checking the transaction status

Before changing anything in the configuration of SPS, you must POST a request to open a transaction.

- For details about the transaction model of SPS see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14.
- To check the configuration changes you made in the transaction, see [Reviewing the changelog of a transaction](#) on page 35.

## URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction/
```

## Sample request

The following command retrieves the transaction status of SPS, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if opening the transaction is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "transaction",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  },
  "transaction": {
    "status": "closed"
  }
}
```



Element	Type	Description
transaction		Top level element, contains the details of the current transaction
	status	string
		The status of the current transaction. By default, or after a successful commit it is closed. After successfully opening a transaction, it is open

## Open a transaction

The REST API of SPS manages the changes of the configuration in transaction. You can open a transaction with a POST request, but the first change of the configuration will open the transaction automatically. For details about the transaction model of SPS see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14.

### URL

```
POST https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### POST body

Note that you must:

- either send an empty body in the POST request,
- or include a Content-Length: 0 header.

Otherwise the SPS REST server returns a 411 - Length Required error.

## Sample request

The following command opens a new transaction on SPS, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl -X POST --data "" --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if opening the transaction is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
```

After opening a transaction successfully, the transaction status changes to open.

```
{
  "body": {
    "commit_message": "optional|required"
    "status": "open"
  },
  "key": "transaction",
  "meta": {
    "changes": "/api/transaction/changes",
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Transaction opened successfully.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires author-

Code	Description	Notes
		ization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the POST method to open a transaction.
409	WebGuiOrRpcApiConfigInProgress	The configuration of SPS is locked. Opening a new transaction is not allowed while another user is modifying configuration through interfaces other than the REST API. For example, web GUI, console, and so on.
411	UnsupportedMethod	You must send a body (which can be empty) in this POST request, otherwise the SPS REST server returns a 411 - Length Required error.

## Commit a transaction

To submit your changes to SPS, you have to commit the transaction by using a PUT request with a JSON object. For details about the transaction model of SPS, see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14.

Note that committing a transaction locks the configuration of SPS similarly to accessing SPS from the web interface. For more information, see ["Multiple users and locking" in the Administration Guide](#).

### URL

```
PUT https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## PUT body

The PUT request must include the following JSON object in its body.

```
{
  "status": "commit"
}
```

If the **Users & Access Control > Settings > Accounting settings > Require commit log** option is selected in the SPS web interface, you must include a commit message (a message object) in the request. This message will be visible on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page of the SPS web interface. Note that on the **Users & Access Control > Configuration History** page, changes performed using the REST API are listed as changes to the **REST server/REST configuration** page.

```
{
  "status": "commit",
  "message": "My commit message"
}
```

## Sample request

The following command commits a transaction to SPS, using the session ID received during the authentication.

```
curl -d '{"status": "commit","message": "My commit message"}' --cookie cookies -X PUT https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if committing the transaction is successful.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

After a successful commit, the transaction status changes to `closed`. To make other changes, you have to open a new transaction.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  },
  "key": "transaction",
  "transaction": {
    "status": "closed"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Transaction committed successfully.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the PUT method to commit a transaction.

## Delete a transaction

To delete your changes, you have to delete the transaction. This is similar to the rollback transaction in SQL. For details about the transaction model of SPS, see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14. Deleting the transaction also deletes the configuration lock of SPS.

## URL

```
DELETE https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command deletes a transaction, reverting the configuration to the state it was in when the transaction was opened, or to the current configuration available on SPS (if another user has modified it since you opened the transaction).

```
curl --cookie cookies -X DELETE https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received if deleting the transaction is successful. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Transaction deleted successfully.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the DELETE method to reset a transaction.

## Reviewing the changelog of a transaction

To review your changes, retrieve the changelog of the transaction. For details about the transaction model of SPS, see [How to configure SPS using REST](#) on page 14.

### URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction/changes
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command retrieves the changelog of the transaction.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/transaction/changes
```

## Response

The response contains the list of changes performed in the transaction, as list of JSON objects. Every change has a type and a path, other elements depend on the type of the transaction. For example, when you delete an object, the changelog includes the deleted object in the `old_value` field.

Element	Type	Description
<code>new_order</code>	list	The new order of a list after the change. This field is available for reorder transactions.
<code>new_value</code>	string or JSON object	The value of the object after the change. For example, the new value of a parameter.
<code>old_order</code>	string or JSON object	The order of a list before the change. This field is available for reorder transactions.
<code>old_value</code>	string or JSON object	The value of the object before the change. For example, the value of a deleted object.
<code>path</code>	string	Path of the changed endpoint or object.
<code>type</code>	string	The type of the change. One of: create, delete, reorder, replace

The following is a sample response received if the changelog is empty.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction/changes",
    "parent": "/api/transaction",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "changes": []
}
```

The following is a sample changelog received after deleting a Channel policy.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction/changes",
    "parent": "/api/transaction",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```



```

    },
    "changes": [
      {
        "old_value": {
          "name": "deny",
          "rules": []
        },
        "path": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/94615110156697e93121f3",
        "type": "delete"
      }
    ]
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Transaction changelog has been retrieved successfully.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
405	MethodNotAllowed	You tried using an unsupported HTTP method. Use the GET method to retrieve the changelog a transaction.

## Application level error codes

In addition to the standard HTTP status codes, in certain cases, the SPS REST server provides additional information in the response about the error. The following table contains a brief description of such errors. For more details, see the error object in the response body.

Code	Description	Notes
400	InvalidRequestBody	The request body sent by the user has an invalid format. This may be an error with the encoding or the body is not a properly encoded JSON value.
400	ConfigTreeNotAvailable	An error occurred while preparing the configuration tree for the REST API.
400	SyntacticError	A value to be set is not accepted syntactically. The details section contains the path that was found to be invalid.
400	InvalidPath	The path provided by the client contains a syntax error. Path components are restricted to contain only lowercase alphanumeric characters, the dash (-) and the underscore (_) characters. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
400	SemanticError	The configuration contains semantic errors, inconsistencies or other problems that would put the system into an unreliable state if the configuration had been applied. The details section contains the errors that were found in the configuration.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
401	AuthenticationFailure	Authenticating the user with the given credentials has failed.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NodeNotFound	The requested endpoint does not exist in the configuration. The details section contains the path that you tried to access, but could not be retrieved.

Code	Description	Notes
404	NodeNotAvailable	The requested endpoint exists in the configuration, however, it is not available directly. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that you tried to access, but could not be retrieved.
405	MethodNotAllowed	An attempt was made to change a configuration subtree in an unsupported way. The method <code>&lt;method&gt;</code> is not allowed for this node.
409	MidAirCollisionSemanticError	This error occurs when the configuration has been changed by another client between starting and committing a transaction, and the changes in the transaction would interfere semantically with the changes of that other user. The recommended strategy to resolve this error is to review the changes made in the failing transaction, then roll it back, start a new transaction, redo the changes, and finally, commit the new transaction.
409	WebGuiOrRpcApiConfigInProgress	The configuration of SPS is locked. Opening a new transaction is not allowed while another user is modifying configuration through interfaces other than the REST API. For example, web GUI, console, and so on.
409	MidAirCollision	This error occurs when the configuration has been changed by another client between starting and committing a transaction, and the changes in the transaction would overwrite or interfere with the changes of that other user. The recommended strategy to resolve this error is to review the changes made in the failing transaction, then roll it back, start a new transaction, redo the changes, and finally, commit the new transaction.
409	NoTransaction	An attempt was made to change the configuration when no transaction was open.
409	DoubleTransaction	This error is returned when the client attempts to open a transaction while

Code	Description	Notes
		another transaction of that client is already started.
417	Expectation Failed	If you receive the "417 - Expectation Failed" error code when using curl, use curl with the --http1.0 or the -H "Expect:" option.
500	CommitMessageMissing	This error is returned when a commit message is required for committing a transaction, but it was not provided in the commit request.
500	TransactionCommitError	Unexpected internal errors during committing a transaction are interpreted as TransactionCommitError.
500	AuthorizationError	The request could not be authorized due to an unexpected internal error.

## Navigating the configuration of SPS

The main starting point of navigating the SPS configuration using REST is the `https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration` endpoint. If you query this endpoint, the response contains a list of other endpoints that you can follow to list the various resources of SPS, or to list the objects of a specific resource. For example, `https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp` lists resources related to controlling the Remote Desktop (RDP) protocol, while `https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies` lists the available RDP Channel Policies.

Note that when you want to create an object that references another object (for example, a Channel Policy that uses a Content Policy), then the referenced object (in this case, the Content Policy) must already exist. For details, see [Create a new object](#) on page 45.

To modify or delete an object, you need the ID of the object. For details, see [Change an object](#) on page 49 and [Delete an object](#) on page 43.

The following is a sample command to query the `https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration` endpoint, and a sample response.

```
curl --cookie cookies https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration
```

```
Response status: 200
--- BEGIN RESPONSE BODY ---
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration",
```

```

    "href": "/api/configuration",
    "last": "/api/configuration",
    "next": null,
    "parent": null,
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "aaa",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "alerting",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/alerting"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "datetime",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/datetime"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "http",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "ica",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "local_services",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/local_services"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "management",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management"
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

```

    }
  },
  {
    "key": "network",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/network"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "passwords",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/passwords"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "plugins",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/plugins"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "policies",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/policies"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "private_keys",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/private_keys"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "rdp",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/rdp"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "reporting",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/reporting"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "ssh",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/ssh"
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  },
  {
    "key": "telnet",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/telnet"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "troubleshooting",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/troubleshooting"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "trust_stores",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/trust_stores"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "vnc",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/vnc"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "x509",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/x509"
    }
  }
]
}
--- END RESPONSE BODY ---

```

## Modifying the configuration of SPS

The following sections describe deleting, creating and changing objects.

### Delete an object

To delete a configuration object (for example, a policy), use a DELETE request with the ID of the object as the key.

- You cannot delete policies or objects that are used in other policies (for example, you cannot delete a Time policy that is used in a Channel policy).
- To delete an element of a list (for example, a user from a local user database), use a PUT request. The body the request should include the entire object, but remove the element you want to delete from the related list of the object.
- You cannot delete built-in policies that are available on SPS by default.
- You must commit your changes to take effect. For details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## URL

```
DELETE https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<endpoint>/<object-id>
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command deletes an RDP Channel policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies -X DELETE -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received.



```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/-20100",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<id-of-the-deleted-object>",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<id-of-the-deleted-object>",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/655555",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	The resource was successfully deleted.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
409	Conflict	No open Transaction is available. Open a transaction before using this request. For details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> .

## Create a new object

To create a new object (for example, a new policy), complete the following steps.

1. Authenticate and open a transaction.
2. Post the new object as a JSON object to the appropriate resource URL.
3. If successful, the REST server creates an ID for the new object, and returns it in the key field of the response.
4. Commit the transaction.

Note the following points when you create a request:

- Note that you cannot simply use the JSON from the response of a similar object. If the object contains references to other resources (for example, a Channel policy references a Time policy), then the JSON object contains an embedded meta object. To get a valid JSON that you can use, you have to replace this embedded object with the ID (key) of the referenced object. For example, the following is a reference to a Time policy:

```
"time_policy": {
  "key": "-100",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/-100"
  }
}
```

In a POST or PUT request, you have to change it to the following:

```
"time_policy": "-100",
```

Starting with version 6.1.0, when querying a list of objects, the API response includes the body of the referenced objects as well, not only its reference key, but only if they are immediate child nodes.

- You have to include empty fields in the object as well, for example:

```
"users": [
  { "certificates": [], "passwords": [ "<reference-to-password>" ], "public_keys": [], "username": "myusername" }
]
```

- The API ignores any unrecognized or nonexistent keys that appear in the body of POST and PUT requests. For example, if you mistype the name of an optional key, it will be silently ignored.
- The body wrapper that is displayed in the response is not needed when you create or modify an object, for example:

```
{
  "name": "my-local-user-database",
  "users": [
    { "certificates": [], "passwords": [ "<reference-to-password>" ], "public_keys": [], "username": "myusername" }
  ]
}
```

## URL

POST `https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<path-to-the-parent-resource>`

**Table 1: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

### Sample request

The following command creates a new RDP Channel policy. The data content of the request is read from the file `body.json`

```
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d @body.json --cookie session_id=1aca4793549c6f22aecd98bc1047d1bf32dd76ef -X POST https://<object-id>/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/
```

For a simple RDP Channel policy that uses the default settings and allows only the Drawing channel, the JSON object is the following.

```
{
  "name": "drawing-only",
  "rules": [
    {
      "actions": {
        "audit": true,
        "content_policy": null,
        "four_eyes": false,
        "ids": false
      },
      "allowed_for": {
        "clients": [],
        "gateway_groups": [],
        "remote_groups": [],
        "servers": [],
        "time_policy": "-100"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    },
    "channel": "#drawing"
  }
]
}

```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Content policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "key": "f79bcc85-bb8b-4fa5-a141-eb4cf2b6ef33",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/f79bcc85-bb8b-4fa5-a141-eb4cf2b6ef33",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	Bad Request	The request body format is invalid. The data is not a properly formatted JSON object.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
409	Conflict	No open Transaction is available. Open a transaction before using this request. For details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> on page 29.

Code	Description	Notes
417	Expectation Failed	If you receive the "417 - Expectation Failed" error code when using curl, use curl with the --http1.0 or the -H "Expect:" option.

## Change an object

To modify or update an object, use a PUT request on the object you want to change. In the body of the request, you have to upload the entire object, not only the parameter that you want to change.

To delete an element of a list (for example, a user from a local user database), use a PUT request. The body the request should include the entire object, but remove the element you want to delete from the related list of the object.

Note the following points when you create a request:

- Note that you cannot simply use the JSON from the response of a similar object. If the object contains references to other resources (for example, a Channel policy references a Time policy), then the JSON object contains an embedded meta object. To get a valid JSON that you can use, you have to replace this embedded object with the ID (key) of the referenced object. For example, the following is a reference to a Time policy:

```
"time_policy": {
  "key": "-100",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/-
100"
  }
}
```

In a POST or PUT request, you have to change it to the following:

```
"time_policy": "-100",
```

Starting with version 6.1.0, when querying a list of objects, the API response includes the body of the referenced objects as well, not only its reference key, but only if they are immediate child nodes.

- You have to include empty fields in the object as well, for example:

```
"users": [
  { "certificates": [], "passwords": [ "<reference-to-
password>" ], "public_keys": [], "username": "myusername" }
]
```

- The API ignores any unrecognized or nonexistent keys that appear in the body of POST and PUT requests. For example, if you mistype the name of an optional key, it will be silently ignored.
- The body wrapper that is displayed in the response is not needed when you create or modify an object, for example:

```
{
  "name": "my-local-user-database",
  "users": [
    { "certificates": [], "passwords": [ "<reference-to-password>" ], "public_keys": [], "username": "myusername" }
  ]
}
```

## URL

PUT https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<path-to-the-parent-resource>/<id-of-the-object-to-modify>

**Table 2: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

## Sample request

The following command updates an RDP Channel policy. The data content of the request is read from the file body.json.

```
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d @body.json --cookie session_id=07640a0bf14cdd361d8f5ae2b0b482a786c7a604 -X PUT https://10.40.255.17/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<id-of-the-object-to-modify>
```

For a simple RDP Channel policy that uses the default settings and allows only the Drawing channel, the JSON object is the following.

```
{
  "name": "drawing-only",
  "rules": [
    {
      "actions": {
        "audit": true,
        "content_policy": null,
        "four_eyes": false,
        "ids": false
      },
      "allowed_for": {
        "clients": [],
        "gateway_groups": [],
        "remote_groups": [],
        "servers": [],
        "time_policy": "-100"
      },
      "channel": "#drawing"
    }
  ]
}
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/-20100",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<id-of-the-modified-object>",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/<id-of-the-modified-object>",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/655555",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created..
400	Bad Request	The request body format is invalid. The data is not a properly formatted JSON object.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
409	Conflict	No open Transaction is available. Open a transaction before using this request. For details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> on page 29.
417	Expectation Failed	If you receive the "417 - Expectation Failed" error code when using curl, use curl with the --http1.0 or the -H "Expect:" option.



## Basic settings

### Retrieve basic firmware and host information

The `/api/info` endpoint contains generic information about the SPS host. Note that part of this information is available without authentication.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/info
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command displays the information about SPS that is available without authentication.

```
curl https://10.40.255.171/api/info
```

The following command displays the information about SPS that is available for authenticated users.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/info
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received by an anonymous user.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "domainname": "example",
    "hostname": "scbwriter",
    "nickname": null,
    "plugin_sdk_version": {
      "feature": "1.4",
      "full": "1.4.4"
    },
    "support_link": "mailto:scb-administrator@example.com"
  },
  "key": "about_info",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/info",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
```

The following is a sample response received by an authenticated user.

```
{
  "body": {
    "analytics_enabled": false,
    "build_date": "2018-06-15T20:18:40+00:00",
    "config_hash": "2abde4c81d9b544bf53fae4f4b9657fc",
    "domainname": "example",
    "firmware_version": "5.7.0",
    "hostname": "scbwriter",
    "nickname": null,
    "plugin_sdk_version": {
      "feature": "1.4",
      "full": "1.4.4"
    },
    "roles": [
      "central-management",
      "search-master"
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    ],
    "support_link": "mailto:scb-administrator@example.com",
    "version": "5 F7"
  },
  "key": "about_info",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/info",
    "remaining_seconds": 9889
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}

```

Element	Description
analytics_enabled	Indicates whether or not the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics module has been enabled.
build_date	Build date of the SPS firmware. This element is included in the response only for authenticated users.
config_hash	Contains the hash of the XML database running on the given SPS host.
domainname	Name of the domain used on the network. You can configure this parameter on the <code>/api/configuration/network/naming</code> endpoint. For details, see <a href="#">Naming options</a> on page 86.
hostname	Name of the machine running SPS. You can configure this parameter on the <code>/api/configuration/network/naming</code> endpoint. For details, see <a href="#">Naming options</a> on page 86.
nickname	The nickname of the SPS host. Use it to distinguish the devices. It is displayed in the core and boot login shells. You can configure this parameter on the <code>/api/configuration/network/naming</code> endpoint. For details, see <a href="#">Naming options</a> on page 86.
plugin_sdk_version	The version number of the Plugin SDK. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The value of <code>feature</code> represents the feature release version.</li> <li>• The value of <code>full</code> represents the minor release version.</li> </ul>
support_link	The e-mail address of the SPS administrator, as set in the <code>admin_address</code> parameter of the <code>/api/configuration/management/email</code> endpoint. For details, see <a href="#">Mail settings</a> on page 144.
firmware_version	The version number of the firmware running on SPS, for

Element	Description
	example, 4.3.2a. This element is included in the response only for authenticated users.
version	The name of the major release running on SPS, for example, 4 F3. This element is included in the response only for authenticated users.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

# Listing integrated products with SPS

List basic information about products that are integrated with One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS).

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/integrated_products
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example,

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	user		<p>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the /integrated\_products endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Retrieving information about products integrated with SPS	GET	/api/integrated_products	<p>When SPS is joined to One Identity Starling, but One Identity Starling is not available, you will receive the following warning message:</p> <div> <p>Information about the integrated Starling products cannot be retrieved. Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Starling cloud service is available.</li> <li>- Your SPS appliance is connected to the Internet.</li> </ul> </div> <p>When your credentials to access One Identity Starling are invalid, you will receive the following warning message:</p> <div> <p>The credentials used</p> </div>

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
			for accessing Starling are invalid. This may happen because SPS was un-joined from Starling and restored to a previous joined state. Re-join the SPS to get valid credentials.

## Sample request

The following command lists products that are integrated with SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/integrated_products
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when SPS is joined with One Identity Starling, but not with any other products integrated with the One Identity Starling platform.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "name": "Defender",
      "link": null,
      "activated": false
    },
    {
      "name": "Connect",
      "link": null,
      "activated": false
    },
    {
      "name": "Governance",
      "link": null,
      "activated": false
    },
    {
      "name": "RemoteAccess",
      "link": null,

```

```

    "activated": false
  }
]
}

```

The following is a sample response received when SPS is joined with SPP.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "name": "Safeguard for Privileged Passwords",
      "activated": true,
      "link": "https://10.10.10.10"
    }
  ]
}

```

The following is a sample response received when SPS is joined with One Identity Starling, and it is integrated with certain One Identity Starling products.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "name": "Defender",
      "link": "https://2fa.cloud.oneidentity.com",
      "activated": true
    },
    {
      "name": "Connect",
      "link": "https://connect.cloud.oneidentity.com",
      "activated": true
    },
    {
      "name": "Governance",
      "link": null,
      "activated": false
    }
  ]
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
items	object array	A list of One Identity Starling products	When there are no products integrated with

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		that are integrated SPS.	SPS, the items field returns empty: <pre>{   "items": [] }</pre>
items.name	string	The name of the integrated One Identity Starling product.	
items.link	format (uri)	The URL of the integrated One Identity Starling product.	If the product is not integrated, the value of the link parameter will be null.
items.activated	boolean	Indicates whether the product is integrated with SPS or not.	Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true - the product is integrated with SPS</li> <li>• false - the product is not integrated with SPS</li> </ul>

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Firmware management

A list of endpoints managing SPS firmware images.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists management configuration endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when firmware-related configuration endpoints are listed.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "slots",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/slots"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "test",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/test"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "upgrade",
```

```

    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/firmware/upgrade"
    }
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware",
    "parent": "/api",
    "slots": "/api/firmware/slots",
    "test": "/api/firmware/test",
    "upgrade": "/api/firmware/upgrade"
  }
}

```

Endpoints	Description
<a href="#">slots</a>	Retrieve information about SPS firmware images maintained on the device in locations called slots.
<a href="#">test</a>	Use the /firmware/test endpoint as a precheck tool to trigger an upgrade test without an actual upgrade.
<a href="#">upgrade</a>	Use the /firmware/upgrade endpoint to upgrade SPS to a new firmware.
<a href="#">upload</a>	Use the /upload/firmware endpoint to upload new firmware to SPS.

### HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Retrieving information about SPS firmware image slots

Retrieve information about SPS firmware images maintained on the device in locations called slots.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/slots
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the /firmware/slots endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Retrieving information from firmware image slots	GET	/api/firmware/slots	
Retrieving information from a specific firmware image slot	GET	/api/firmware/slots/<slot_id>	Example: /api/firmware/slots/1
Deleting a firmware image slot	DELETE	/api/firmware/slots/<slot_id>	<b>NOTE:</b> Deleting the current of after reboot firmware is not allowed.

## Sample request

The following command lists all available firmware image slots.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/slots
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when available firmware image slots are listed. .

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "body": {
        "after_reboot": false,
        "current": true,
        "upgrade_news": null,
        "upgrade_notes": "some notes",
        "version": "6.5.0"
      },
      "key": "1",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/slots/1"
      }
    },
    {
      "body": {
        "after_reboot": true,
        "current": false,
        "upgrade_news": null,
        "upgrade_notes": "some notes",
        "version": "6.6.0"
      },
      "key": "2",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/slots/2"
      }
    },
    {
      "body": {},
      "key": "3",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/slots/3"
      }
    },
    {
      "body": {
        "after_reboot": false,
        "current": false,
        "upgrade_news": null,
        "upgrade_notes": "some notes",
        "version": "6.7.0"
      },
    },
  ]
}
```

```

        "key": "4",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/firmware/slots/4"
        }
    },
    {
        "body": {},
        "key": "5",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/firmware/slots/5"
        }
    }
],
"meta": {
    "current_slot": "/api/firmware/slots/1",
    "href": "/api/firmware/slots",
    "number_of_empty_slots": 2,
    "parent": "/api/firmware",
    "slot_after_reboot": "/api/firmware/slots/2"
}
}

```

The following is a sample response received when a specific firmware image slot is listed.

```

{
    "body": {
        "after_reboot": false,
        "current": true,
        "upgrade_news": null,
        "upgrade_notes": "some notes",
        "version": "6.5.0"
    },
    "key": "1",
    "meta": {
        "href": "/api/firmware/slots/1",
        "parent": "/api/firmware/slots"
    }
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
after_reboot	boolean	This flag shows that the firmware is selected to be the active firmware	Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true - the</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		after upgrade.	firmware is the active firmware after upgrade <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• false - the firmware is not the active firmware after upgrade</li> </ul>
current	boolean	Indicates whether the firmware is active.	Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true - the current firmware is the latest version</li> <li>• false - the current firmware is not the latest version</li> </ul>
upgrade_news	string	Displays SPS Upgrade Notes that is relevant to the current firmware.	If there is no such information available, the value will be null.
upgrade_notes	string	The content of the SPS Upgrade Notes.	
version	number	The version number of that specific SPS firmware image.	

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Testing new SPS firmware before upgrade

Use the `/firmware/test` endpoint as a precheck tool to trigger an upgrade test without an actual upgrade. The test reveals whether the current state of SPS is compatible with the new firmware. Possible areas where errors can occur:

- version compatibility - the new firmware is compatible with the upgrade policy
- storage space - there is enough free storage space for the upgrade?
- configuration compatibility - the current configuration settings are supported in the

new firmware

- whether or not there are manually modified files on the firmware (tainted firmware)

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/test
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the /firmware/test endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Testing new SPS firmware before upgrade	POST	/api/firmware/test	

## Sample request

The following command triggers a firmware upgrade test.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/test --data '{"slot_id": <slot_id>}'
```

**NOTE:** You require a payload first, from which you choose the firmware you want to test.

## Response

There can be three possible outcomes:

- the upgrade was successful:

```
{ "body": "...", "key": <slot_id> }
```

- the upgrade was not successful due to invalid input
  - the slot\_id is missing from the payload

```
{ "error": { "type": "IncompleteRequestBodyError" } }
```

- the tested firmware slot is empty

```
{ "error": { "type": "ResourceNotFound" } }
```

- the upgrade was not successful due to an error:

```
{ "error": { "type": "FirmwareTestFailed" } }
```

The following is a sample response received when the upgrade test was successful. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "test_summary": "HA check started\nHA check finished" },
  "key": "1",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/test",
    "parent": "/api/firmware",
    "slot": "/api/firmware/slots/1",
    "upgrade": "/api/firmware/upgrade"
  }
}
```

The following is a sample response received when the upgrade test was not successful, because the firmware slot is empty.

```
{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "mount_point": "/firmware/test",
      "resource": "3"
    },
    "message": "Resource was not found",
    "type": "ResourceNotFound"
  },
  "meta": {
```



```

    "href": "/api/firmware/test",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.mount_point	string	The reference point - in this case a URL path - at which details of the error can be accessed.	This is a fix value: <code>/firmware/test</code>
error.details.resource	number	The identifier of the firmware image slot.	
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

The following is a sample response received when the upgrade test was not successful, because the slot\_id is missing from the payload.

```

{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "missing_paths": [
        "slot_id"
      ]
    },
    "message": "Some paths were missing from the request body",
    "type": "IncompleteRequestBodyError"
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/test",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.missing_paths	array	A list of missing URL path parameters.	In this case, there can be only one value here, which is slot_id.
error.details.missing_paths.slot_id		The identifier of the firmware image slot.	
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

The following is a sample response received when the upgrade test was not successful, because an error was found during testing.

```
{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "exit_code": 1,
      "test_summary": "HA check started\nHA check failed"
    },
    "message": "The firmware test failed",
    "type": "FirmwareTestFailed"
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/test",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.exit_code	number		Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 - the firmware test passed successfully</li> <li>1 - the firmware test failed</li> </ul>
error.details.test_	string	The summary of the	For example:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
summary		upgrade test in free text format.	HA check started, HA check failed
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Upgrading SPS to a new firmware

Use the /firmware/upgrade endpoint to upgrade SPS to a new firmware.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/upgrade
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the /firmware/upgrade endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Upgrading SPS to a new firmware	POST	/api/firmware/upgrade	

## Sample request

The following command upgrades SPS to a new firmware.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/firmware/upgrade --data '
{"slot_id": <slot_id>, "message": "... | null}'
```

**NOTE:** The value of message can be null, if require\_commit\_log is disabled. If require\_commit\_log is enabled, then message is filled.

## Response

There can be three possible outcomes:

- the upgrade was successful:

```
{"body": "...", "key": <slot_id>}
```

- the upgrade was not successful due to invalid input
  - the slot\_id is missing from the payload

```
{"error": {"type": "IncompleteRequestBodyError"}}
```

- the tested firmware slot is empty

```
{"error": {"type": "ResourceNotFound"}}
```

- the upgrade was not successful due to an error:

```
{"error": {"type": "FirmwareTestFailed"}}
```

The following is a sample response received when a SPS is upgraded to a new firmware.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body":
    { "test_summary": "HA check started\nHA check finished" },
  "key": "1",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/upgrade",
```

```

    "parent": "/api/firmware",
    "slot": "/api/firmware/slots/1"
  }
}

```

The following is a sample response received when a firmware upgrade is attempted on an empty slot.

```

{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "mount_point": "/firmware/upgrade",
      "resource": "3"
    },
    "message": "Resource was not found",
    "type": "ResourceNotFound"
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/upgrade",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.mount_point	string	The reference point - in this case a URL path - at which details of the error can be accessed.	This is a fix value: <code>/firmware/upgrade</code>
error.details.resource	number	The identifier of the firmware image slot.	
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

The following is a sample response received when message is missing from the request body during upgrade.

```
{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "missing_paths": [
        "message"
      ]
    },
    "message": "Some paths were missing from the request body",
    "type": "IncompleteRequestBodyError"
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/firmware/upgrade",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.missing_paths	array	A list of missing URL path parameters.	In this case, there can be only one value here, which is message.
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

The following is a sample response received when the firmware test fails during upgrade.

```
{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "exit_code": 1,
      "test_summary": "HA check started\nHA check failed"
    },
    "message": "The firmware test failed",
    "type": "FirmwareTestFailed"
  },
  "meta": {
```

```

    "href": "/api/firmware/upgrade",
    "parent": "/api/firmware"
  }
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
error.details	object		
error.details.exit_code	number		Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 -the firmware test passed successfully</li> <li>• 1 - the firmware test failed</li> </ul>
error.details.test_summary	string	The summary of the upgrade test in free text format.	For example: HA check started, HA check failed
error.message	string	The content of the error message.	
error.type	string	The type of the error message.	

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	UpgradeMessageMissing	The upgrade request did not contain a message. Adding a message is required.

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Uploading new firmware to SPS

Use the `/upload/firmware` endpoint to upload new firmware to SPS.

## URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/firmware
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the `/upload/firmware` endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Uploading SPS firmware images	POST	<code>/api/upload/firmware</code>	The <b>enctype</b> attribute of the POST request must be <code>multipart/form-data</code> .

## Sample request

The following command uploads a new firmware to SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/firmware --form firmware=@<sps.iso>
```



Where <sps.iso> is the path of the new firmware.

## Response

The following is a sample response received when a new firmware image is uploaded.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "after_reboot": true,
    "current": false,
    "upgrade_news": null,
    "upgrade_notes": "some notes",
    "version": "6.6.0"
  },
  "key": "2",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/upload/firmware",
    "slot": "/api/firmware/slots/2",
    "test": "/api/firmware/test",
    "upgrade": "/api/firmware/upgrade",
    "number_of_empty_slots": 2
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
after_reboot	boolean	This flag shows that the firmware is selected to be the active firmware after upgrade.	In this particular case, the value of <b>after_reboot</b> will always be false, as the firmware has not yet been chosen for upgrade.
current	boolean	Indicates whether the firmware is active.	Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• true - the current firmware is the latest version</li><li>• false - the current firmware is not the latest version</li></ul>
upgrade_news	string	Displays SPS Upgrade Notes that is relevant to the current firmware.	If there is no such information available, the value will be null.

Element	Type	Description	Notes
upgrade_notes	string	The content of the SPS Upgrade Notes for that firmware image.	
version	number	The version number of that specific SPS firmware image.	

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Network settings

## Network configuration options

Contains the endpoints for configuring networking on SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists network configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing network configuration options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "dns",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/dns"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "ip_forwarding_rule_pairs",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "naming",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/naming"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "nics",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "routing",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/routing"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
  }
}
```

```

    "next": "/api/configuration/passwords",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Description
<a href="#">dns</a>	The address of the primary and secondary DNS server.
<a href="#">ip_forwarding_rule_pairs</a>	Rules for routing between the network interfaces.
<a href="#">naming</a>	DNS search domain, hostname, and appliance nickname settings.
<a href="#">nics</a>	References the endpoints of the three physical network interfaces.
<a href="#">routing</a>	Routing table. Defines the address of the gateway server for each configured subnet.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## DNS servers

Contains the address of the primary and secondary DNS server.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/dns
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the configured DNS servers.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/dns
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configured DNS servers.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "primary": "192.168.56.1",
    "secondary": null
  },
  "key": "dns",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
    "last": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/network",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoints.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the addresses of the DNS servers.
primary	string	The IP address of the primary DNS server.
secondary	string	The address of the secondary DNS server.

## Modify the address of the DNS servers

To modify the address of a DNS server, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/dns` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Routing between interfaces

Configures routing between network interfaces. To use an interface in single-interface router mode, configure both `interface_a` and `interface_b` elements to reference that same interface.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists interface routing rules.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing interface routing rules.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": [
    {
      "interface_a": {
        "key": "nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001",
        "meta": {
          "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1/interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001"
        }
      },
      "interface_b": {
        "key": "nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001",
        "meta": {
          "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1/interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "ip_forwarding_rule_pairs",
      "meta": {
        "first": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
        "href": "/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs",
        "last": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
        "next": "/api/configuration/network/naming",
        "parent": "/api/configuration/network",
        "previous": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
        "transaction": "/api/transaction"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (list)	Contains the rules for routing between the network interfaces.
interface_a	string	References the identifier of the network interface. You can configure network interfaces at the <a href="/api/configuration/network/nics/">/api/configuration/network/nics/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add a network interface, use the value of the returned key as the value of the interface_a element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
interface_b	string	References the identifier of the network interface. You can configure network interfaces at the



Element	Type	Description
		<a href="#">/api/configuration/network/nics/</a> endpoint. To modify or add a network interface, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>interface_b</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).

## Add a rule for routing between the network interfaces

To add a rule, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new list of rules.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new rule.

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a rule for routing between the network interfaces

To modify a rule, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the list of rules.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Naming options

Contains the settings for the DNS search domain, hostname, and appliance nickname.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/naming
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the naming settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/naming
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing naming settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "domainname": "example",
    "hostname": "api-docs",
    "nickname": null
  },
  "key": "naming",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network/naming",
    "last": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network/nics",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/network",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/network/ip_forwarding_rule_pairs",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the naming settings.
domainname	string	The domain name of the network.
hostname	string	The hostname of SPS.
nickname	string	The nickname for the appliance. Use this name to distinguish between multiple SPS appliances on the network. This name is visible in the boot and core login shells.

## Modify a name

To modify a name, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/naming` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Network addresses

Contains the network addresses configured for each physical NIC.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/nics
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints for the physical network interfaces.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/nics/
```

The following commands retrieve the properties of a specific physical network interface.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1
```

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2
```

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic3
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing physical network interfaces. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "nic1",
      "meta": {
```

```

        "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1"
    },
    {
        "key": "nic2",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "nic3",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic3"
        }
    }
],
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics",
    "last": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/network",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/network/naming",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific physical network interface, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "interfaces": {
      "@order": ["ff7574025754b3df1647001"],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "198.51.100.123/24",
          "6001481625b7c21ef97598": "2001:db8:1234::5678/48",
          "@order": ["1", "6001481625b7c21ef97598"]
        },
        "mtu": 1500,
        "name": "external",
        "source_based_routes": [
          {
            "gateway": "198.51.100.1",
            "target_network": "203.0.113.0/24"
          },
          {
            "gateway": "2001:db8:1234::1",

```

```

        "target_network": "2001:db8:aaaa::/48"
      }
    ],
    "vlantag": 0
  }
},
"name": "eth0",
"speed": "auto"
},
"key": "nic1",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
  "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
  "last": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic3",
  "next": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/network/nics",
  "previous": null,
  "remaining_seconds": 10800,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the physical network interface (nic1, nic2 or nic3).
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the physical network interface.
<a href="#">interfaces</a>	Top level item	Contains the configuration of all virtual interfaces on the physical NIC.
name	string	The system name of the physical network interface (eth0, eth1 or eth2). Do not change this value.
speed	string	<p>The speed of the physical network interface. The default value is auto. Change this setting only for troubleshooting purposes. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• auto Negotiate the network speed automatically. This is the default value.</li> <li>• 10-half 10BaseT/Half.</li> <li>• 100-half 100BaseT/Half.</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10-full 10BaseT/Full.</li> <li>100-full 100BaseT/Full.</li> <li>1000-full 1000BaseT/Full.</li> </ul>

Elements of interfaces	Type	Description
@order	list	Lists the keys of the interfaces in the order they are displayed on the SPS web UI.
<key-of-an-interface>	string	<p>Contains the addresses, name, and vlantag of the network interface.</p> <p>Each physical NIC has an automatically created interface key, where the value of the vlanid element is set to 0.</p> <p>To add a valid virtual network interface to the physical NIC, create an additional interface, and assign a value between 1 and 4094 to its vlanid element.</p>
addresses	string	Contains the addresses of the interface, and their display order.
<key-of-address>	string	Contains the IP address range.
@order	list	Lists the keys of the addresses in the order they are displayed on the SPS web UI.
mtu	integer	Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) to set per network interface (VLAN or network interface card). Default value: 1500
name	string	The name of the interface, as displayed on the SPS web UI.
source_	list	Contains details of the network



Elements of interfaces	Type	Description
	based_routes	routing rule specific to packets coming out of this particular interface.
	vlanid	The ID of the interface. For the physical interface, the value is 0. For virtual interfaces, the value is between 1 and 4094.
		<b>⚠ CAUTION:</b> Do not set the VLAN ID unless your network environment is already configured to use this VLAN. Otherwise, your SPS appliance will be unavailable using this interface.

Elements of source_based_routes	Type	Description
gateway	string	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the gateway used to access the network set in this routing rule.
target_network	string	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the host or network accessible via this routing rule.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but

Code	Description	Notes
		could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Routing table

Contains the address of the gateway server for each configured subnet.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/routing
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the configured subnets and the corresponding gateway servers.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/routing
```

### Response

The following is a sample response received when viewing the routing table.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": [
    {
      "gateway": "192.168.56.1",
      "target_network": "0.0.0.0/0"
    }
  ],
  "key": "routing",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/network/dns",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "last": "/api/configuration/network/routing",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/network",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/network/nics",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (list)	Contains the routing table.
gateway	string	The IP address of the gateway server.
target_network	string	The network id (IP address and subnet mask) of the subnet.

## Add a subnet

To add a subnet, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new routing table.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/network/routing` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify the routing table

To modify the routing table, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the routing table.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/netowrk/routing` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Local services of SPS

Contains the endpoints for configuring the local services of SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the local services.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing local services.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "admin_web",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "analytics",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/analytics"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "cluster",
      "meta": {
```

```

        "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/cluster"
    },
    {
        "key": "indexer",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "postgresql",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/postgresql"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "snmp_agent",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/snmp_agent"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "ssh",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/ssh"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "user_web",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web"
        }
    }
],
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ica",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Description
<a href="#">admin_web</a>	Web login for administrators and users: On this address, users can,

Element	Description
	depending on their access privileges, modify the configuration of SPS, and perform authentication-related activities (gateway authentication, 4-eyes authorization).
<a href="#">analytics</a>	Enables One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics.  To enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics and analyze the behavior of your users, One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) requires a special license. Also, depending on the number of your users and sessions, the performance and sizing of SPS must be considered. If you are interested in One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, <a href="#">contact our Sales Team</a> , or your One Identity representative. For details on One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see the <a href="#">One Identity One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics website</a> . For details on enabling One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see <a href="#">Safeguard for Privileged Analytics Configuration Guide</a> .
<a href="#">cluster</a>	Configure the cluster service of SPS.
<a href="#">indexer</a>	Configure the indexer services of SPS, including remote indexing.
<a href="#">postgresql</a>	Configure direct remote access to the connection database of SPS.
<a href="#">snmp_agent</a>	Configure the SNMP server of SPS.
<a href="#">ssh</a>	Configure remote SSH access to SPS.
<a href="#">user_web</a>	Web login for users only: The configuration of SPS cannot be viewed or altered from this address. Users (even ones with administrator privileges) can only perform gateway authentication and 4-eyes authorization.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Local services: Web login for administrators

The SPS administrators and users can, depending on their access privileges, modify the configuration of SPS, and perform authentication-related activities (gateway authentication, 4-eyes authorization). On this endpoint you can configure on which interfaces can the administrators access SPS, and optionally restrict the access to these interfaces.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.



```
{
  "body": {
    "access_restriction": {
      "allowed_from": [
        "10.40.0.0/16"
      ],
      "enabled": true
    },
    "listen": [
      {
        "address": {
          "key":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
          "meta": {
            "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/address
es/1"
          }
        },
        "http_port": 80,
        "https_port": 443
      }
    ],
    "key": "admin_web",
    "meta": {
      "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
      "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
      "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
      "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
      "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
      "previous": null,
      "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the SPS web interface.
access_	JSON	Enables and configures limitations on the clients that can

Element	Type	Description
restriction	object	access the web interface, based on the IP address of the clients.
allow ed_ from	list	The list of IP networks from where the administrators are permitted to access this management interface. To specify the IP addresses or networks, use the IPv4-Address/prefix format, for example, 10.40.0.0/16.
enabled	boolean	Set it to true to restrict access to the specified client addresses.
bruteforce_ protection	boolean	Enables protection against brute-force attacks by denying access after failed login attempts for increasingly longer period. Enabled by default.
listen	list	Selects the network interface, IP address, and port where the clients can access the web interface.
addresses	JSON object	A reference to a configured network interface and IP address where this local service accepts connections. For example, if querying the interface /api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/ returns the following response:

```
{
  "body": {
    "interfaces": {
      "@order": [
        "ff7574025754b3df1647001"
      ],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "10.40.255.171/24",
          "@order": [
            "1"
          ]
        },
        "name": "default",
        "vlantag": 0
      }
    },
    "name": "eth0",
    "speed": "auto"
  },
}
```

Element	Type	Description
---------	------	-------------

```

    "key": "nic1",
    "meta": {
      "first": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic1",
      "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
      "last": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic3",
      "next":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
      "parent": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics",
      "previous": null,
      "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
  }
}

```

Then the listening address of the local service is the following.

```
nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1
```

This is the format you have to use when configuring the address of the local service using REST:

```

"address": "nic1.in-
terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1"

```

When querying a local services endpoint, the response will contain a reference to the IP address of the interface in the following format:

```

"address": {
  "key": "nic1.in-
terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/-
config-
uration/net-
work/n-
ics/n-
ic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"
  }
},

```

Element	Type	Description
http_port	integer	The port number where SPS accepts HTTP connections. Note that SPS automatically redirects connections from this port to the HTTPS port set in https_port.
https_port	integer	The port number where SPS accepts HTTPS connections.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Local services: Web login for users

The SPS users can perform authentication-related activities (gateway authentication, 4-eyes authorization). On this endpoint you can configure on which interfaces can the users access SPS, and optionally restrict the access to these interfaces.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/user_web
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/user_web
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "access_restriction": {
      "allowed_from": [
        "10.40.0.0/16"
      ],
      "enabled": true
    },
    "listen": [
      {
        "address": {
          "key":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
          "meta": {
            "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

        }
      },
      "http_port": 80,
      "https_port": 443
    }
  ]
},
"key": "user_web",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
  "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
  "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
  "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
  "previous": null,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the SPS web interface.
access_restriction	JSON object	Enables and configures limitations on the clients that can access the web interface, based on the IP address of the clients.
allow_ed_from	list	The list of IP networks from where the administrators are permitted to access this management interface. To specify the IP addresses or networks, use the IPv4-Address/prefix format, for example, 10.40.0.0/16.
enabled	boolean	Set it to true to restrict access to the specified client addresses.
bruteforce_protection	boolean	Enables protection against brute-force attacks by denying access after failed login attempts for increasingly longer period. Enabled by default.
listen	list	Selects the network interface, IP address, and port where the clients can access the web interface.

Element	Type	Description
addresses	JSON object	A reference to a configured network interface and IP address where this local service accepts connections. For example, if querying the interface <code>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/</code> returns the following response:

```
{
  "body": {
    "interfaces": {
      "@order": [
        "ff7574025754b3df1647001"
      ],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "10.40.255.171/24",
          "@order": [
            "1"
          ]
        },
        "name": "default",
        "vlantag": 0
      }
    },
    "name": "eth0",
    "speed": "auto"
  },
  "key": "nic1",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/-configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "href": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "last": "/api/-configuration/network/nics/nic3",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
    "parent": "/api/-configuration/network/nics",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Then the listening address of the local service is the following.

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1</pre> <p>This is the format you have to use when configuring the address of the local service using REST:</p> <pre>"address": "nic1.in- terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1"</pre> <p>When querying a local services endpoint, the response will contain a reference to the IP address of the interface in the following format:</p> <pre>"address": {   "key": "nic1.in- terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",   "meta": {     "href": "/api/- config- uration/net- work/n- ics/n- ic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"   } },</pre>
http_port	integer	The port number where SPS accepts HTTP connections. Note that SPS automatically redirects connections from this port to the HTTPS port set in https_port.
https_port	integer	The port number where SPS accepts HTTPS connections.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.



Code	Description	Notes
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Local services: cluster interface

To enable cluster management, enable the cluster interface on all nodes that you want to be part of your One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) cluster. Complete the following steps on each node of the cluster.

**NOTE:** All nodes in a cluster must run the same version of SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/cluster
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/cluster
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "enabled": true,
    "listen_address": {
      "key":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.2553887595ce3ca7f1eae4",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/2553887595ce3ca7f1eae4"
      }
    },
    "key": "cluster",
    "meta": {
      "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
      "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/cluster",
      "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
      "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
      "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
      "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/analytics",
      "remaining_seconds": 600,
      "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	By default, this option is set to false. Set it to true to enable the cluster interface.
listen_address	Top level element (string)	Contains the key of the network interface that is used as the cluster interface.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## System backup policy

System backup uses a backup policy to create a snapshot of the configuration of One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) to a remote backup server. For details on how backup policies work, see ["Data and configuration backups" in the Administration Guide](#). For details on configuring a backup policy using the REST API, see [Backup policy](#). To encrypt the backup, see [Encrypting system backup policy](#).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/system_backup
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the system backup settings of SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/system_backup
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the endpoints for date and time settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "backup_policy": "<key-to-a-backup-policy>"
  },
  "key": "system_backup",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/system_backup",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/universal_siem_forwarder",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/syslog",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Description
backup_policy	Contains the ID of the backup policy to use for system backups. For details on configuring a backup policy using the REST API, see <a href="#">Backup policy</a> .

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path

Code	Description	Notes
		that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Encrypting system backup policy

System backup uses a backup policy to create a snapshot of the configuration of One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) to a remote backup server. For details on how backup policies work, see ["Data and configuration backups" in the Administration Guide](#). For details on configuring a backup policy using the REST API, see [Backup policy](#). This section describes how to create encrypted system backups.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/management/exported_configuration_encryption
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the system backup settings of SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/exported_configuration_encryption
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the endpoints for date and time settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "encryption": {
      "enabled": true,
      "gpg_public_key": {
        "fingerprint":
"2F2E3967EDAD2F288E54EE8693B99C4F545B7670",
        "public_key": "-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
\nmQGNBF3rnZ0BDADHdz5/kCkr17T8w861AGGXdGK/lwxunTCx6tfhSsFREWmKjhfr\nYTLNxsodALXt
AphHeNAeUWwXjYDJelAlMVcDrVtLp7Ht8tqnmNt2NWUSmfFIF3ga\nD10sH2UjT5Xt6XAjKvFfWeHSxk
S0QHICLfUT5WDoUcTEsR8jEdj80A7Z6.....

CT1WwbMg5VoXQ3Rpp8evcUTzy3+ra/GosCSaFSrE31pyXkULB9+EAU7W\n23YDiM21csIaqX+XDGMex5
Hq4PMh07cqSMYB\n=j20J\n-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----\n",
        "uids": [
          "Demo User <example@oneidentity.com>"
        ]
      }
    }
  },
  "key": "exported_configuration_encryption",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/exported_configuration_
encryption",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/email",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Elements of encryption	Description
encryption	Defines encryption settings for system backups.
enable	When set to True, enables encryption of the system backups. Enabling encryption requires setting the <code>gpg_public_key</code> option.
gpg_public_key	Contains the fingerprint, public_key, and the list of uids of the GPG public key used to encrypt system backups. For example:
	<pre> "gpg_public_key": {   "fingerprint": "2F2E3967EDAD2F288E54EE8693B99C4F545B7670",   "public_key": "-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK----- \nmQGNBF3rnZ0BDADHdz5/kCkr17T8w861AGGXdGK/1- wxunTCx6tf- hSsFREWmKjh- fr\nYTLNxs- odALXtAphHeNAeUWwXjYDJelAlMVcDrVtLp7Ht8tqn- mNt2NWUSm- fFIF3ga\nD10sH2UjT5Xt6XAjKvFfWeHSxkS0QHicLfUT5WDoUcTEsR8jEd- j80A7Z6hKyF29g\...  R40Niv4Ge6aYneDp- k3yTBco6bBYDR7NKA70REXCfqcYCeYB121UQ\n- bb5aTZAaW8D8IRmy- bxpRxRAaHZX0apBgDLKwWf48kL0n0C907hgcyY1spZgTGz7i\nTryx1B1/CT1Ww-</pre>

Elements of encryption	Description
------------------------	-------------

```
bMg5VoXQ3Rp-
p8evcUTzy3+ra/GosCSaFSrE31pyXkULB9+EAU7W\n23YDiM21c-
sIaqX+XDGMex5Hq4PMh07cqSMYB\n=j20J\n-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK---
--\n",
  "uids": [
    "Demo User <example@oneidentity.com>"
  ]
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Date and time

## Date & time

Contains the endpoints for configuring date and time on SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists endpoints for configuring date and time settings on SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the endpoints for date and time settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "ntp_servers",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "timezone",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/datetime/timezone"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
```

```
"href": "/api/configuration/datetime",
"last": "/api/configuration/x509",
"next": "/api/configuration/http",
"parent": "/api/configuration",
"previous": "/api/configuration/alerting",
"transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}
```

Element	Description
<a href="#">ntp_servers</a>	NTP server addresses.
<a href="#">timezone</a>	Timezone settings.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## NTP servers

This endpoint contains NTP server addresses.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists NTP server addresses.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing NTP server addresses.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": [
    {
      "selection": "fqdn",
      "value": "pool.ntp.org"
    }
  ],
  "key": "ntp_servers",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers",
    "href": "/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers",
    "last": "/api/configuration/datetime/timezone",
    "next": "/api/configuration/datetime/timezone",
  }
}
```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/datetime",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (list)	Contains the list of NTP server addresses.
selection	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fqdn The NTP server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>• ip The NTP server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
value	string	The address of the NTP server.

## Add an NTP server

To add an NTP server's address, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new NTP server address list.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an NTP server address

To modify an NTP server's address, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the NTP server address list.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Timezone

Configures the time zone.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/timezone
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command displays the configured time zone.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/timezone
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the configured time zone.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": "America/New_York",
  "key": "timezone",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers",
    "href": "/api/configuration/datetime/timezone",
    "last": "/api/configuration/datetime/timezone",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/datetime",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/datetime/ntp_servers",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	string	Contains the configured time zone. Possible values are:

```

Africa/Abidjan
Africa/Accra
Africa/Addis_Ababa
Africa/Algiers
Africa/Asmara
Africa/Asmera
Africa/Bamako
Africa/Bangui
Africa/Banjul
Africa/Bissau
Africa/Blantyre
Africa/Brazzaville
Africa/Bujumbura
Africa/Cairo

```

Element	Type	Description
		Africa/Casablanca Africa/Ceuta Africa/Conakry Africa/Dakar Africa/Dar_es_Salaam Africa/Djibouti Africa/Douala Africa/El_Aaiun Africa/Freetown Africa/Gaborone Africa/Harare Africa/Johannesburg Africa/Kampala Africa/Khartoum Africa/Kigali Africa/Kinshasa Africa/Lagos Africa/Libreville



Element	Type	Description
		t Africa/Ouagadougou Africa/Porto-Novo Africa/Sao_Tome Africa/Timbuktu Africa/Tripoli Africa/Tunis Africa/Windhoek America/Adak America/Anchorage America/Anguilla America/Antigua America/Araguaina America/Argentina/Buenos_Aires America/Argentina/Catamarca America/Argentina/ComodRivadavia America/Argentina/Cordoba America/Argentina/Jujuy America/Argentina/La_Rioja America/Argentina/Mendoza

Element	Type	Description
		America/El_Salvador America/Ensenada America/Fort_Wayne America/Fortaleza America/Glace_Bay America/Godthab America/Goose_Bay America/Grand_Turk America/Grenada America/Guadeloupe America/Guatemala America/Guayaquil America/Guyana America/Halifax America/Havana America/Hermosillo America/Indiana/Indianapolis America/Indiana/Knox America/Indiana/Marengo America/Indiana/Petersburg America/Indiana/Tell_City America/Indiana/Vevay America/Indiana/Vincennes

Element	Type	Description
		a/Baghdad Asia/Bahrain Asia/Baku Asia/Bangkok Asia/Beirut Asia/Bishkek Asia/Brunei Asia/Calcutta Asia/Choibalsan Asia/Chongqing Asia/Chungking Asia/Colombo Asia/Dacca Asia/Damascus Asia/Dhaka Asia/Dili Asia/Dubai Asia/Dushanbe Asia/Gaza Asia/Harbin Asia/Hong_Kong Asia/Hovd Asia/Irkutsk Asia/Istanbul Asia/Jakarta Asia/Jayapura Asia/Jerusalem Asia/Kabul Asia/Kamchatka Asia/Karachi Asia/Kashgar

Element	Type	Description

## Modify the time zone

To modify time zone, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the body element.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/datetime/timezone` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available time zone values listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Logs, monitoring and alerts

## Management options

Contains the configuration endpoints for managing SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists management configuration endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management
```

### Response

The following is a sample response received when listing management endpoints.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "certificates",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/certificates"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "disk_fillup_prevention",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "email",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/email"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "exported_configuration_encryption",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/exported_configuration_
encryption"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "health_monitoring",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "license",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/license"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "root_password",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/root_password"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "snmp",
      "meta": {

```

```

        "href": "/api/configuration/management/snmp"
    },
    {
        "key": "splunk_forwarder",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "support_info",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/support_info"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "syslog",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/syslog"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "system_backup",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/system_backup"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "universal_siem_forwarder",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/universal_siem_forwarder"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "webinterface",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "web_gateway_authentication",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/management/web_gateway_authentication"
        }
    }
],
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management",

```

```

    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Endpoints	Description
<a href="#">certificates</a>	References the certificates of SPS's internal Certificate Authority, Timestamping Authority, and the SSL certificate of the web interface.
<a href="#">disk_fillup_prevention</a>	Disk fill-up prevention.
<a href="#">email</a>	SMTP server address and authentication, administrator e-mail, and e-mail addresses for alerts and reports.
<a href="#">exported_configuration_encryption</a>	SMTP server address and authentication, administrator e-mail, and e-mail addresses for alerts and reports.
<a href="#">health_monitoring</a>	Configuration settings for monitoring the utilization of SPS.
<a href="#">snmp</a>	SNMP settings.
<a href="#">syslog</a>	Syslog server address and authentication.
<a href="#">webinterface</a>	Configuration settings for the SPS web interface.
<a href="#">web_gateway_authentication</a>	Configuration of the banner on the login screen before web gateway authentication.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section



Code	Description	Notes
		contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Web gateway authentication

Use the `/web_gateway_authentication` endpoint to configure the banner on the login screen before web gateway authentication in order to make users aware of being audited before logging in, or that they are accessing a government website, and so on.

### URL

```
PUT https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/web_gateway_authentication
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

Operations with the `/web_gateway_authentication` endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL
Configuring the web gateway authentication banner	PUT	<code>/api/configure/management/web_gateway_authentication</code>
Querying the web gateway authentication banner	GET	<code>/api/configure/management/web_gateway_authentication</code>

## Sample request

The following command configures the web gateway authentication banner.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/web_gateway_authentication
```

## Response

The following is a sample response when the configured web gateway authentication banner is queried.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "web_gateway_authentication",
  "body": {
    "auto_assign": false,
    "banner": {
      "enabled": true,
      "text": "Web gateway\nBANNER"
    }
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	object	Top level element.
body.auto_assign	boolean	Enable auto-assign to permit your users to authenticate on the SPS web interface once, and open sessions without repeating the gateway authentication.
body.banner	object	Top level element.
body.banner.enabled	boolean	Shows whether the banner is enabled or not.
body.banner.text	string	The text of the banner.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	InvalidRequestBody	The request body sent by the user has an invalid format. This may be an error with the encoding or the body is not a properly encoded JSON value.
400	SemanticError	The configuration contains semantic errors, inconsistencies or other problems that would put the system into an unreliable state if the configuration had been applied. The details section contains the errors that were found in the configuration.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

## Syslog server settings

SPS can send its system log messages to remote syslog servers, for example, syslog-ng Premium Edition, syslog-ng Store Box, Splunk, or HPE ArcSight Data Platform.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/syslog
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connec-

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			tion between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the syslog server settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/syslog
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing syslog server settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "certificates": {
      "ca": "<ca-cert>",
      "client": {
        "key": "191725ec-b71b-47ab-9e87-561a5d9e2bb7",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/x509/191725ec-b71b-47ab-9e87-561a5d9e2bb7"
        }
      }
    },
    "include_node_id": true,
    "receivers": [
      {
        "address": {
          "selection": "ip",
          "value": "10.20.30.40"
        },
        "port": 514,
        "protocol": {
          "ip_protocol": "tcp",
          "protocol_type": "legacy-bsd",
          "tls_enabled": false
        }
      }
    ],
    "server_key_check": "optional-trusted"
  }
}
```

```

    },
    "key": "syslog",
    "meta": {
      "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
      "href": "/api/configuration/management/syslog",
      "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
      "next": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
      "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
      "previous": "/api/configuration/management/snmp",
      "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the syslog server configuration settings.
certificates	Top level item	Contains the certificates of the client (SPS), and the certificate of the CA.
ca	string	The CA certificate of the Certificate Authority. Configure this option if the value of the <code>tls_enabled</code> element is set to true.
client	string	<p>Configure this option if the value of the <code>tls_enabled</code> element is set to true, and the syslog server requires mutual authentication. Otherwise, set its value to null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the client's (SPS's) X.509 certificate. You can configure certificates at the <a href="/api/configuration/x509/">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>x509_identity</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
include_node_id	boolean	Set to true to display separate hostnames for syslog messages sent by the nodes of a SPS HA cluster.

Element	Type	Description
		The node ID included in the hostname filed of the syslog message is the MAC address of the node's HA interface. Messages of the core firmware are always sent by the master node.
<code>receivers</code>	Top level list	Contains the addresses of the syslog servers.
<code>server_key_check</code>	string	<p>Configures validating the syslog server's certificate with the CA. The following values are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>optional-trusted</code> If the server sends a certificate, SPS checks if it is valid (not expired) and that the Common Name of the certificate contains the domain name or the IP address of the server. If these checks fail, SPS rejects the connection. However, SPS accepts the connection if the server does not send a certificate.</li> <li><code>optional-untrusted</code> SPS accepts any certificate shown by the server.</li> <li><code>required-trusted</code> SPS verifies the certificate shown by the server.</li> <li><code>required-untrusted</code> SPS requests a certificate from the server, and rejects the connection if no certificate is received, if the certificate is not valid (expired), or if the Common Name of the certificate does not contain the domain name or the IP address of the server.</li> </ul>

Elements of receivers	Type	Description
<code>address</code>	Top level item	Contains the address of the syslog server.
<code>selection</code>	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name).

Elements of receivers	Type	Description
		<p>Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fqdn The server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>• ip The server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
value	string	The address of the syslog server, corresponding to the format set in the selection field.
port	int	The port of the syslog server.
protocol	Top level item	Contains the syslog protocol settings.
ip_protocol	string	<p>Configures the IP protocol. The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tcp TCP protocol.</li> <li>• udp UDP protocol.</li> </ul>
protocol_type	string	<p>Configures the syslog protocol. The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• legacy-bsd BSD-syslog protocol.</li> <li>• syslog IETF-syslog protocol.</li> </ul>
tls_enabled	string	<p>Set to true to enable TLS encryption.</p> <p>If TLS is enabled, the value of the ca and client elements cannot be null.</p>

### Examples:

Default settings: no external syslog servers.

```
{
  "certificates": {
    "ca": null,
    "client": null
  },
  "include_node_id": true,
  "receivers": [],
  "server_key_check": "optional-untrusted"
}
```

## Upload CA certificates

SPS uses only the key part of the CA certificate.

You can choose to upload a single certificate or a certificate chain.

To use a certificate with the SPS API, remove all data, and substitute line breaks with \n. The same is true for a certificate chain: copy individual certificates one after the other, and substitute line breaks with \n.

The following is an example certificate, as used on the SPS web interface:

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDnDCCAAoQCCQDc536Ob5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC
Q0ExEDAOBgNVBAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBACTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT
B0JhbGFiZXQxZjAUBGNVBAsTDURvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi
aXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxhYm10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
MDAYNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAYNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRAdGgYDVQZIEwDP
bnRhcmlvMRAdGgYDVQZIEwDUB3JvbnRvMRAdGgYDVQZIEwDQYwXhYm10MRYwFAYD
VQZLEw1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAdGgYDVQZIEwDQYwXhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN
AQkBFhFjYXRhaWxAYmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBAAOGa9I2jmV1vdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS
59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kVIv0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4diKU5voqepfNMCawEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjRxa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy
0jqE+nmoVD31DytIOxCfQvZh11tcB5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoWS6RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8W1PZc03oV11/Fzo7mt
qYyyD11d890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

The same certificate, as accepted by the SPS API:



```
"certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIDnDCCAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBJzELMAkGA1UEBhMC\nQ0ExEDAOBgNV
BAgTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBAcTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT\nB0JhbGFiZXQxZjAUBgNVBAcTDU
RvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFiZXQxZDAEAgkqhkiG9w0BCQEW
EWNhdGFpbiYwXh
Ym10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2\nMDAyN1oXDTE3MDQyMjE2MDAyNlowY8xCzA
JBgNVBAYTAkNBMRAdG
YDVQQIEwdP\nbnRhcmlvMRAdGyDVQQHEwdUbj3JvbnRvMRAdGyDVQQKEwdCYWxh
Ym10MRYwFAYD\nnVQ
QLEw1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAdGyDVQQDEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN\nnAQkBFhFjYXRhaWwA
YmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC\nnAQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7a
hTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8okOSD+nV74ZFUuiS\nn59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAU0ILJW4rAIoxDY
6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw\nn0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2
oSobPc\nn3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArD16WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs\nnX5kVIv
0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX\nnhJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4di
KU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA\nnR5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh
6El+DFnQpDjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP\nnAB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57
IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy\nn0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcB5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjpfoVG7X
DB\nnuNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc\nnN5+4ImYnFN
xSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oV11/Fzo7mt\nnqYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
```

## Modify syslog server settings

To modify the syslog server settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/syslog` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Disk fill-up prevention

Contains the configuration options for preventing disk fill-up.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists disk fill-up prevention options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing disk fill-up prevention settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "archiving_enabled": false,
    "enabled": true,
    "used_space_ratio_limit": 80
  },
  "key": "disk_fillup_prevention",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/email",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration settings for disk fill-up prevention.
archiving_enabled	boolean	Set to true to automatically start all configured archiving/cleanup jobs when disk usage goes over the value of the <code>used_space_ratio_limit</code> element.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable disk fill-up prevention.
used_space_ratio_limit	int	Disk utilization limit, in percent. When used disk space reaches this limit, SPS disconnects all clients. Set to 0 to turn the feature off.

## Modify disk fill-up prevention settings

To modify the disk fill-up prevention settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the disk fill-up configuration endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Mail settings

Configuration settings for SMTP server address and authentication, administrator e-mail, and e-mail addresses for alerts and reports.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/email
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format).

## Sample request

The following command lists mail settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/email
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing mail settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "admin_address": "<admin-email>",
    "alerting_address": "<alerts-target-email>",
    "reporting_address": "<reports-target-email>",
    "sender_address": null,
    "smtp_auth": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "smtp_encryption": {
      "selection": "disabled"
    },
    "smtp_server": {
      "selection": "ip",
      "value": "<smtp-server-ip>"
    }
  }
},
```

```

"key": "email",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
  "href": "/api/configuration/management/email",
  "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
  "next": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options for e-mail.
admin_address	string	The e-mail address of the administrator of SPS.
alerting_address	string	The e-mail address where monitoring alerts are sent.
reporting_address	string	The e-mail address where traffic reports are sent.
sender_address	string	The address of the sender (SPS).
smtp_auth	Top level item	Configures authentication to the SMTP server.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable authenticating to the SMTP server.
password	string	References the password of the authenticating user. You configure passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
username	string	The username for authenticating to the SMTP server.

Element	Type	Description
<a href="#">smtp_encryption</a>	Top level item	Configuration settings for encrypting the communication between SPS and the SMTP server.
smtp_server	Top level item	Contains the address of the SMTP server.
selection	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The SMTP server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip The SMTP server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
value	string	The address of the SMTP server.
Elements of smtp_encryption		Description
client_authentication	Top level item	Configures authenticating as a client with an X.509 certificate. Can only be enabled if the value of the selection element is set to starttls.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable authenticating as a client with an X.509 certificate. Can only be enabled if the value of the selection element of smtp_encryption is set to starttls.
x509_identity		References the identifier of the authenticating client's X.509 certificate. You can configure certificates at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint. To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key). For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.
selection	string	Configures encrypted communication with the SMTP server. The following values are possible:

Elements of smtp_encryption	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled Disables e-mail encryption.</li> <li>starttls Enables STARTTLS encryption.</li> </ul>
server_certificate_check	Top level item	Configuration settings for validating the SMTP server's certificate.  Can only be enabled if the value of the selection element is set to starttls.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable validating the SMTP server's certificate.  Can only be enabled if the value of the selection element of smtp_encryption is set to starttls.
server_certificate_ca	string	The CA certificate of the Certificate Authority.

## Examples:

Enable authentication to the SMTP server.

```
{
  "admin_address": "<admin-email>",
  "alerting_address": "<alerts-target-email>",
  "reporting_address": "<reports-target-email>",
  "sender_address": null,
  "smtp_auth": {
    "enabled": true,
    "password": {
      "key": "aec663b5-f5bd-4c93-bb51-36fea3328e58",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/aec663b5-f5bd-4c93-bb51-36fea3328e58"
      }
    }
  },
  "username": "<smtp-username>"
},
"smtp_encryption": {
  "selection": "disabled"
},
}
```



```

"smtp_server": {
  "selection": "ip",
  "value": "<smtp-server-ip>"
}
}

```

Configure STARTTLS encryption without certificate checks.

```

{
  "admin_address": "<admin-email>",
  "alerting_address": "<alerts-target-email>",
  "reporting_address": "<reports-target-email>",
  "sender_address": null,
  "smtp_auth": {
    "enabled": true,
    "password": {
      "key": "0210848a-b301-47d5-9023-779c5fe951f7",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/0210848a-b301-47d5-9023-779c5fe951f7"
      }
    },
    "username": "<smtp-username>"
  },
  "smtp_encryption": {
    "client_authentication": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "selection": "starttls",
    "server_certificate_check": {
      "enabled": false
    }
  },
  "smtp_server": {
    "selection": "ip",
    "value": "<smtp-server-ip>"
  }
}

```

Configure STARTTLS encryption with server certificate check, and authenticate as client with an X.509 certificate.

```

{
  "admin_address": "<admin-email>",
  "alerting_address": "<alerts-target-email>",
  "reporting_address": "<reports-target-email>",
  "sender_address": null,
  "smtp_auth": {
    "enabled": true,

```

```

    "password": {
      "key": "37716c4f-759d-4900-9740-ea22211498cf",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/37716c4f-759d-4900-9740-
ea22211498cf"
      }
    },
    "username": "<smtp-username>"
  },
  "smtp_encryption": {
    "client_authentication": {
      "enabled": true,
      "x509_identity": {
        "key": "c3a23e32-d75b-461e-afc0-14d1f6692879",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/x509/c3a23e32-d75b-461e-afc0-14d1f6692879"
        }
      }
    }
  },
  "selection": "starttls",
  "server_certificate_check": {
    "enabled": true,
    "server_certificate_ca": "<ca-cert>"
  }
},
"smtp_server": {
  "selection": "ip",
  "value": "<smtp-server-ip>"
}
}

```

## CA certificates

CA certificates must not contain any metadata. SPS uses only the key part of the certificate.

To use a certificate with the SPS API, remove all metadata, and substitute line breaks with `\n`.

The following is an example certificate, as used on the SPS web interface:

```

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDnDCCAAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC
Q0ExEDAOBgNVBAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDA0BgNVBAcTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDA0BgNVBAoT
B0JhbGFiaXQxZjAUBgNVBA5TDURvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDA0BgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi
aXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxhYm10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
MDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRAdGgYDVQQLwEwP
bnRhcmlvMRAdGgYDVQQLwEwU3JvbnRvMRAdGgYDVQQLwEwYXhYm10MRyYwFAYD
VQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAdGgYDVQDEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN

```

```
AQkBFHfjYXRhaWxAYmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmVlVdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS
59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kVIv0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy
0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcB5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oV11/Fzo7mt
qYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

The same certificate, as accepted by the SPS API:

```
"certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIDnDCCAAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC\nQ0ExEDAOBgNV
BAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBACTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT\nB0JhbGFiaXQxZjAUBGNVBAStDU
RvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFiaXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxh
Ym10Lmhh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2\nMDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRAdG
YDVQQIEwdP\nbnRhcmlvMRAdGyDVQQHEwdU3JvbnRvMRAdGyDVQQKEwdCYWxhYm10MRYwFAYD\nnVQ
QLEw1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAdGyDVQQDEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN\nnAQkBFHfjYXRhaWxAYmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC\nnAQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmVlVdVWEI/Wy7a
hTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS\nn59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY
6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw\nn0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2
oSobPc\nn3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs\nnX5kVIv
0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX\nnhJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4di
KU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA\nnR5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh
6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP\nnAB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57
IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy\nn0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcB5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7X
DB\nnuNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc\nnN5+4ImYnFN
xSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oV11/Fzo7mt\nnqYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
```

## Modify mail settings

To modify mail settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/email` endpoint. You can find a detailed

description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#) .

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Health monitoring

Configuration settings for monitoring the utilization of SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists health monitoring settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing health monitoring settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "maximum_disk_utilization_ratio": 80,
    "maximum_load1": null,
    "maximum_load15": null,
    "maximum_load5": null,
    "maximum_swap_utilization_ratio": 70
  },
  "key": "health_monitoring",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/snmp",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/email",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains health monitoring settings.
maximum_disk_utilization_ratio	int	The highest allowed value for disk utilization (in %).
maximum_load1	int	Average maximum for load for 1 minute.
maximum_load15	int	Average maximum load for 15 minutes.
maximum_load5	int	Average maximum load for 5 minutes.
maximum_swap_utilization_ratio	int	The highest allowed value for swap utilization (in %).

## Modify health monitoring settings

To modify health monitoring settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## SNMP settings

Contains the configuration endpoints for SNMP settings.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/snmp
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints for SNMP configuration settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/snmp
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing SNMP configuration endpoints. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "trap",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/snmp",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Description
<a href="#">trap</a>	Configuration settings for SNMP traps.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section



Code	Description	Notes
		contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## SNMP traps

Configuration settings for the address and protocol of the SNMP server.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the configuration of the SNMP server.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap
```

### Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the address and protocol settings of the SNMP server.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "enabled": true,
    "version": {
      "selection": "2c",
      "value": {
        "community": "public",
        "server": {
          "selection": "ip",
          "value": "10.20.30.40"
        }
      }
    }
  },
  "key": "trap",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management/snmp",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the address and protocol settings of the SNMP server.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to send alerts to an SNMP server.
version	Top level item	Contains the configuration settings for the server address, and the SNMP protocol.

Elements of version	Type	Description
selection	string	Defines the SNMP protocol to use. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2c</li> <li>3</li> </ul> Configures version 2c of the SNMP protocol.

Elements of version	Type	Description
		Configures version 3 of the SNMP protocol.
value	Top level item	Contains the SNMP server address, and the protocol-specific settings.
auth_method	string	<p>Required parameter when using SNMP version 3. Configures encrypted communication with the SNMP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>md5: Use MD5 encryption. The auth_password element must reference a valid password.</li> <li>sha1: Use SHA1 encryption. The auth_password element must reference a valid password.</li> </ul>
auth_password	string	<p>Required parameter when using SNMP version 3. References the password used for authenticating to the SNMP server. You can create passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>The referenced password must be at least 8 characters long, and can contain letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9) the special characters (!"#\$%&amp;'()*+;,&lt;=&amp;@[\]^`{ }_./:~) and the space character.</p>
community	string	<p>Must be used if version 2c of the SNMP protocol is configured.</p> <p>The name of the SNMP community.</p>
encryption_method	string	<p>Must be used if version 3 of the SNMP protocol is configured.</p> <p>Configures encrypted</p>

Elements of version	Type	Description
		<p>communication with the SNMP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none: No encryption. The value of the encryption_password element must also be set to null.</li> <li>• aes: AES encryption. The encryption_password element must reference a valid password.</li> <li>• des: DES encryption. The encryption_password element must reference a valid password.</li> </ul>
encryption_password	string	<p>Must be used if version 3 of the SNMP protocol is configured.</p> <p>Set to null if the value of the encryption_method is set to none.</p> <p>References the password used for encrypting the communication with the SNMP server. You can create passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>The referenced password must be at least 8 characters long, and can contain letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9) the special characters (!"#\$%&amp;'()*+,;=&amp;@[\]^`{ }_./:~) and the space character.</p>
engine_id	string	<p>Must be used if version 3 of the SNMP protocol is configured.</p> <p>The Engine ID. Must be a hexadecimal number at least 10 digits long (for example, 0x0123456789ABCDEF).</p>

Elements of version	Type	Description
server	top level item	Contains the IP address of FQDN of the SNMP server.
selection	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The SNMP server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip The SNMP server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
value	string	The address of the SNMP server.
username	string	Must be used if version 3 of the SNMP protocol is configured.  The username for sending SNMP traps.

## Examples:

Configure a server with the SNMP v2c protocol.

```
{
  "enabled": true,
  "version": {
    "selection": "2c",
    "value": {
      "community": "public",
      "server": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "<server-ip>"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Configure a server with the SNMP v3 protocol, and MD5 authentication.

```
{
  "enabled": true,
  "version": {
    "selection": "3",
    "value": {
```

```

    "auth_method": "md5",
    "auth_password": {
      "key": "d21f3675-8dff-43c5-a982-17839390a6b3",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/d21f3675-8dff-43c5-a982-17839390a6b3"
      }
    },
    "encryption_method": "none",
    "encryption_password": null,
    "engine_id": "<0x0123456789ABCDEF>",
    "server": {
      "selection": "ip",
      "value": "<server-ip>"
    },
    "username": "<username>"
  }
}
}

```

Configure a server with the SNMP v3 protocol, SHA1 authentication, and AES-encrypted communication.

```

{
  "enabled": true,
  "version": {
    "selection": "3",
    "value": {
      "auth_method": "sha",
      "auth_password": {
        "key": "0f5f646d-d6e7-4a4a-bc66-ead670faff3f",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/0f5f646d-d6e7-4a4a-bc66-ead670faff3f"
        }
      }
    },
    "encryption_method": "aes",
    "encryption_password": {
      "key": "6237d67a-b6b4-49e0-b0f6-6d68d0f08cc3",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/6237d67a-b6b4-49e0-b0f6-6d68d0f08cc3"
      }
    },
    "engine_id": "<0x0123456789ABCDEF>",
    "server": {
      "selection": "ip",
      "value": "<server-ip>"
    }
  }
}

```

```
}  
  "username": "<username>"  
}  
}
```

## Modify SNMP trap settings

To modify the address and protocol settings for the SNMP server, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the SNMP trap endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/snmp/trap` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Local services: access for SNMP agents

External SNMP agents can query the basic status information of SPS. On this endpoint you can configure on which interfaces can the users access SPS, and optionally restrict the access to these interfaces, and configure authentication and encryption settings.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/snmp_agent
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/snmp_agent
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.



```

{
  "body": {
    "access_restriction": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "enabled": true,
    "listen": [
      {
        "address": {
          "key":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
          "meta": {
            "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/address
es/1"
          }
        },
        "port": 161
      }
    ],
    "system_contact": "mycontact",
    "system_description": "mydescription",
    "system_location": "mylocation",
    "version_2c": {
      "community": "mycommunity",
      "enabled": true
    },
    "version_3": {
      "enabled": true,
      "users": [
        {
          "auth_method": "sha",
          "auth_password": {
            "key": "5476940c-ba38-4002-96d4-cb09d6921c68",
            "meta": {
              "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/5476940c-ba38-
4002-96d4-cb09d6921c68"
            }
          },
          "encryption_method": "aes",
          "encryption_password": {
            "key": "99782a91-63de-4a5c-82ff-b82273894dc7",
            "meta": {
              "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/99782a91-63de-
4a5c-82ff-b82273894dc7"
            }
          }
        },
        "username": "myusername"
      ]
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  ]
}
},
"key": "snmp_agent",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
  "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/snmp_agent",
  "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
  "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/ssh",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/postgresql",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the SNMP agent.
access_restriction	JSON object	Enables and configures limitations on the clients that can access the web interface, based on the IP address of the clients.
allow_ed_from	list	The list of IP networks from where the administrators are permitted to access this management interface. To specify the IP addresses or networks, use the IPv4-Address/prefix format, for example, 10.40.0.0/16.
enabled	boolean	Set it to true to restrict access to the specified client addresses.
listen	list	Selects the network interface, IP address, and port where the clients can access the web interface.
address	JSON object	A reference to a configured network interface and IP address where this local service accepts connections. For example, if querying the interface <code>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/</code> returns the following

Element	Type	Description
---------	------	-------------

response:

```
{
  "body": {
    "interfaces": {
      "@order": [
        "ff7574025754b3df1647001"
      ],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "10.40.255.171/24",
          "@order": [
            "1"
          ]
        },
        "name": "default",
        "vlantag": 0
      }
    },
    "name": "eth0",
    "speed": "auto"
  },
  "key": "nic1",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "last": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic3",
    "next":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
    "parent": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Then the listening address of the local service is the following.

```
nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1
```

This is the format you have to use when configuring the

Element	Type	Description
		<p>address of the local service using REST:</p> <pre>"address": "nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1"</pre> <p>When querying a local services endpoint, the response will contain a reference to the IP address of the interface in the following format:</p> <pre>"address": {   "key": "nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",   "meta": {     "href": "/api/- config- uration/net- work/n- ics/n- ic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"   } },</pre>
port	integer	The port number where this local service accepts connections.
system_contact	string	Optional. For example, it can contain the contact information of the SPS administrator.
system_description	string	Optional. For example, it can contain information of the SPS host.
system_location	string	Optional. For example, it can contain the location of the SPS appliance.
version_2c	JSON object	<p>Enables and configures SNMP queries using the SNMP v2c protocol. You can have both the SNMP v2c and v3 protocols enabled at the same time. For example:</p> <pre>"version_2c": {   "community": "mycommunity",   "enabled": true },</pre>
community	string	Optional. Specifies the community to use.

Element	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	Optional. Enables SNMP queries using the SNMP v2c protocol.
version_3	JSON object	Enables and configures SNMP queries using the SNMP v3 protocol. You can have both the SNMP v2c and v3 protocols enabled at the same time. You must configure an authentication method and a password, encryption is optional. For example:

```

"version_3": {
  "enabled": true,
  "users": [
    {
      "auth_method": "sha",
      "auth_password": {
        "key": "5476940c-ba38-4002-96d4-cb09d6921c68",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/-configuration/passwords/5476940c-ba38-4002-96d4-cb09d6921c68"
        }
      },
      "encryption_method": "aes",
      "encryption_password": {
        "key": "99782a91-63de-4a5c-82ff-b82273894dc7",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/-configuration/passwords/99782a91-63de-4a5c-82ff-b82273894dc7"
        }
      },
      "username": "myusername"
    }
  ]
}

```

Elements of version_3	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	Optional. Enables SNMP queries using the SNMP v2c protocol.
users	JSON object	Contains the configuration parameters for the SNMP v3 protocol.
auth_method	string	Required parameter when using SNMP version 3.

Elements of version_3	Type	Description
		<p>Configures encrypted communication with the SNMP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>md5: Use MD5 encryption. The auth_password element must reference a valid password.</li> <li>sha1: Use SHA1 encryption. The auth_password element must reference a valid password.</li> </ul>
auth_password	string	<p>Required parameter when using SNMP version 3. References the password used for authenticating to the SNMP server. You can create passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>The referenced password must be at least 8 characters long, and can contain letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9) the special characters (!"#\$%&amp;'()*+;,&lt;=&amp;@[\]^`{ }_./:~-) and the space character.</p>
encryption_method	string	<p>Configures encrypted communication with the SNMP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>none: No encryption. The value of the encryption_password element must also be set to null.</li> <li>aes: AES encryption. The encryption_password element must reference a valid password.</li> <li>des: DES encryption. The encryption_password element must reference a valid password.</li> </ul>
encryption_password	string	<p>Set to null if the value of the encryption_method is set to none.</p> <p>References the password used for encrypting the communication with the SNMP server. You can create passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements</p>

Elements of version_3	Type	Description
		(including the key). The referenced password must be at least 8 characters long, and can contain letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9) the special characters (!"#\$%&'()*+;,<=&@[\]^`{ }_./:~-) and the space character.
username	string	The username for sending SNMP traps.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Alerting

Contains the endpoints for configuring alerting on SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_	Contains the	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
id	authentication token of the user		from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.
			<b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists alerting configuration endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing alerting configuration endpoints. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "system_alerts",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "traffic_alerts",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/alerting",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/datetime",
  }
}
```



```
"parent": "/api/configuration",
"previous": "/api/configuration/aaa",
"transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}
```

Element	Description
<a href="#">system_alerts</a>	Configuration options for system-related alerts.
<a href="#">traffic_alerts</a>	Configuration options for traffic-related alerts.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## System alerts

Configuration options for sending system-related alerts.

E-mail alerts, when enabled, are sent to the e-mail address configured in the alerting\_address element of the /api/configuration/management/email endpoint.

SNMP alerts, when enabled, are sent to the SNMP server configured at the /api/configuration/management/snmp/trap endpoint.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists configuration options for system-related alerts.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing configuration options for system-related alerts.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "xcbAlert": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "xcbArchiveFailed": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "xcbBackupFailed": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "xcbBruteForceAttempt": {
      "email": false,
```

```

    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbConfigChange": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbDBError": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbDiskFull": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbError": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbFirmwareTainted": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbHWEError": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbHaNodeChanged": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLicenseAlmostExpired": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLimitReached": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLoadAvgHigh": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLogin": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLoginFailure": {
    "email": false,

```

```

    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbLogout": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbRaidStatus": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbSwapFull": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbTimeSyncLost": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "xcbTimestampError": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  }
},
"key": "system_alerts",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts",
  "href": "/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts",
  "last": "/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts",
  "next": "/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/alerting",
  "previous": null,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options for system-related alerts.
xcbAlert	Top level item	General alert.

Element		Type	Description
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbArchiveFailed		Top level item	Data archiving failure.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbBackupFailed		Top level item	Data and configuration backup failure.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbBruteForceAttempt		Top level item	Too many successive failed login attempts.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbConfigChange		Top level item	Configuration change.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbDBError		Top level item	Database error occurred.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbDiskFull		Top level item	Disk utilization reached the percentage configured in the <code>maximum_disk_utilization_ratio</code> element of the <code>api/configuration/management/monitoring</code> endpoint.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.

Element		Type	Description
xcbError		Top level item	General error.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbFirmwareTainted		Top level item	The firmware is tainted.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbHWEError		Top level item	Hardware error.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbHaNodeChanged		Top level item	HA node state changed.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLicenseAlmostExpired		Top level item	License expires soon.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLimitReached		Top level item	License limit reached.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLoadAvgHigh		Top level item	The average load exceeded any of the values configured in the maximum_load1, maximum_load5 or maximum_load15 elements of the api/configuration/management/monitoring

Element		Type	Description
			endpoint.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLogin		Top level item	Successful login.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLoginFailure		Top level item	Failed login.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbLogout		Top level item	Logout from the web configuration interface.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbRaidStatus		Top level item	RAID status changed.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbSwapFull		Top level item	The utilization of the swap exceeded the value configured in the <code>maximum_swap_utilization_ratio</code> element of the <code>api/configuration/management/monitoring</code> endpoint.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbTimeSyncLost		Top level item	Time sync lost.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.

Element		Type	Description
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
xcbTimestampError		Top level item	Time stamping error.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.

## Modify a system-related alert

To enable or disable an alert, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.



# Traffic alerts

Configuration options for sending traffic-related alerts.

E-mail alerts, when enabled, are sent to the e-mail address configured in the alerting\_ address element of the /api/configuration/management/email endpoint.

SNMP alerts, when enabled, are sent to the SNMP server configured at the /api/configuration/management/snmp/trap endpoint.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options for traffic-related alerts..

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options for traffic-related alerts.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "body": {
    "scbAuthFailure": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbAuthSuccess": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbChannelDenied": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbConnectionDenied": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbConnectionFailed": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbConnectionTimedout": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbCredStoreClosed": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbCredStoreDecryptError": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbCredStoreUnlockFailure": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbGWAAuthFailure": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbGWAAuthSuccess": {
      "email": false,
      "snmp": false
    },
    "scbProtocolViolation": {
      "email": false,

```

```

    "snmp": false
  },
  "scbRealTimeAlert": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "scbSshHostKeyLearned": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "scbSshHostKeyMismatch": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  },
  "scbUserMappingFailure": {
    "email": false,
    "snmp": false
  }
},
"key": "traffic_alerts",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts",
  "href": "/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts",
  "last": "/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/alerting",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/alerting/system_alerts",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options for traffic-related alerts.
scbAuthFailure	Top level item	User authentication failed.
email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbAuthSuccess	Top level	Successful user authen-

Element		Type	Description
		item	tication.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbChannelDenied		Top level item	Channel opening denied.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbConnectionDenied		Top level item	Connection denied.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbConnectionFailed		Top level item	Connection to the server failed.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbConnectionTimedout		Top level item	Connection timed out.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbCredStoreClosed		Top level item	The requested credential store is closed.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.

Element		Type	Description
scbCredStoreDecryptError		Top level item	Failure to decrypt a credential.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbCredStoreUnlockFailure		Top level item	Failure to unlock the credential store.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbGWAAuthFailure		Top level item	The user failed to authenticate on the gateway.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbGWAAuthSuccess		Top level item	Successful authentication on the gateway.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbProtocolViolation		Top level item	Protocol violation.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbRealTimeAlert		Top level item	Real-time audit event detected.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.

Element		Type	Description
scbSshHostKeyLearned		Top level item	New SSH host key learned.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbSshHostKeyMismatch		Top level item	SSH host key mismatch.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.
scbUserMappingFailure		Top level item	User mapping failed on the gateway.
	email	boolean	Set to true to enable e-mail alerts.
	snmp	boolean	Set to true to enable SNMP alerts.

## Modify a traffic-related alert

To enable or disable an alert, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/alerting/traffic_alerts` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Trust stores

Trust stores serve as local certificate storages where users can store the certificate chains of trusted Certificate Authorities (CAs). These certificates are then used to ensure secure communication between external parties and the SPS.

There are two types of trust stores: built-in and custom.

The built-in trust store has well known root CAs (such as Google, Microsoft, Verisign, etc.), and it is not modifiable.

Before establishing secure communication (TLS), SPS verifies the certificate of the other party using the assigned trust store. Only certificates signed by any of the CAs in the trust store are accepted.

**NOTE:** CRL URLs must be listed explicitly in the appropriate field, as those CRL URLs that are embedded in the extensions of the certificates, will be ignored.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/trust_stores
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

Operations with the trust\_stores endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Create a trust store	POST	/api/configuration/trust_stores	The name of the trust store must be unique.
List trust stores	GET	/api/configuration/trust_stores	<p>Users who were not given read access to the trust_stores endpoint explicitly, are still able to retrieve information from it, if they have access to other /configuration related endpoints, which reference trust stores.</p> <p>Examples of trust store referrer ACL (read access):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /pages/starlingjoin</li> <li>• /config/xcbaaa/settings</li> <li>• /config/scb/pol_ldaps</li> </ul>
Query a trust store	GET	/api/configuration/trust_stores/<id of the trust store>	
Query the built-in trust store	GET	/api/configuration/trust_stores/-7001	
Update a trust store	PUT	/api/configuration/trust_stores/<id of the trust store>	Users who were not given access to the trust_stores endpoint explicitly, but are still able to retrieve information from it because they have access to



Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
			configuration endpoints which reference trust stores, are unable to modify trust stores.  With the exception of /config/xcba/management, where the same access level is granted to the trust stores for the user as they have for /config/xcba/management.
Delete a trust store	DELETE	/api/configuration/trust_stores/<id of the trust store>	

## Sample request

The following command lists the trust stores:

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/trust_stores
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing trust stores.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-7001",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/trust_stores/-7001"
      },
      "body": {
        "name": "Built-in",
        "revocation_check": "none",
        "trust_store_type": "built-in"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/trust_stores/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-
```

```

XXXXXXXXXXXXX"
    },
    "body": {
      "name": "My_Custom_Trust_Store",
      "authorities": [
        {
          "fingerprint": {
            "digest":
"01:25:1f:a2:df:2a:31:1a:29:7a:ba:43:c4:03:42:a5:d7:30:ec:2d:e0:d7:7a:72:a7:1b:
c3:99:c5:6c:10:ea",
            "hash_algorithm": "sha256"
          },
          "issuer": "C=HU/ST=Budapest/L=None/O=Internet Widgits Pty
Ltd/OU=None/CN=None/emailAddress=None",
          "pem": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIDZzCCAk+gAwIBAgIUMII5+EgTDAh2zqRDGYrzFRyozI8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEL\nBQ
AwQzELMAkGA1UEBhMCSFUxETAPBgNVBAGMEJ1ZGFwZXN0MSEwHwYDVQQKDBhJ\n
bnRlcm5ldCBXaWRnaXRzIFB0eSBMdGQwHhcNMTQwODEyMTIzNjQ4WhcNMzQwNjE4\n
MTIzNjQ4WjBDMQswCQYDVQQGEwJIVTERMA8GA1UECAwIQnVkYXBlc3QxITAFBgNV\n
AoMGEIudGVybWV0IFdpZGdpdHMgUHR5IEEx0ZDCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAD\n
EPADCCAQoCggEBALffJBDD6A/ZGBTgFbyLXHulU+hGnMW3DoPo2q4HY1/FfbkS\n
+riz+3EwJCWi+EwK9mqve/nh6YRRw/VaAVQ7CkA7f7to+I7gP647Bq1wk0lh\n
nBVEJNIN0jFYSumGxzPotw/fo1MkXuMbLc0Pr/vFX3NQC7/STAV5dZFcdboXDA7\n
nZZ3rzBIr93ThObsGj01MRO6wrS3rfe7Px9D7C2u9YSKP3OQ1Sfm/jqyLNaT6xt4i\n
\nhrLnfyEc8mClnrlvILi+q/D6mIUSjb4IGvergAyl4jgPjO02UcvBzOIA9tDIBJBi\n
\nQxZx+T620ubmEwOI9Q0G8RAWKz7szrBcXEjXhYUCAwEAAaNTMFEwHQYDVR0OBBYE\n
\nFCDfEeq5Hsm8jMrG110iNpt5cikTMB8GA1UdIwQYMBaAFCDfEeq5Hsm8jMrG110i\n
\nNpt5cikTMA8GA1UdEwEB/wQFMAMBAf8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggEBAK3iizM4\n
\nCx69YD+4CWOUswULrCJA38C+nDYONLbNkact8JKXqCn/MaZTII+dZoV9RjjX4AzA\n
\nPTQkZT+RoVeCZyt+qWHMdj6koabXwQmXNozUtaxEZTrnoUDEWtNIbjV/gNtRcSG\n
\nnsU7i9L2YnwDzTw0cR/pu1Hykq8fwqNqjQGYnmXtJspMkKATve1CrtnPLiC6JBr0g\n
\n5GZF58sHx5+gO0RkqdzJgRAGnImdfAahqfHmKRfmxoxWLyylRyqDgQ+KqcaDvZI+
\n\ni36M+NQHVRDX4jo4CFoXhFISOepvtDOpmzoWhugwDNMPuU1IEY7//CJBXQnjp+uf\n
\n\nLO6PsNmMKDGI9Dk=\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",
          "subject": "C=HU/ST=Budapest/L=None/O=Internet Widgits Pty
Ltd/OU=None/CN=None/emailAddress=None"
        }
      ],
      "crl_urls": [
        "http://crl.it/sec"
      ],
      "revocation_check": "full",
      "trust_store_type": "custom"
    }
  ]
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Elements of items		Type	Description	Notes
items		object array	List of JSON objects available from the current endpoint.	
	key	string	The ID of the trust store.	Each trust store has a unique key. The built-in trust store's ID is "-7001".
	meta	string (uri)	The href field contains the URL of the trust store.	

#### body

Elements of body		Type	Description	Notes
body		object	Top level element.	
	name	string	The name of the trust store.	The name field is set by the user and it must be unique. For example: "name": "My_Custom_Trust_Store". The built-in trust store's name is "Built-in".

#### authorities

	crl_urls	string array	The crl_urls field contains the list of CRL web addresses (HTTP or HTTPS URLs) used for revocation check.	If a trust store that uses certificate revocation lists (CRLs) does not work properly, it might be due to invalid or inaccessible CRL URLs. Troubleshooting can involve checking whether all URLs of the CA CRL URL list are valid, and can be accessed from the SPS via the <b>Basic Settings / Troubleshooting / Connect to TCP port</b> function in the Web UI.
	revocation_check	enum	The type of the revocation check.	Possible values: "full", "leaf", "none". "full" - The crl_urls field must contain CRL URLs for all of the

Elements of body	Type	Description	Notes
			<p>CAs that are part of the chain of a given certificate which is being verified.</p> <p>"leaf" - The <code>crl_urls</code> field must contain at least the CRL URL of the CA which signed the certificate which is being validated.</p> <p>"none" - The <code>crl_urls</code> field must be empty.</p>
<code>trust_store_type</code>	enum	The type of the trust store.	<p>Possible values: "built-in", "custom".</p> <p>The built-in trust store comes with the operation system. This type of trust store is read-only. There is no CRL check involved, and it cannot be removed.</p>

Elements of authorities	Type	Description	Notes
<code>authorities</code>	array	List of Certificate Authorities.	
<code>fingerprint</code>			
<code>issuer</code>	string	The name of the entity that signed the certificate.	
<code>pem</code>	string	The certificate in PEM format.	
<code>subject</code>	string	The subject of the certificate.	

Elements of fingerprint	Type	Description	Notes
<code>fingerprint</code>		A two-piece byte sequence consisting of a hash algorithm and a message digest.	
<code>digest</code>	string	The string of digits produced by the hash algorithm.	
<code>hash_algorithm</code>	string	The name of the hash algorithm.	

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	SyntacticError	<p>A value to be set is not accepted syntactically. The details section contains the path that was found to be invalid.</p> <p>Possible syntactic error messages related to trust store:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The user is not allowed to create a built-in trust store or edit or delete the existing one.</li><li>• When revocation_check is set to "none", the crl_urls field must be empty. The user cannot add any element to crl_urls.</li><li>• When revocation_check is set to "full" or "leaf", the crl_urls cannot be empty.</li></ul>
400	SemanticError	<p>The configuration contains semantic errors, inconsistencies or other problems that would put the system into an unreliable state if the configuration had been applied. The details section contains the errors that were found in the configuration.</p>

Code	Description	Notes
		<p>Possible semantic error messages related to trust store:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the trust stores must be unique.</li> <li>• The authorities of a trust store must be unique.</li> <li>• The CRL URLs of a trust store must be unique.</li> </ul>
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

## Enabling One Identity Safeguard Remote Access without Starling Join

Enable the One Identity Safeguard Remote Access (SRA) feature of One Identity Starling without **Starling Join** information.

**NOTE:** You cannot configure Starling Join through the resource configuration endpoint (/api/configuration/starling), only through the dedicated /starling/join endpoint.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/starling
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the /starling endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Query One Identity Starling Join without a join to One Identity Starling	GET	/api/configuration/starling	The value of the join_info field is null.
Query One Identity Starling Join after join	GET	/api/configuration/starling	The values of the join_info field are environment, product_instance, and product_tims.
Enable SRA	PUT	/api/configuration/starling	SRA can be enabled only if the node is joined to One Identity Starling. Use the starling/join endpoint to join to One Identity

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
			Starling.
Disable SRA	PUT	/api/configuration/starling	To disable SRA to One Identity Starling, the enabled field must be set to false.

## Enable SRA

To enable SRA with the use of the /starling endpoint, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. Set the **enabled** parameter of **remote\_access** to true.

### Sample request

The following command enables SRA to join to One Identity Starling.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/starling
```

```
{
  "join_info": {
    "environment": "prod",
    "product_instance": "starling-joiner-11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
    "product_tims": "123-456-789"
  },
  "remote_access": {
    "enabled": true
  }
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Elements	Type	Description	Notes
join_info	object		
join_info.en-	string	The environment	Possible values: prod.



Elements	Type	Description	Notes
vironment		of the product.	
join_ info.product_ instance	string	The instance of the product.	
join_ info.product_tims	string	The TIMS license of the product.	
remote_access			To disable SRA to One Identity Starling, the <b>enabled</b> field must be set to false.
remote_ access.enabled	boolean	Enables or disables SRA to One Identity Starling.	Possible values: true, false
key			Possible values: starling

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Response

The response is a regular meta object.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request:

HTTP response code	Status / Error	Description
403	RemoteAccessDependsOnStarlingJoinError	SRA to One Identity Starling can only be enabled, if the node is joined to One Identity Starling. Use the <code>/starling/join</code> endpoint to join to One Identity Starling.
403	StarlingJoinInfoIsReadOnlyError	You cannot join or unjoin from

HTTP response code	Status / Error	Description
		One Identity Starling at the resource configuration endpoint ( <code>/api/configuration/starling</code> ), as the One Identity Starling <code>join_info</code> field is read-only. Use the <code>/starling/join</code> endpoint to join or unjoin from One Identity Starling.

Standard HTTP response codes for this request:

- [400 SyntacticError](#)
- [400 SemanticError](#)
- [401 Unauthenticated](#)

## Configuring Starling Join

Configure the **Starling Join** feature on One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) with the use of a RESTful API, to be able to join SPS to One Identity Starling, or unjoin SPS from it.

**NOTE:** You cannot configure Starling Join through the resource configuration endpoint (`/api/configuration/starling`), only through the dedicated `/starling/join` endpoint.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/starling/join
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
<code>session_id</code>	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p><a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the /starling/join endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Querying Starling Join endpoint from a browser without TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join endpoint when joined from a browser without TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join info without TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join info when joined without</li> </ul>	GET	/api/starling/join	<p>Headers to be used: Accept: text/html.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the specified <b>Accept</b> header is not sent with the request, then the Starling Join process is not started, only the status information is returned.</p>

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
TIMS			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Querying Starling Join endpoint from a browser with TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join endpoint when joined from a browser with TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join info with TIMS</li> <li>Querying Starling Join info when joined with TIMS</li> </ul>	GET	/api/starling/join?product_tims=<TIMS value>	Example of TIMS value: product_tims=222-333-444 .
Joining One Identity Starling	POST	/api/starling/join	
Unjoining One Identity Starling	DELETE	/api/starling/join	<b>NOTE:</b> Unjoining One Identity Starling in a regular way is not possible while One Identity Safeguard Remote Access (SRA) is enabled. To unjoin One Identity Starling, first you must disable SRA.
Force unjoining	DELETE	/api/starling/join?force=true	<b>NOTE:</b> The Force

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
One Identity Starling			Unjoin functionality works even when SRA is enabled.

## Sample request

The following command queries the `/starling/join` endpoint when joined from a browser without TIMS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/starling/join
```

## Response

The following is a sample response.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body":
  {
    "joined": true,
    "product_instance": "starling-joiner-11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
    "product_name": "Safeguard",
    "product_tims": "123-456-789"
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Elements	Type	Description	Notes
joined	boolean	Displays whether or not the user is joined to One Identity Starling or unjoined from it.	
product_instance	string	The instance of the product.	
product_name	string	The name of the product.	
product_tims	string	The TIMS license of the product.	

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request:

HTTP response code	Status / Error	Description
400	MissingCredentialStringError	The mandatory credential_string parameter is not specified for One Identity Starling Join.
400	MissingProductInstanceError	The mandatory product_instance parameter is not specified for One Identity Starling Join.
403	OpenTransactionError	The attempt to join to One Identity Starling was unsuccessful, as the transaction was still open. To join to One Identity Starling, you must first close the previous transaction.
403	ForbiddenActionError	Forbidden action. To unjoin from One Identity Starling, use the /starling/join endpoint.
403	StarlingJoinIsInUseByRemoteAccessError	Unjoining One Identity Starling is not allowed while SRA is in use. Disable SRA in the configuration before unjoining from One Identity Starling.

Standard HTTP response codes for this request:

- [400 InvalidRequestBody](#)
- [400 SyntacticError](#)
- [400 SemanticError](#)
- [401 Unauthenticated](#)
- [403 Unauthorized](#)

# Retrieving the status of services related to Starling Join/Unjoin

Use the /status endpoint to retrieve information about the availability of the services needed for Starling Join, or Starling Unjoin.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/starling/join/status
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command returns information about the availability of the services needed for Starling Join, or Starling Unjoin .

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/starling/join/status
```

## Response

The following is a sample response.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "internet_connection": {
    "error": "N/A",
    "status": true
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/starling/status",
    "parent": "/api/starling",
    "remaining_seconds": 593
  },
  "proxy": true,
  "starling_status": {
    "Account Email Notifications": "operational",
    "Account Services Portal": "operational",
    "Active Roles On Demand": "operational",
    "CertAccess": "operational",
    "Connect": "operational",
    "Database Service": "operational",
    "Hybrid Subscription": "operational",
    "Identity Manager On Demand": "operational",
    "Job Service": "operational",
    "One Identity Starling": "operational",
    "Password Manager On Demand": "operational",
    "Safeguard On Demand": "operational",
    "Safeguard Remote Access": "operational",
    "Safeguard for Privileged Passwords On Demand": "operational",
    "Safeguard for Privileged Sessions On Demand": "operational",
    "Subscription and Billing": "operational",
    "Two-Factor Authentication": "operational",
    "Web UI": "operational"
  },
  "verdict": true
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Elements	Type	Description	Notes
internet_connection	object	Indicates whether or not the SPS appliance can connect to the status endpoint ( <a href="https://oneidentitycloud.statuspage.io">oneidentitycloud.statuspage.io</a> ).	
internet_connection.error	string	The description of the error. If no error occurred, the value is N/A.	



Elements	Type	Description	Notes
internet_connection.status	boolean	The value is true, if the SPS appliance could connect to the status page.  The value is false, if there is no Internet connection.	
proxy	boolean	Indicates whether or not a proxy server is configured.	
starling_status	enum	Enumeration of the different One Identity Starling-related services and their current status.	<b>NOTE:</b> starling_status lists all available One Identity Starling-related services, however, to Starling Join/Un-join to work, only the status of the One Identity Starling service is relevant.
verdict	boolean	The value is true if SPS can connect to the status page, a proxy is enabled, and the relevant service(s) are operational.	

## HTTP response codes

Standard HTTP response codes for this request:

- [400 InvalidRequestBody](#)
- [400 SyntacticError](#)
- [400 SemanticError](#)
- [401 Unauthenticated](#)
- [403 Unauthorized](#)

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# User management and access control

## User management and access control

The AAA endpoint contains the configuration endpoints for the authentication, authorization, and account (AAA) settings of the users who access SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the AAA configuration endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing AAA configuration endpoints. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "acIs",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/acIs"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "ldap_servers",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "local_database",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "login_methods",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "settings",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/alerting",
  }
}
```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Description
<a href="#">acls</a>	Access control settings for usergroups.
<a href="#">ldap_servers</a>	LDAP server configuration for authentication, authorization, and accounting.
<a href="#">local_database</a>	Local users and usergroups.
<a href="#">login_methods</a>	Multiple login method configuration for SPS.
<a href="#">settings</a>	Authentication and user database settings.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Login settings

Use login settings to control the web login access of administrators and users to SPS. With the `/aaa/settings` endpoint you can configure the following three security enhancing measures:

- Protecting against brute-force attacks
- Authentication banner
- Web interface timeout

For more information, see the corresponding sections in [One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions Administration Guide](#).

## URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/settings
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the /aaa/settings endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Creating login settings	GET	/api/configuration/aaa/settings	
Retrieving login settings	POST		

## Sample request

The following command lists the login settings.

```
curl -X GET -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/settings
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing login settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "settings",
  "body": {
    "authentication_banner": "",
    "bruteforce_protection": {
      "attempt_limit": 20,
      "lockout_minutes": 10
    },
    "webinterface_timeout": 10
  }
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
authentication_banner	string	Displays a banner with a configurable text on the web and console login screen of SPS. Users will see the banner every time they try to log in to SPS. The login screen displays the banner text as plain text, with whitespaces preserved.	If you specify an empty string, then no authentication banner will show.
bruteforce_protection	JSON object	Protects the web login addresses of administrators and users against brute-force attacks. After the users reach the configured number of unsuccessful login attempts, SPS denies all following attempts for the configured time.	
bruteforce_protection.attempt_limit	number	The number of unsuccessful login attempts before the user name or the IP address is locked out. If the number of subsequent unsuccessful login attempts exceeds this limit, the IP address or the user name will be blocked for a period, which is specified in bruteforce_protection.lockout_minutes.	Value range: 1-50 attempts Default value: 20 attempts

Element	Type	Description	Notes
bruteforce_ protection.lockout_ minutes	number	The period of time for which the user or the IP address is locked out from using the SPS appliance. It is measured in minutes.	Value range: 1-720 minutes Default value: 10 minutes
webinterface_timeout	number	The period of inactivity after which SPS terminates the web session of a user. It is measured in minutes.	Value range: 5-720 minutes Default value: 10 minutes

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Privileges of usergroups

This endpoint lists the usergroups configured on SPS, and the privileges (ACLs) of each group.

Note that currently you cannot edit the privileges (ACLs) of the groups using the REST API. If you change the privileges of a usergroup on the SPS web interface, the changes will apply to the users when they authenticate again on SPS, the privileges of active sessions are not affected.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/acls
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connec-

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			tion between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the local users.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/acls
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": [
    {
      "group": "basic-view",
      "objects": [
        "/special/basic"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "basic-write",
      "objects": [
        "/special/basic"
      ],
      "permission": "write"
    },
    {
      "group": "auth-view",
      "objects": [
        "/special/auth"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "auth-write",
      "objects": [
        "/special/auth"
      ],
      "permission": "write"
    }
  ]
}
```



```

    },
    {
      "group": "search",
      "objects": [
        "/special/searchmenu"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "changelog",
      "objects": [
        "/special/changelog"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "policies-view",
      "objects": [
        "/special/pol"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "policies-write",
      "objects": [
        "/special/pol"
      ],
      "permission": "write"
    },
    {
      "group": "ssh-view",
      "objects": [
        "/special/ssh"
      ],
      "permission": "read"
    },
    {
      "group": "ssh-write",
      "objects": [
        "/special/ssh"
      ],
      "permission": "write"
    },
    {
      "group": "rdp-view",
      "objects": [
        "/special/rdp"
      ],

```

```

    "permission": "read"
  },
  {
    "group": "rdp-write",
    "objects": [
      "/special/rdp"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
  },
  {
    "group": "telnet-view",
    "objects": [
      "/special/telnet"
    ],
    "permission": "read"
  },
  {
    "group": "telnet-write",
    "objects": [
      "/special/telnet"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
  },
  {
    "group": "vnc-view",
    "objects": [
      "/special/vnc"
    ],
    "permission": "read"
  },
  {
    "group": "vnc-write",
    "objects": [
      "/special/vnc"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
  },
  {
    "group": "indexing",
    "objects": [
      "/special/search/search",
      "/special/bap"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
  },
  {
    "group": "ica-view",
    "objects": [

```

```

        "/special/ica"
    ],
    "permission": "read"
},
{
    "group": "ica-write",
    "objects": [
        "/special/ica"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
},
{
    "group": "http-view",
    "objects": [
        "/special/http"
    ],
    "permission": "read"
},
{
    "group": "http-write",
    "objects": [
        "/special/http"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
},
{
    "group": "indexer-view",
    "objects": [
        "/special/indexer"
    ],
    "permission": "read"
},
{
    "group": "indexer-write",
    "objects": [
        "/special/indexer"
    ],
    "permission": "write"
},
],
"key": "acls",
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/acls",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/acls",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "next": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "previous": null,

```

```
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description	
body		Top level element (JSON object)	Contains the properties of the user.
	group	string	The name of the usergroup.
	objects	list	The list of privileges that the group has access to.
	permission	read   write	The type of the permission. The group needs write access to configure an object, or to perform certain actions.

### Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Audit data access rules

This endpoint enables you to restrict the search and access privileges of usergroups to audit data.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/acl/audit_data
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the available audit data access rules.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/acl/audit_data
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "autogenerated-10211162955b9621d4eb244",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/acl/audit_data/autogenerated-10211162955b9621d4eb244"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/acl/audit_data",
    "parent": "/api/acl",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
items	Top-level element (list of JSON objects)	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint.
key	string	The ID of the endpoint.
meta	Top-level item (JSON object)	Contains the path to the endpoint.
href	string (relative path)	The path of the resource that returned the response.

## Query a specific audit data access rule

To find out the contents of a particular audit data access rule, complete the following steps:

**NOTE:** If you have an SPS user who has **Search > Search in all connections** privileges in **Users & Access Control > Appliance Access**, the autogenerated-all-data-access-id rule is automatically generated. Therefore, you can almost always query this audit data access rule.

1. **Query the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/acl/audit_data/<key-of-rule-to-be-queried>` endpoint.**

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/acl/audit_data/<key-of-rule-to-be-queried>
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "my_ssh_rule",
    "query": "psm.connection_policy:my_ssh_connection_policy",
    "groups": [
      "ssh-view",
      "ssh-write"
    ]
  },
  "key": "autogenerated-10211162955b9621d4eb244",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/acl/audit_data/autogenerated-10211162955b9621d4eb244",
```

```

    "parent": "/api/acl/audit_data",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Elements	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (JSON object)	Contains the JSON object of the rule.
name	string	The human-readable name of the audit data access rule that you specified when you created the rule.
query	string	The query that members of the usergroup(s) are allowed to perform.
groups	list	The usergroup(s) whose access to audit data you want to restrict.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	SemanticError	The configuration contains semantic errors, inconsistencies or other problems that would put the system into an unreliable state if the configuration had been applied. The details section contains the errors that were found in the configuration.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Active sessions

The `api/active-sessions` endpoint has only one parameter and it only serves the DELETE request that closes the specified session.

## URL

```
DELETE https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/active-sessions?id=<session_id>
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the Access Control Lists (ACLs):

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/acls
```

The user (in this example, `user1`) has to be a member of a group that has read and write/perform privileges for Active Sessions (`/special/active_sessions`). After authentication, `user1` can close the active session determined by the session ID.

```
curl -k --user user1 --cookie-jar /tmp/cookie https://192.168.122.194/api/authentication
```

```
curl -k --cookie /tmp/cookie https://192.168.122.194/api/active-sessions?id=svc/rpokH8fD9kx6CaxNLznKx2/test:12 -X DELETE
```



## Closing active sessions in a cluster environment

In a cluster environment, after authentication, user1 can close active sessions recorded on Search Minion nodes through the Search Master node's IP address.

```
curl -k --cookie /tmp/cookie https://<IP-address-of-Search-Master-SPS>/api/active-sessions?id=<session_id> -X DELETE
```

Active sessions recorded on the Search Local node can be closed only from the node itself.

```
curl -k --cookie /tmp/cookie https://<IP-address-of-Search-Local-SPS>/api/active-sessions?id=<session_id> -X DELETE
```

Active sessions recorded on the Search Minion node can be closed from the node itself, as well.

```
curl -k --cookie /tmp/cookie https://<IP-address-of-Search-Minion-SPS>/api/active-sessions?id=<session_id> -X DELETE
```

**NOTE:** The following scenarios are not supported:

- Closing an active session recorded on Search Local node from the Search Master node.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	SessionIdMissing	No session ID is given in the "id" query parameter.
404	SessionCouldNotBeFound	No session could be found for the given session ID. Select an ongoing session at the Active Connections page on the Web UI and give its session ID as "id" query parameter.
500	SessionTerminationFailed	The session could not be terminated due to internal errors.
500	RemoteNodeInfoMissing	The cluster node where the session is being recorded is missing from your primary node's configuration. For assistance, contact our Support Team.
503	SessionTerminationServiceUnavailable	Session termination service is

Code	Description	Notes
		unavailable on the specific host for closing sessions. To make sure session termination service is running, login to the host CLI and issue the 'systemctl restart sessiontermination.service' command.
504	MinionUnavailable	The minion node that is recording the session is unavailable. To get more information about the missing node, navigate to /api/cluster-status.

## Manage users and usergroups locally on SPS

Contains the endpoints for managing users and usergroups locally on SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints of the local database.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "groups",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "users",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/acls",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "next": "/api/configuration/aaa/settings",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/aaa/acls",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Description
<a href="#">groups</a>	Endpoint that contains local usergroups.
<a href="#">users</a>	Endpoint that contains local usernames.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Manage usergroups locally on SPS

Contains the local usergroups of SPS. You can use local groups to control the privileges of SPS local and LDAP users — who can view and configure what. You can edit the group memberships here as well.

Note that currently you cannot edit the privileges (ACLs) of the groups using the REST API. If you change the privileges of a usergroup on the SPS web interface, the changes will apply to the users when they authenticate again on SPS, the privileges of active sessions are not affected.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions</p>

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the local usergroups.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying a particular usergroup endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "members": [],
    "name": "http-write"
  },
  "key": "ca2dc85730ca082ee6b5c8",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/224696054489c27f6c5710",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/ca2dc85730ca082ee6b5c8",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/ca2dc85730ca082ee6b5f8",
    "next": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/b080b1ba546232548bb1f9",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/b080b1ba546232548bb1a9",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
body	Top level element (JSON object)	Contains the properties of the usergroup.
members	list	Lists the names of the users belonging to

Element	Type	Description
		the group.
name	string	The name of the group.
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
409	NoTransaction	No open Transaction is available. You must open a transaction first (for details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> on page 29).

## Add new local usergroup

To create a new local usergroup, you have to POST the name and members of the group as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups` endpoint. For details, see [Create a new object](#) on page 45.

### 1. Open a transaction.

For details, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Create a new usergroup.

POST the name of the group and the list of member accounts as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups` endpoint. The body of the POST request should be the following. Note that you must refer to existing user accounts, and use their reference IDs, not their usernames.

```
{
  "name": "new-usergroup",
  "members": ["46785097158061f46c63d0", "1362061674580df4e00620d"]
}
```

For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups --
data '{"name": "new-usergroup", "members": ["46785097158061f46c63d0",
"1362061674580df4e00620d"]}'
```

If the POST request is successful, the response includes a reference ID for the usergroup object.

### 3. Commit your changes.

For details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Delete usergroup

To delete a usergroup, you have to:

1. Open a transaction (for details, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29).
2. DELETE the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/<ID-of-the-group>` endpoint. For details, see [Delete an object](#) on page 43. If the DELETE request is successful, the response includes only the meta object, for example:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_
database/groups/b080b1ba546232548bb1a9",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups"
  }
}
```

3. Commit your changes to actually delete the object from SPS (for details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31).

## Delete user from usergroup

To delete a user from a usergroup, you have to:

1. Open a transaction (for details, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29).
2. Create an updated version of the usergroup object that does not include the user you want to delete.

3. PUT the updated usergroup object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/<ID-of-the-group>` endpoint. For details, see [Delete an object](#) on page 43.
4. Commit your changes to actually delete the object from SPS (for details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31).

## Manage users locally on SPS

Contains the local users of SPS. You can use local users and groups to control the privileges of SPS local and LDAP users — who can view and configure what.

**NOTE:** The admin user is available by default and has all possible privileges. It is not possible to delete this user.

Local users cannot be managed when LDAP authentication is used. When LDAP authentication is enabled, the accounts of local users is disabled, but they are not deleted,

When using RADIUS authentication together with local users, the users are authenticated to the RADIUS server, only their group memberships must be managed locally on SPS.

For details, see [Login settings](#) on page 208.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..



## Sample request

The following command lists the local users.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users
```

The following command displays the parameters of a specific user.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/<ID-of-the-user>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the list of users.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "103640099357f3b14f0529a",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/103640099357f3b14f0529a"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "46785097158061f46c63d0",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/46785097158061f46c63d0"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

The following is a sample response received when querying a specific user.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "testuser",
    "password": {
      "key": "8f84d7d1-9de1-429a-a7a7-c33a61cc7419",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/8f84d7d1-9de1-429a-a7a7-c33a61cc7419"
      }
    },
    "password_created": 1476796261
  },
  "key": "46785097158061f46c63d0",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/103640099357f3b14f0529a",
    "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/46785097158061f46c63d0",
    "last": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/46785097158061f46c63d0",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/103640099357f3b14f0529a",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
body	Top level element (JSON object)	Contains the properties of the user.
name	string	The username of the user account.
password	reference	A reference to a password object. To create or update passwords, see <a href="#">Passwords stored on SPS</a> on page 262.
password_created	integer	The date when the password of the account was changed in UNIX timestamp format (for example, 1476796261).
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the user.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	SemanticError	You tried to reuse a password object. You can use a password object for only one purpose, that is, you cannot reference a password object twice.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
409	NoTransaction	No open Transaction is available. You must open a transaction first (for details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> on page 29).

## Configuring LDAP servers

Configure LDAP AD and LDAP POSIX servers for authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).

### URL

POST [https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/ldap\\_servers](https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers)

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS</p>

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the /aaa/ldap\_servers endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Creating a new LDAP server	POST	/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers	
Retrieving a LDAP server	GET		

## Sample request

The following command creates a new LDAP server.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers
```

The following is a sample request.

```
{
  "name": "ldap-server-name",
  "schema": {
    "selection": "posix",
    "username_attribute": "uid",
    "membership_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "member_uid_attribute": "memberUid"
    },
    "memberof_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "memberof_user_attribute": "memberOf",
      "memberof_group_objectclass": "groupOfNames"
    },
    "user_dn_in_groups": [
      {
        "object_class": "groupOfNames",
        "attribute": "member"
      },
      {
        "object_class": "groupOfUniqueNames",
```

```

        "attribute": "uniqueMember"
      }
    ]
  },
  "servers": [
    {
      "host": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "10.110.0.1"
      },
      "port": 389
    }
  ],
  "user_base_dn": "ou=People,dc=example",
  "group_base_dn": "ou=Groups,dc=example",
  "bind_dn": null,
  "bind_password": null,
  "encryption": {
    "selection": "disabled"
  }
}

```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when you retrieve LDAP server information. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "body": {
        "bind_dn": null,
        "bind_password": null,
        "encryption": {
          "selection": "disabled"
        },
        "group_base_dn": "ou=Groups,dc=example",
        "name": "ldap-server-name",
        "schema": {
          "memberof_check": {
            "enabled": true,
            "memberof_group_objectclass": "groupOfNames",
            "memberof_user_attribute": "memberOf"
          },
          "membership_check": {
            "enabled": true,
            "member_uid_attribute": "memberUid"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

```

    "selection": "posix",
    "user_dn_in_groups": [
      {
        "attribute": "member",
        "object_class": "groupOfNames"
      },
      {
        "attribute": "uniqueMember",
        "object_class": "groupOfUniqueNames"
      }
    ],
    "username_attribute": "uid"
  },
  "servers": [
    {
      "host": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "10.110.0.1"
      },
      "port": 389
    }
  ],
  "user_base_dn": "ou=People,dc=example"
},
"key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
"meta": {
  "href": "/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX"
}
]
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
bind_dn	string	The Distinguished Name that SPS should use to bind to the LDAP directory.  Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to ldap.	<b>NOTE:</b> SPS accepts both pre Windows 2000-style and Windows 2003-style account names, or User Principal Names (UPNs). For example, administrator@example.com is also accepted.
bind_password	null   string	References the password	<b>NOTE:</b> One Identity

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		<p>SPS uses to authenticate on the server. You can configure passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to ldap.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>	<p>Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) accepts passwords that are not longer than 150 characters and supports the following characters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letters A-Z, a-z</li> <li>Numbers 0-9</li> <li>The space character</li> <li>Special characters: !"#\$%&amp;'()*+,-./:;&lt;&gt;=?@[]\^_`{ }~ </li> </ul>
encryption	union	Configuration settings for encrypting the communication between SPS and the LDAP server.	The displayed value type depends on the encryption.selection parameter.
encryption.selection	enum	<p>Defines the type of encryption SPS uses to communicate with the LDAP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled The communication is not encrypted.</li> <li>ssl TLS/SSL encryption. To use a TLS-encrypted with certificate verification to connect to the LDAP server, use the full domain name (for example ldap.example.com) as the server address, otherwise the certificate verification might fail. The name of the LDAP server</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Example if the value is disabled <pre>{   "selection":   "disabled" }</pre> </li> <li>Example if the value is ssl or starttls: <pre>{   "selection":   "ssl     starttls",   "trust_store":   null &lt;trust-   store-ref&gt;,   "client_   authentication":   null &lt;x509-ref&gt; }</pre> </li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		<p>must appear in the Common Name of the certificate.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> TLS-encrypted connection to Microsoft Active Directory is supported only on Windows 2003 Server and newer platforms. Windows 2000 Server is not supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>starttls</li> </ul> <p>Opportunistic TLS.</p>	
group_base_dn	string	<p>Name of the DN to be used as the base of queries regarding groups.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You must fill in this field. It is OK to use the same value for user_base_dn and group_base_dn. However, note that specifying a sufficiently narrow base for the LDAP subtrees where users and groups are stored can speed up LDAP operations.</p>	<p>Example:</p> <pre>"ou=users,ou=example"</pre>
name	string	<p>Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.</p>	
schema	union	<p>AD and POSIX specific LDAP configuration.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Example with LDAP AD server, where the schema selection is ad:</li> </ul> <pre>{   "selection":</pre>



Element	Type	Description	Notes
			<pre>"ad",   "membership_ check": ...,   "memberof_ check": ...,   "user_dn_in_ groups": ... }</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Example with LDAP POSIX server, where the schema selection is posix: <pre>{   "selection": "posix",   "membership_ check": ...,   "memberof_ check": ...,   "user_dn_in_ groups": ...,   "username_ attribute": ... }</pre> </li> </ul>
schema.memberof_ check	object	The Enable checking for group DN's in user objects setting allows checking a configurable attribute in the user object. This attribute contains a list of group DN's the user is additionally a member of. This user attribute is usually memberOf.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Example with LDAP AD server, if memberof_check and memberof_user_attribute are enabled: <pre>"schema": {  "memberof_ check": {  "enabled": true,  "memberof_user_ attribute": "memberOf"  }  }</pre> </li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Example with LDAP POSIX server, if memberof_check is enabled:</li> </ul> <pre>"schema": {   "memberof_check": {     "enabled": true,     "memberof_group_objectclass": "groupOfNames",     "memberof_user_attribute": "memberOf"   } }</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable memberof_check for both LDAP AD and LDAP POSIX servers, set the enabled parameter to false.</li> </ul> <pre>"schema": {   "memberof_check": {     "enabled": false   } }</pre>
schema.memberof_check.enabled	boolean	To enable memberof_check, set it to true.	
schema.memberof_check.memberof_group_objectclass	string	The attribute holding the members of the LDAP group.	<p>This field is case-sensitive.</p> <p>Default value: groupOfNames</p>
schema.memberof_	string	Must be used if the	This attribute is the same

Element	Type	Description	Notes
check.memberof_ user_attribute		memberof_check is set it to true. The name of the user attribute (for example, memberOf) that contains the group DNs.	for both LDAP AD and LDAP POSIX schema.
schema.membership_ check	object	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• POSIX: POSIX primary and supplementary group membership checking.</li> <li>• AD: Active Directory specific non-primary group membership checking.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Example with LDAP AD server, if membership_check and nested_groups are enabled: <pre> "membership_check": {     "enabled": true,     "nested_groups": true   false" }</pre> </li> <li>• Example with LDAP POSIX server, if membership_check and member_uid_attribute are enabled: <pre> "membership_check": {     "enabled": true,     "member_uid_attribute": null   "memberUid" }</pre> </li> <li>• To disable membership_check for both LDAP AD and LDAP POSIX servers, set the enabled parameter to false.</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
			<pre>"membership_ check": {  "enabled": false }</pre>
schema.membership_ check.enabled	boolean	<p>POSIX: Enables POSIX primary and supplementary group membership checking.</p> <p>AD: Enables Active Directory specific non-primary group membership checking.</p>	
schema.membership_ check.member_uid_ attribute	string	<p>Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to posix.</p> <p>The POSIX group membership attribute name is the name of the attribute in a posixGroup group object, which lists the plain usernames that are members of the group. These groups are usually referred to as supplementary groups of the referred user. Can be null.</p>	Default value: memberId
schema.selection	string	<p>Configures which LDAP schema to use: AD or POSIX. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ad: Microsoft Active Directory server. For details and examples, see <a href="#">Configuring LDAP servers</a>.</li> <li>posix: The server uses the POSIX LDAP scheme.</li> </ul> <p>Must be used with the</p>	Default value: ad, posix

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		member_uid_attribute and username_attribute elements. For details and examples, see <a href="#">Configuring LDAP servers</a> .	
schema.user_dn_in_groups	array	Add object_class / attribute pairs. SPS will search for the user DN in the group's attribute defined here. If it finds the user DN there, SPS considers the user the member of that group.	<p>Example:</p> <pre>"user_dn_in_groups": [     {         "attribute":         "member",          "object_class":         "groupOfNames"     },     {         "attribute":         "uniqueMember",          "object_class":         "groupOfUniqueNames"     } ]</pre> <p>The array can return empty:</p> <pre>"user_dn_in_groups": []</pre> <p>user_dn_in_groups can serve as additional validation. At least one out of membership_check, memberof_check or user_dn_in_groups must be filled for validation.</p>
schema.user_dn_in_groups.attribute	string	Name of the group attribute which contains the user DN.	Default value: member

Element	Type	Description	Notes
schema.user_dn_in_groups.object_class	string	Consider groups of this objectClass.	Possible values: groupOfNames, groupOfUniqueNames
schema.username_attribute	string	The login attribute that uniquely identifies a single user record.	Default value: uid
servers	array	Contains the addresses and ports of the LDAP servers.	The displayed value type depends on the servers.host.selection parameter. Possible values are: ip, fqdn

- Example if the host selection is ip:

```
"servers": [
{
  "host":{
    "selection":
    "ip",
    "value":
    "1.2.3.4"
  },
  "port": 123
},
],
```

- Example, if the host selection is fqdn:

```
"servers": [
{
  "host": {
```

Element	Type	Description	Notes
			<pre>         "selection":         "fqdn",          "value":         "my.example"      },      "port": 123  } ], </pre>
servers.host	object	Contains the address of the LDAP server.	
servers.host.selection	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name).	<p>Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The LDAP server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip The LDAP server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
servers.host.value	string	The address of the LDAP server.	
servers.port	int	The port of the LDAP server.	
user_base_dn	string	<p>Name of the DN to be used as the base of queries regarding users.</p> <p>Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to ldap.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You must fill in this field. It is OK to use the same value for user_base_dn and group_base_dn.</p>	<p>For example:</p> <pre>"ou=groups,o-ou=example"</pre>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		However, note that specifying a sufficiently narrow base for the LDAP subtrees where users and groups are stored can speed up LDAP operations.	

## Configure LDAP servers

To configure an LDAP server, you have to:

1. Open a transaction.  
For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.
2. Create the JSON object for the new LDAP server configuration.  
POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#) .
3. Commit your changes.  
For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Configuring SPS login methods

Use the `/aaa/login_methods` endpoint to configure multiple login methods for SPS. Possible login methods are the following:

- Local login
- LDAP login (AD or POSIX)
- X509 login
- RADIUS login

## URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the /aaa/login\_methods endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Configuring the Local login method	POST	/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods	<p><b>NOTE:</b> Changing your password is possible only with Local login.</p>
Configuring the X509 login method			<p>Before you can configure the X509 login method, you must upload your X509 certificate to a trust store at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/trust_stores</a> endpoint.</p>
Configuring the password-based LDAP login method (AD or POSIX)			<p>Before you can configure the LDAP login method, you must create a new LDAP server at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers</a> endpoint.</p>
Configuring the RADIUS login method			

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Reordering login methods	PUT	/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods/@order	By default, the <b>Local login</b> method button appears as the first login method on the SPS web interface. To reorder the login method buttons, use the /@order endpoint.

## Sample request

The following command creates a new login method.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods
```

The following parameters are applicable to all login methods - **Local**, **LDAP**, **X509**, and **RADIUS**.

Element	Type	Description	Notes
type	enum	The login method type used for authentication.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>local Use a local user database for authentication.</li> <li>x509 Use a X509 certificate for authentication.</li> <li>ldap Use an LDAP server (AD or POSIX) for authentication.</li> <li>radius Use a RADIUS server for authentication.</li> </ul>
name	string	A unique identifier of the login method.	
title	string	The title that appears above the login method button on the SPS web	In the case of X509 login method, there is

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		interface. This can be customized.	only one button.
active	boolean	Indicates whether the login method is enabled or not.	

### Example: Sample request for configuring Local login

```
{
  "type": "local",
  "name": "inactive-local",
  "title": "Local login",
  "active": false,
  "cracklib_enabled": true,
  "expiration_days": 30,
  "remember_previous_passwords": 10,
  "minimum_password_strength": "good",
  "minimum_password_length": 1
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
cracklib_enabled	boolean	<p>Password setting. Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to local.</p> <p>Set to true to test the strength of user passwords with simple dictionary attacks before they are committed.</p> <p>Set to false if a RADIUS server or X.509 certificate is used for authentication.</p>	<p><b>NOTE:</b> The strength of a password is determined by its length and complexity: the variety of numbers, letters, capital letters, and special characters used.</p> <p>To run simple dictionary-based attacks to find weak passwords, enable <b>Cracklib (eg. dictionary) protection.</b></p>
expiration_days	integer	<p>Password setting. Configures the number of days the user passwords</p>	<p>Set to 0 if a RADIUS server or X.509 certificate is used for authentication.</p>

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		are considered valid. Expired passwords must be changed upon login.	The 0 value means the passwords do not expire. The highest value you can configure is 365.  Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to local.
remember_previous_passwords	integer	Password setting. Configures the number of previous passwords to retain to prevent password reuse.	Set to 0 if a RADIUS server or X.509 certificate is used for authentication.  The 0 value means passwords can be reused.  Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to local.
minimum_password_strength	string	Password setting. Configures the required password strength for new passwords.	Set to disabled if a RADIUS server or X.509 certificate is used for authentication.  Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled Any password is accepted.</li> <li>good Weak passwords are not accepted.</li> <li>strong Only strong passwords are accepted.</li> </ul> Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to local.
minimum_password_length	number	The minimum number of characters the password must consist of.	

### Example: Sample request for configuring LDAP login

```
{
  "type": "ldap",
  "name": "ldap",
  "title": "LDAP login",
  "active": true,
  "ldap_server": "5ed1b422-395a-4d5e-abf0-b43cd6c752f8"
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
ldap_server	string	The identifier of the previously created LDAP server.	

### Example: Sample request for configuring X509 login

```
{
  "type": "x509",
  "name": "x509",
  "title": "X509 login",
  "active": true,
  "trust_store": "5ed1b422-395a-4d5e-abf0-b43cd6c752f8",
  "username_attribute": "commonName",
  "groups": {
    "type": "local"
  }
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
trust_store	string	The identifier of the X509 certificate that was previously uploaded into	Trust stores serve as local certificate storages where users can store the

Element	Type	Description	Notes
		Trust stores.	certificate chains of trusted Certificate Authorities (CAs).
username_attribute	enum	The login attribute that uniquely identifies a single user record. You can choose which type of username you want to use.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• commonName</li> <li>• emailAddress</li> <li>• userId</li> <li>• userPrincipalName</li> </ul>
groups	object	The location of your group from which you will authorize access.	
groups.type	enum	The type of the group.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• local</li> <li>• ldap</li> </ul> If the group type is ldap, the identifier of the previously created LDAP server (the value of the ldap_server field) will appear.

## Example: Configuring X509 login with LDAP groups

### To configure a X509 login with LDAP groups

#### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

#### 2. Create a new LDAP server at the [/api/configuration/aaa/ldap\\_servers](/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers) endpoint.

```
{
  "name": "ldap_server",
  "schema": {
    "selection": "posix",
    "username_attribute": "uid",
```

```

    "membership_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "member_uid_attribute": "memberUid"
    },
    "memberof_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "memberof_user_attribute": "memberOf",
      "memberof_group_objectclass": "groupOfNames"
    },
    "user_dn_in_groups": [
      {
        "object_class": "groupOfNames",
        "attribute": "member"
      },
      {
        "object_class": "groupOfUniqueNames",
        "attribute": "uniqueMember"
      }
    ]
  },
  "servers": [
    {
      "host": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "1.2.3.4"
      },
      "port": 389
    }
  ],
  "user_base_dn": "ou=People,dc=example",
  "group_base_dn": "ou=Groups,dc=example",
  "bind_dn": null,
  "bind_password": null,
  "encryption": {
    "selection": "disabled"
  }
}

```

3. Upload a X509 certificate at the [/api/configuration/trust\\_stores](/api/configuration/trust_stores) endpoint.

```

{
  "name": "X509_Trust_Store",
  "authorities": [
    "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

```

```

\nMIIDZzCCAk+gAwIBAgIUM1I5+EgTDAh2zqRDGYrzFRyozI8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEL\nB
QAwQzELMAkGA1UEBhMCSFUxETAPBgNVBAGMCEJ1ZGFwZXN0MSEwHwYDVQQKDBhJ\nbnRl
cm5ldCBXaWRnaXRzIFB0eSBMdGQwHhcNMTQwODEyMTIzNjQ4WhcNMzQwNjE4\nMTIzNjQ
4WjBDMQswCQYDVQQGEwJIVTERMA8GA1UECAwIQnVhYXBlc3QxITAFBgNV\nbA0MGE1udG
VybWV0IFdpZGdpdHMgUHR5IEEx0ZDCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAD\nnggEPADCCAQoCg
gEBALffJBDD6A/ZGBTgFbyLXHulU+hGnMW3DoPo2q4HY1/FfbkS\nnrzmK+Fiz+3EwJCWi
+EwK9mqve/nh6YRRw/VaAVQ7CkA7f7to+I7gP647Bq1wk0lh\nnBVEJN1N0jfYYSumGxzP
otw/fon1MkXuMbLc0Pr/vFX3NQC7/STAV5dZFcdboXDA7\nnZZ3rzBIR93Th0bsGj01MRO
6wrS3rfe7Px9D7C2u9YSkP30Q1Sfm/jqyLNaT6xt4i\nnhrLnfyEc8mClnrlvILi+q/D6m
IUSjb4IGvergAy14jgPj002UcvBz0IA9tD1BJBi\nnQxZx+T620ubmEw019Q0G8RAWKz7s
zrBcXEjXhYUCAwEAAaNTMFEWQHVDVR00BBYE\nnFCDfEeq5Hsm8jMrG110iNpt5cikTMB8
GA1UdIwQYMBaAFCDfEeq5Hsm8jMrG110i\nnNpt5cikTMA8GA1UdEwEB/wQFMAMBAf8wDQ
YJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggEBAK3iizM4\nnC69YD+4CWOUsULrCJA38C+nDYONLbNkact8
JKXqCn/MaZTII+dZoV9RjjX4AZA\nnPTQkZT+RoVeCZyt+qWHMdjQ6koabXwQmXNozUtax
EZTrnoUDEWtNIbjV/gNtRcSG\nnsU7i9L2YnwDzTw0cR/pu1Hykq8fwqNqjQGYNmXtJspM
kKAtVe1CrtnPLiC6JBr0g\nn5GZF58sHx5+g00RkqdzJgRAGnImdfAahqfHmKRFmxoxWLy
ylRyqDgQ+KqcaDvZI+\nni36M+NQHvRDX4jo4CFoXhF1S0epvtD0pmzoWhugwDNMPuU1IE
Y7//CJBXQnjpu+f\nnL06PsNmMKDGi9Dk=\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
    ],
    "crl_urls": [
        "http://crl.it/sec"
    ],
    "revocation_check": "full"
}

```

4. Create a new LDAP login method at the `/api/configuration/aaa/login_methods` endpoint.

```

{
    "type": "x509",
    "name": "x509",
    "title": "X509 login",
    "active": true,
    "trust_store": "5ed1b422-395a-4d5e-abf0-b43cd6c752f8",
    "username_attribute": "commonName",
    "groups": {
        "type": "ldap",
        "ldap_server": "5ed1b422-395a-4d5e-abf0-b43cd6c752f8"
    }
}

```

## 5. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.



## Example: Configuring RADIUS login with local groups

### *To configure a RADIUS login with local groups*

#### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. Create a new secret for your RADIUS server at the [/api/configuration/passwords/](#) endpoint. For example, **any.secret**.
3. Create a new RADIUS login method at the [/api/configuration/aaa/login\\_methods](#) endpoint.

```
{
  "type": "radius",
  "name": "radius",
  "title": "Radius login",
  "active": true,
  "servers": [
    {
      "address": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "4.5.6.7"
      },
      "port": 1812,
      "shared_secret": "<'key' from the response of
the penultimate creation>"
    },
    {
      "address": {
        "selection": "fqdn",
        "value": "radius.example"
      },
      "port": 18120,
      "shared_secret": "<'key' from the response of
the last creation>"
    }
  ],
  "authentication_protocol": "pap",
  "groups": {
    "type": "local"
  }
}
```

#### 4. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

### Example: Configuring RADIUS login with LDAP groups (AD or POSIX)

#### *To configure a RADIUS login with LDAP groups*

##### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. Create a new LDAP server at the [/api/configuration/aaa/ldap\\_servers](#) endpoint.
3. Create a new secret for your RADIUS server at the [/api/configuration/passwords/](#) endpoint. For example, **any.secret**.
4. Create a new LDAP server login method at the [/api/configuration/aaa/login\\_methods](#) endpoint.

```
{
  "type": "radius",
  "name": "radius",
  "title": "Radius login",
  "active": true,
  "servers": [
    {
      "address": {
        "selection": "fqdn",
        "value": "radius.balabit"
      },
      "port": 18120,
      "shared_secret": "<'key' from the response of the last
creation>"
    }
  ],
  "authentication_protocol": "pap",
  "groups": {
```

```
    "type": "ldap",
    "ldap_server": "<'key' from the response of the penultimate
creation>"
  }
}
```

#### 5. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Response

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Managing SPS

### Troubleshooting options

Configures debug logging and the retention time of core dump files.

- Debug logging increases the log level of the non-network-related events, adding the commands executed by the SPS web interface to the log.
- SPS automatically generates core dump files if an important software component of the system crashes. These core dump files can be of great help to the One Identity Support Team to identify problems. To download the generated core dump files, navigate to **Basic Settings > Troubleshooting > Core files** on the web interface of SPS.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/troubleshooting
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command queries the troubleshooting settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/troubleshooting
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "core_files": {
      "retention_days": 14
    },
    "debug_logging": {
      "enabled": true
    }
  },
  "key": "troubleshooting",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/troubleshooting",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/vnc",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/telnet",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the troubleshooting settings.
core_files	Top level item	Contains the settings for core dump file retention.
retention_days	int	Retention time for core files, in days.
debug_	Top level	Settings for debug logging.

Element	Type	Description
logging	item	
enabled	boolean	Set to true to increase the log level of the non-network-related events, adding the commands executed by the SPS web interface to the log.

## Modify troubleshooting settings

To modify troubleshooting settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the troubleshooting options.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/troubleshooting` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Internal certificates

This endpoint references the certificates of SPS's internal Certificate Authority, Timestamping Authority, and the SSL certificate of the web and REST interface.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/certificates
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the internal certificates of SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/certificates
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the internal certificates of SPS.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "ca": {
      "selection": "identity",
      "x509_identity": {
```

```

    "key": "fbd684e1-e1ac-4f34-ad25-86c560c51e24",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/x509/fbd684e1-e1ac-4f34-ad25-86c560c51e24"
    }
  },
  "server": {
    "key": "fd1c73e8-bcb8-4d13-991f-722f492dc074",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/x509/fd1c73e8-bcb8-4d13-991f-722f492dc074"
    }
  },
  "tsa": {
    "key": "20e72ede-78ef-460a-b843-68a35d994142",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/x509/20e72ede-78ef-460a-b843-68a35d994142"
    }
  }
},
"key": "certificates",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
  "href": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
  "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
  "next": "/api/configuration/management/disk_fillup_prevention",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
  "previous": null,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	The ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the internal certificates of SPS.
ca	Top level item	Contains the certificate of SPS's internal Certificate Authority.
selection	string	Must be set to identity.
x509_identity	string	References the certificate of SPS's internal Certificate Authority. You can configure certificates at the <a href="/api/configuration/x509/">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint. To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the



Element	Type	Description
		value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key). For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.
server	string	<p>References the SSL certificate of SPS's web interface. You can configure certificates at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key). For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.</p>
tlsa	string	<p>References the certificate of SPS's internal Timestamping Authority. You can configure certificates at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key). For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.</p>

## Modify a certificate

To modify a certificate, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create a CA**

Have the value of the key element of a valid X.509 CA certificate stored on SPS.

3. **Modify the JSON object of the endpoint.**

Use the X.509 certificate's key as the value of the ca element. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). PUT the modified JSON object to the <https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/certificates> endpoint.

4. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Passwords stored on SPS

To create a new password, you have to POST the password or its hash as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/passwords` endpoint. For details, see [Create a new object](#) on page 45. The body of the POST request must contain a JSON object with the parameters listed in [Password parameters](#). The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created password in its key attribute. You can reference this ID in other parts of the configuration, for example, to set the password of a user account. Note that you can use a password object for only one purpose, that is, you cannot reference a password object twice.

### URL

POST `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords`

- Note that the GET method is not permitted on this endpoint, you cannot list the existing passwords. However, if you know the reference ID of a password, you can display its properties:

GET `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords/<reference-ID-of-the-password>`

- You cannot directly delete or modify a password, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on password objects. To update a password, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old password to reference the new password.

**Table 3: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

### Sample request

The following command creates a new password object.

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords --data '{"plain": "newpassword"}'
```

If you do not want to include the actual password in the request, the SHA-256 hash of the password is enough:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords --data '{"hash": "$6$rounds=5000$I20/EFyQ4dW3dg/$xrECLfXgZlC2Xr1s257E2aZen42fM7R.sOGG9pkPy1x50RTx6j03oPWexV1B3f5wnaZ0QCBF.NjlDgyg2WEe./"}'
```

**Table 4: Password parameters**

Element	Type	Description
hash	string	Must contain the SHA-256 hash of the password to be created, for example, "hash": "ddec437eeb1da25a146a24c432d1165bc646daa7fecc6aa14c636265c83ca14".
nthash	string	Optional. Contains the NT-HASH of the password to be created, for example, "nthash": "2c01a73ad9e597f6eab0d072ed74616c"
plain	string	Contains the password in plain-text format, for example, "plain": "mypassword".

When choosing the format of your password, the request must contain one of these formats:

- The password format is only in plain-text
- The password format is only a hash
- The password format is only a nthash
- The password format can be both a hash and a nthash.

## Response

The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created password in its key attribute.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/passwords",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
405	MethodNotAllowed	The method <method> is not allowed for this node.

## Modify or delete password

You cannot directly delete or modify a password, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on password objects. To update a password, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old password to reference the new password. After you commit the transaction, SPS will automatically delete the old password. For details, see [Change the admin password](#).

## Change the admin password

To change the password of the admin user, complete the following steps.

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Create a new password object

POST a JSON object containing the password or the hash of the password to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/passwords` endpoint. For details, see [Password parameters](#). For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords --data '{"plain":
"mypassword"}'
```

If the operation is successful, the response includes a reference key to the new password object.

### 3. Reference the key of the password in the user configuration.

Modify the JSON object of the user to reference the key of the new password object, and PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/users/<key-of-the-user>` endpoint. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/local_
database/users/14322374245a7de542bbb04 --data '{"name": "admin",
"password": "<key-of-the-new-password>"}'
```

### 4. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Change the root password

To change the password of the root user, complete the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create a new password object**

POST a JSON object containing the password or the hash of the password to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/passwords` endpoint. For details, see [Password parameters](#). For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords --data '{"plain":
"mypassword"}'
```

If the operation is successful, the response includes a reference key to the new password object.

3. **Configure SPS to use this password for the root user configuration.**

PUT the reference key of the new password object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/root_password` endpoint. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/root_password --
data '<key-of-the-new-password>''
```

Note that you must PUT the reference key as a JSON string, enclosed in double-quotes.

4. Alternatively, instead of performing the previous two steps, you can replace an existing password in a single step, PUT the following JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/root_password` endpoint:

```
{
  "plain": "new_password"
}
```

5. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Change the user password

Logged in users can change their own passwords by completing the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create a new password object

POST a JSON object containing the password or the hash of the password to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/passwords` endpoint. For details, see [Password parameters](#). For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/passwords --data '{"plain":
"mypassword"}'
```

If the operation is successful, the response includes a reference key to the new password object.

## 3. Change the password of the user.

PUT a JSON object that includes the current password in plain text and the key of the new password object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/user/password` endpoint. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/user/password --data '{"current_password_
in_plaintext": "<old-password>", "new_password_reference": "<key-of-the-
new-password>"}'
```

4. Alternatively, instead of performing the previous two steps, you can replace an existing password in a single step, PUT the following JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/root_password` endpoint:

```
{
  "current_password_in_plaintext": "<current_password_in_plaintext>",
  "new_password_reference": {
    "plain": "newpassword"
  }
}
```

## 5. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# Private keys stored on SPS

To create a new private key, you have to POST the private key as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/private_keys` endpoint. For details, see [Create a new object](#) on page 45. The body of the POST request must contain a JSON object with the parameters listed in [Element](#). The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created private key in its key attribute. You can

reference this ID in other parts of the configuration. Note that you can use a private-key object for only one purpose, that is, you cannot reference one object twice.

## URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/private_keys
```

- Note that the GET method is not permitted on this endpoint, you cannot list the existing private keys. However, if you know the reference ID of a private key, you can display its properties:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/private_keys/<reference-ID-of-the-private-key;>
```

- You cannot directly delete or modify a private key, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on private key objects. To update a private key, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old private key to reference the new private key.

**Table 5: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

## Sample request

The following command creates a new private key object. Note the following requirements:

- The key must be in PKCS-1 or PKCS-8 PEM format.
- Encrypted private keys are not supported.
- The body of the POST message must be the private key as a single line, enclosed in double-quotes.
- Replace line-breaks in the PEM file with \n



```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/private_keys --data "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
\nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhqe9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2Sch
Dibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n .....
Qbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\n-----END RSA
PRIVATE KEY-----\n"
```

Querying a specific key returns the following information about the key:

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/private_
keys/<reference-ID-of-the-private-key>;>
```

Element	Type	Description
public-key-fingerprint	string	The fingerprint of the public key that matches the private key.
digest	string	The fingerprint of the key, for example 2048 SHA256:JPKdfkT6wU9c11bbqX53hovDo7KbIB80REfumUWD h9f no comment (RSA)
hash_algorithm	string	The hash algorithm used to create the fingerprint, for example, sha256.
type	string	The type of the private key. Must be rsa

## Response

The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created public key in its key attribute.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/private_keys/faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/private_keys",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

The response to querying a specific key is a JSON object that includes the parameters of the key, for example:

```
{
  "body": {
    "public-key-fingerprint": {
      "digest": "2048
SHA256:JPKdfkT6wU9c11bbqX53hovDo7KbIB80REfumUWDh9f no comment (RSA)",
      "hash_algorithm": "sha256"
    },
    "type": "rsa"
  },
  "key": "6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/private_keys/e5d13d18-07c5-43fa-89f4-c3d2ece17c71",
    "href": "/api/configuration/private_keys/6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
    "last": "/api/configuration/private_keys/6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/private_keys",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/private_keys/e5d13d18-07c5-43fa-89f4-c3d2ece17c71",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	SyntacticError	Syntax error: Could not load PEM key: Unsupported private key format, only PKCS-1 and PKCS-8 is supported. Encrypted private keys are not supported.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but

Code	Description	Notes
		could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
405	MethodNotAllowed	The method <method> is not allowed for this node.

## Modify or delete private key

You cannot directly delete or modify a private key, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on private key objects. To update a private key, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old private key to reference the new private key. After you commit the transaction, SPS will automatically delete the old private key.

# Private keys generated on SPS

In some security contexts it might be a requirement to generate private keys on the appliance so that you can avoid any kind of eavesdropping during the transfer of the unencrypted key. Safeguard for Privileged Sessions supports generating Elliptic Curve (secp256r1) private keys on its REST API. You must use the REST API to use the generated key in the configuration. SPS supports the on-box generated private keys to be used for the following purposes:

- for the web server, timestamping authority or CA  
(/api/configuration/management/certificates, see [Internal certificates](#) on page 259)
- SMTP client authentication (/api/configuration/management/email, see [Mail settings](#) on page 144)
- Syslog client authentication (/api/configuration/management/syslog, see [Syslog server settings](#) on page 135)
- LDAP client authentication (for policies: /api/configuration/policies/ldap\_servers, see [LDAP servers](#) on page 393, and for authentication: /api/configuration/aaa/ldap\_servers, see [Configuring LDAP servers](#) on page 231)

Overview of the steps required to use on-box generated private keys in the configuration:

1. Generate a private key and a certificate signing request (CSR).
2. Obtain the CSR and send it to a certificate authority (CA). The required steps for performing the validation are mandated by the CA.
3. Once the CA signs the certificate, upload it to SPS.
4. Change the relevant REST configuration element to refer to the freshly generated 'X.509 identifier' (which is a reference to a private key and the associated certificate chain).

5. (Optional): You might want to delete the private key if you want to prevent the key to be used for a different purpose on the SPS.

**NOTE:** In this case, whenever the certificate expires, you must generate a fresh private key and CSR.

**Perequisites:** A certificate authority must be configured in [Trust stores](#) on page 187.

## URL

```
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate
```

**Table 6: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

## Operations

Operations with the /api/pki/certificate endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Generating a new CSR	POST	/api/pki/certificate/requests	
Adding an X.509 certificate chain to a CSR to create a X.509 identifier	PUT	/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>	

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Setting or replacing a certificate chain for a CSR without knowing the CSR identifier	POST	/api/pki/certificate	X.509 identifier that have been referenced in the configuration will not be updated automatically, when you replace a certificate chain for a CSR. If you want to use the newly created X.509 identifier, you must set or update the reference to it in the configuration.
Querying existing CSRs	GET	/api/pki/certificate/requests	
Querying a single CSR	GET	/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>	
Deleting a CSR	DELETE	/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>	Deleting a CSR does not remove the corresponding X.509 identifier from the configuration, that is, the existing private key and certificate chain pair remains in use until you update the reference. Unreferenced X.509 identifiers are removed automatically.

### Example: Generating a new CSR

The following command creates a new CSR.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate/requests
```

```
{
  "subject": [
    {"name": "countryName", "value": "US"},
    {"name": "stateOrProvinceName", "value": "CA"},
    {"name": "streetAddress", "value": "Example Street"},
    {"name": "organizationName", "value": "Example
Organization"},
    {"name": "commonName", "value": "first.example.com"},
    {"name": "emailAddress", "value": "info@example.com"}
  ],
  "extensions": [
    {"name": "basicConstraints", "value": "CA:FALSE", "critical":
true},
    {"name": "keyUsage", "value":
"digitalSignature,keyAgreement", "critical": true},
    {"name": "extendedKeyUsage", "value": "clientAuth",
"critical": false},
    {"name": "subjectAltName", "value":
"IP:123.123.123.123,DNS:example2.organization.com", "critical": false}
  ]
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
subject			
subject.name	string	The subject name must be an object identifier (OID), or a name that can be translated to an OID.	Example values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>countryName</li><li>stateOrProvinceName</li><li>streetAddress</li><li>organizationName</li><li>commonName</li><li>emailAddress</li></ul>
subject.value	string		
extensions	object	The list of extensions.	If you do not want to specify

Element	Type	Description	Notes
			any extensions in the request, use an empty list.
extensions.name	enum	The name of the extension.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• basicConstraints</li> <li>• keyUsage</li> <li>• extendedKeyUsage</li> <li>• subjectAltName</li> <li>• subjectInfoAccess</li> </ul>
extensions.value	string	The value of the extension.	
extensions.critical	boolean	Indicates whether the extension should be marked as critical in the request.	

## Response

The following is a sample response received when a new CSR is created.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
    "parent": "/api/pki/certificate/requests"
  }
}
```

## Setting or updating a certificate chain for a CSR

There are two ways to set or update a certificate chain for a CSR:

- Use a **PUT request**, if you know the CSR identifier.
- Use a **POST request**, if you do not know the CSR identifier. In this case the REST API automatically selects the CSR based on the information in the first certificate in the chain.

## Example with PUT request: Replacing a web server certificate

### To replace a web server certificate, you have to

1. Generate a new CSR. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in the request message body table of **Example: Generating a new CSR**. The result will be the identifier of the new CSR.
2. Send a GET request to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>` endpoint. Obtain the PEM value of the CSR.
3. Send the CSR to the trusted certificate authority (CA).

The CA validates your request for using the stored certificate. If the validation is successful, it will respond with a signed X.509 certificate chain. The first element of this certificate chain must be the certificate to be used by SPS. The chain might contain CA certificates in the hierarchy.

#### 4. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

5. Send a PUT request to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>` endpoint. The request must include:
  - the X.509 certificate chain
  - the identifier of the trust store that is used to validate the certificate chain, or null, if you want to disable validation

```
{
  "certificate_chain": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIID+zCCAeOgAwIBAgIBTDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADAXMRUwEwYDVQDDAxFe
GFt\ncGx1IENBIDIwHhcNMjAwODMxMTIyMDU2WhcNMzAxMDE4MTIyMDU2WjCBsj
ELMAkG\nA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAGMAkNBMRcwFQYDVQQHDA5FeGFtcGx1IEN
pdHkgMjEf\nMB0GA1UECgwWRXhxbXBsZSBPcmdhbm16YXRpb24gMjEVMBMGA1UE
CwwMRXhxbXBs\nZSBVbm10MR0wGAYDVQQDDBF0aGlyZC5leGFtcGx1LmNvbTEOM
AwGA1UEEQwFMTIz\nNDUxGTAXBgNVBAkMEEV4YW1wbGUgU3RyZWV0IDIwTATBg
cqhkJOPQIBBgqhkJ0\nPQMBBwNCAASYBjc7KadwuOF1I4YAPxtBUxc1fUj9DIg
uud5B1+06jTdPnTqVo00w\n23LO0ILzuJ+JXMc8gvv+BtRhZrNM1IYao4GAMH4w
CQYDVR0TBAlwADALBgNVHQ8E\nBAMCA4gwEwYDVR0lBAwwCgYIKwYBBQUHAWIwE
QYJYIZIAyb4QgEBBAQDAgeAMB0G\nA1UdDgQWBBSt0NXz4/3yMPCmfoz8hurej0
mByzAdBgNVHREEFjAUGHJmb3VydGgu\nZXhxbXBsZS5jb20wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQE
LBQADggIBAIHEw56a3Wmhyx9q0lVEDYsz\nQYYfmyxapPBxSrBCfhPq7hDSyUf5
ZizeQ14C48zgd0pWEjONI3jyJp0pQzu++Qsy\nFyErYqhXsbG0bhBTyAjGfvPiB
```





Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
certificate_chain	string or list	The certificate chain can be specified as a string of individual certificates separated by a newline, or as a list of strings containing the certificates. The certificates must be specified in PEM format.	
trust_store	string	The identifier of the trust store that is used to validate the certificate chain, or null, if you want to disable validation.	

The result will be the X.509 identifier referring to the private key + certificate chain pair.

| **NOTE:** The X.509 identifier can only be used in REST configuration.

6. Use the X.509 identifier to replace your web server certificate. For more information, see [Internal certificates](#) on page 259.

## 7. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Example with POST request: Replacing a web server certificate

**To replace a web server certificate without knowing the CSR identifier, you have to**

1. Generate a new CSR. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in the request message body table of Example: Generating a new CSR. The result will be the identifier of the new CSR.
2. Send a GET request to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate/requests/<ID-of-the-CSR>` endpoint. Obtain the PEM value of the CSR.
3. Send the CSR to the trusted certificate authority (CA).

The CA validates your request for using the stored certificate. If the validation is successful, it will respond with a signed X.509 certificate chain. The first

element of this certificate chain must be the certificate to be used by SPS. The chain might contain CA certificates in the hierarchy.

#### 4. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

- Send a POST request to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/pki/certificate` endpoint. The request must include:
  - the X.509 certificate chain
  - the identifier of the trust store that is used to validate the certificate chain, or `null`, if you want to disable validation

```
{
  "certificate_chain": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIID+zCCAeOgAwIBAgIBTDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADAXMRUwEwYDVQZDdAxFE
GFt\ncGxLIENBIDIwHhcNMjAwODMxMTIyMDU2WhcNMzAxMDE4MTIyMDU2WjCBsj
ELMAKGl\nA1UEBhMCVVMx\nCzAJBgNVBAGMAkNBMRcwFQYDVQZDhDA5FeGFtcGxLIEN
pdHkgMjFf\n\nmNB0GA1UECgwWRXhhbXBsZSBPcmdhbm16YXRpb24gMjEVMBMGMA1UE
CwwMRXhhbXBsZ\n\nZSBVbm10MR0wGAYDVQZDDBF0aGlyZC5leGFtcGx1LmNvbTEOM
AwGA1UEEQwFMtIz\n\nnNDUxGTAXBgNVBAKMEEV4YW1wbGUgU3RyZWV0IDIwWTATBg
cqhkjOPQIBBggqhkjO\n\nnPQMBBwNCAASYBjc7KadwuOFlI4YAPxtBUxc1fUj9DIg
uud5B1+06jTdpnTqVo0w\n\nn23L00ILzuJ+JXMc8gvv+BtRhznNM1IYao4GAMH4w
CQYDVR0TBAlwADALBgNVHQ8E\n\nnBAMCA4gwEwYDVR0lBAwwCgYIKwYBBQUHAWIwE
QYJYIZIAYb4QgEBBAQDAgeAMB0G\n\nnA1UdDgQWBBSst0NXz4/3yMPCmfoz8hurej0
mByzAdBgNVHREEFjAUghJmb3VydGgu\n\nnZXhhbXBsZS5jb20wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQE
LBQADggIBAIHEw56a3WmhYx9q0LVEDYsz\n\nnQYYfmyxapPBxSrBCfhPq7hDSyUf5
ZizeQ14C48zgd0pWEjONI3jyJp0pQzu++Qsy\n\nnFyErYqhXsbG0bhBTyAjGfvPiB
uNjIbrfzMAdavYUv4dtFCi49gByjHshJbGYDqPP\n\nnbR1Zzky8/B20IvarmlEig
8bnJXWqk0juQOQ61M06bjycrFRXyNo3EdF8J54Tgy4\n\nnH9ZCPKvQXB5fGVjGyx
tfbr3Hij3/B/Lv0mrKb/qCxEv18ACtrT11VRDAbgVIzn4\n\nnYMPoroTJhqkU70au
Bqu9eDDHUzc1VfXMUSV3UD+IuCEpoB1f7a1YRp/kSLp+XpO+
\nnZn+9SA4IFI7cb
PwDM45po51GkmpCG9xQhj7q7UKnvCj4fov34fp/GwjPrqZZ5TykQ\n\nnpYNJfUd/dn
8N4zNM/1kw2HLbg2bgO6ARaTl0s9kr0gv3RKFrNZb9nXYvkedNeXFA\n\nn4s1yfG9
kNF9CoSYZB1pz5aZNBzn9re5+PKoIiccBUKS209jd6ZJZTfu3oq3FibaU\n\nnYVJK
ZraUajXFEDr0qS5/XtJUMcmQCXITLlpsOdnyGhN23I7w/vImqN06cTeoKFl\n\ni\n\nnY
t+zCq8nNfcJp6n3YsfUT1ZRw2ros+8ARY0Wzdd8SCv0sx9xu+CFotWR4aOqCd93
\n\nnooq6yMj8UwretI+1kHim\n\n\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n\n-----BEGIN
CERTIFICATE-----

\nMIIF0zCCAYOgAwIBAgIBAJANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADAXMRUwEwYDVQZDdAxFE
GFt\ncGxLIENBIDIwHhcNMjAwNzEzMTczMTE4WhcNMzAxMDE4MTIyMDU2WjAXMR
UwEwYD\n\n\nVQZDdAxFEGFtcGxLIENBIDIwggIiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBQUAAICDwa
wggIKAoIC\n\n\naQCAQ937PQAp9CCNXk5b6VhqIBXRax1TYcwGR2e1f0SRy2KP41mS
0jYoZbbJRCj+\n\n\nnwPtFK02AD4RNU0OnSkfTX8aEAnBZTBwdMQv9Nod+lOrHtmOoS
```

```

We4dbkDLYZPD0qn\n8VYMrr/aHwImli7MHsITNzdioVZ7p3andLWrEh8a04yDAq
kdQwi9M8X6GPzBmLKk\nVtYR/wMaZg9W24eT9mMN06sCFxtUeIT2v+jrCSV7FLW
AgEFJhoyZpT2uigbFhnIp\nB3gnJfUv6MRh6BSeLNF8S0GbqoyJFYFtWlKv/HL9
rGtCOjfdxX8K3zhmNKpM0Aiw\njg2XUivWxySZ10TPi8Fu7KKj8g47hiGkERWHP
BmswjAq+fBoaircIHmqQUeHPLaD\nny6IIPuCDljAvtC/M6TlAMX7aGOG0R49LEO
0UtVvWjyHAKLSntACx7sVLXXWjr0ku\nnrrVdm4UUX5aLLbS+s0Xum5sNKZLqBYu
5B2KPxBfhqXKGL0AJ0IHAM5cgG7LPTrdX\nnRDin0/82RErqqGK+DrhgLP+/kTK/
UvWIm8SGN5HfP4Cod/di/11GBjhMYBcHePW7\nnCbgHap4m4vNHSGoPYdKbD/dal
Me1pjTx+lw1HfVIXSysWkC7PTG+LZNn1zLzjs2J\nnVE00cG+gjDoudb43j/T4j
1pw5R24iaQ+oq9gpj0MY5qewIDAQABo4GRMIGOMAwG\nA1UdEwQFMAMBAf8wCwY
DVR0PBAQDAgEGMBEGCWCsAGG+EIBAQQEAWIBBjAdBgNV\nnHQ4EFgQU5wDSfrQ
a+fJkM6Ek07dbkG3l30wPwYDVR0jBDgwNoAUs5wDSfrQa+fJ\nnkM6Ek07dbkG3l
32hG6QZMBcxFTATBgNVBAMMDEV4YW1wbGUgQ0EgMoIBAjanBgkq\nnhkiG9w0BAQ
0FAAOCAgEakf2J2M4eHDnRTGQsZTcs91SdV/2fH0W+NLTRdG09V0NL\nnKMRXr1J
8Gy3A/4U/Hx5Lo4dQQckePTdXzFQARX5m/7VIf2+YlUDlNre/fMt5aeWG\nn67v1
UnUYLqgHqV2G5QmqZ26DUwcMTXK3oy8rqel1xtQAK1Cpfdvfi7gn2cEFRD7U\nne
xg3AemJMBV26spcGnaf/smfcHeVWo9lwqzyWzwvGYTEeb1MajCgINnh39DZBH10
\nnPE77yRyuAntDzWMo0ZNN1U+FpHTexhooQnYRKtEagHDTTF2ZuSkcJncz1TFAP
4cM\ntvEro4ePMdxLuMf41VrBt+OudsVnoi+j+U90HJst7Czk5MxyZzGHgkmX0g+
JUW49D\nn0fjDq0HiW64QeWYu+lsEFS+2sHES82R/JBmXWbqHy68JhDUubzAi7nR
XEHKp9N3\nnXF6jD3Fyn47kN4uYeHas9eCvMFmxfv6TGzCPgfS9PH0ZaZLM/Cp6
u9l4DhyvFV9n\nnuazsa9pkwlQftE8L1Xo/hGmKBdLGJDRDQo1r4eYYZlzs94tj5
p0thztTmUWZF0l2\nnd0Tyux8EvhpsefDYwtlJ1wxqvFdDm5WGCxeZd6YAsV/Kuk
VQLakX1LS/i7FEFSuL\nnZ89WjWdHC2A3liK0a/y0/vy9g0Y7GScvRnyUSThQ2Y0
DY089KDzY6Q6ILbpsVr8=\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
  "trust_store": "2222"
}

```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
certificate_chain	string or list	The certificate chain can be specified as a string of individual certificates separated by a newline, or as a list of strings containing the certificates. The certificates must be specified in PEM format.	
trust_store	string	The identifier of the trust store that is used to validate the certificate chain, or null, if you want to disable validation.	

The result will be the X.509 identifier referring to the private key + certificate chain pair.

| **NOTE:** The X.509 identifier can only be used in REST configuration.

6. Use the X.509 identifier to replace your web server certificate. For more information, see [Internal certificates](#) on page 259.

## 7. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

### Example: Querying existing CSRs

The following is a sample response received when existing CSRs are queried.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests",
    "parent": "/api/pki/certificate"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "meta": {"href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX"},
      "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
      "body": {
        "certificate_chain": null,
        "fingerprint": {
          "digest":
"eb:46:b6:bf:dc:4e:c6:cb:81:9b:ee:fd:a1:8d:7d:72:86:3d:48:87:ba:94:e0:0c:79:8e:73:77:fd:5b:97:3b",
          "hash_algorithm": "sha256"
        },
        "subject": [
          {"name": "countryName", "value": "US"},
          {"name": "stateOrProvinceName", "value": "CA"},
          {"name": "streetAddress", "value": "Example Street"},
          {"name": "organizationName", "value": "Example Organization"},
          {"name": "commonName", "value": "first.example.com"},
          {"name": "emailAddress", "value": "info@example.com"}
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    ],
    "extensions": [
      {"name": "basicConstraints", "value": "CA:FALSE", "critical":
true},
      {"name": "keyUsage", "value":
"digitalSignature,keyAgreement", "critical": true},
      {"name": "extendedKeyUsage", "value":
"clientAuth", "critical": false},
      {"name": "subjectAltName", "value":
"IP:123.123.123.123,DNS:second.example.com", "critical": false}
    ],
    "pem": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
\nMIICPzCCAEQCAQAwgegxCzAJBgNVBAYTA1VTMQ4wDAYDVQQRDAUxMjM0NTELMakG\nA1UECA
wCQ0ExFtATBgNVBACMDEV4YW1wbGUgQ2l0eTEXMBUGA1UECQwORXhhbXBs\nZSBTdHJlZXQxHT
AbBgNVBAoMFEV4YW1wbGUgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uMRcwFQYDVQQL\nnDA5FeGFtcGx1IFVuaXQgMT
EXMBUGA1UECwwORXhhbXBsZSBVbm10IDIxGjAYBgNV\nnBAMMEWZpcnN0LmV4YW1wbGUuY29tMR
8wHQYJKoZIhvcNAQkBFBhBpbmZvQGV4YW1w\nnbGUuY29tMFkwEwYHKoZIzj0CAQYIKoZIzj0DAQ
cDQgAEC/MA03IIhG6zInpQxOJ9\nfFnOQlW11IoeMXHfhrhRC90I9W77MjxRNx7gXS1WVcEQPx
gXtE9sHdc6Z8jgupIi\ncKCBmDCB1QYJKoZIhvcNAQkOMYGHMIGEMakGA1UdEwQCMAAwCwYDVR
0PBAQDAgOI\nnMBMGA1UdJQQMMAoGCCsGAQUFBwMCMBEgcwCGSAGG+EIBAQQEAwIGQDAdBgNVHQ
4E\nfGQUdR0ZP/F5s++a46mW+yIgs1CNWwYwIwYDVR0RBBwwGocEe3t7e4ISc2Vjb25k\nnLmV4
YW1wbGUuY29tMAoGCCqGSM49BAMEA0kAMEYCIQCrRLitgHeDJ34VSksqwbZy\nnUA0KlZ6l2Ezr
RHGR0UOPbAIhAKA7u8xplNauUutkQPd4KHT5eyBMs0GUYJm1gr3r\ntZFr\nn-----END
CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----\n",
    "public_key": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMFkwEwYHKoZIzj0CAQYIKoZIzj0DAQcDQgAEC/MA03IIhG6zInpQxOJ9fFnOQlW1\nn1IoeMX
HfhrhRC90I9W77MjxRNx7gXS1WVcEQPxgXtE9sHdc6Z8jgupIicA==\nn-----END PUBLIC
KEY-----\n"
  }
},
{
  "meta": {"href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-
XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXXY"},
  "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXXY",
  "body": {
    "certificate_chain": [
      "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIID+zcCAeOgAwIBAgIBSzanBgqhkiG9w0BAQsFADAXMRUwEwYDVQQDDAxFeGFtc\ncGx1IE
NBIDIwHhcNMjAwNzE0MTUxMzAwWhcNMzAwODMxMTUxMzAwWjCBsjELMAkG\nA1UEBhMCVVMxCz
AJBgNVBAGMAkNBMRcwFQYDVQQHDA5FeGFtcGx1IENpdHkgMjEf\nnMB0GA1UECgwWRXhhbXBsZS
BPcmdhbm16YXRpb24gMjEVMBMGA1UECwwMRXhhbXBs\nZSBVbm10MRowGAYDVQQDDBF0aGlyZC
5leGFtcGx1LmNvbTEOMAwGA1UEEQwFMTIz\nnNDUxGTAXBgNVBAkMEEV4YW1wbGUgU3RyZWV0ID
IwWTATBgqhkJOPQIBBgqhkJ0\nnPQMBBwNCAASYBjc7KadwuOF1I4YAPxtBUxc1fUj9DIguud
5B1+06jTdPnTqVo0w\nn23L00ILzuJ+JXMc8gvv+BtRhZrNM1IYao4GAMH4wCQYDVR0TBAlwAD

```



```

ALBgNVHQ8E\nBAMCA4gwEwYDVR01BAwwCgYIKwYBBQUHAWIwEQYJYIZIAAYb4QgEBBAQDAgeAMB
0G\nA1UdDgQWBBSt0NXz4/3yMPCmfoz8hurej0mByzAdBgNVHREEFjAUGHjmb3VydGgu\nZXhh
bXBsZS5jb20wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggIBAIVzuARB37ZLux/aCaRDwQ0W\nW/+TctyeLRku
g31BGH75cLdEwO63VT4xmB9cbd1fipN14KwBxUQePBIn59f4y3C5\nL6PveBi1xzM19RtTY3k0
1cjPH3qF7uZusLi4Wnp0VT3cTVxKZb1LgSJnwbvfjY0x\n07w8NcBNNuixgYXnbN74nfof2uC1
mh0c7vcVhWxPcH3KQdXfcOMhyaKGB2s5U+K1\ncWqVLTkhEuSui2ZrW5jXIAZdj53C1sVRnsD
kZ5lKwrPsrxPeCH7T4PG9f67cv3U\nnqbuIiu6lMGK4tN8dEvbAgMOEhx8dWqynW4zj0bSFJMSd
sh1S/oqMXpkph2/vQGeE\nnDBmcZqaH4B6zu0j3cWC6IKfyQbxt+70kEG1YywwvtXs2vEZLKtQr
qaChusLaR0x4\naE3cVe0a2sWNNjKTE9twyMobPUDvCQU59sAV9W0kEMYxa9sJdEsI+/+LowRk
E3sD\nQ1B5PE++mJYmPkBcNH2Mv9sutYMQy1/8ukNm+BTw+xpIDdZ86fuqEU7Rq3687A5Y\nnZK
R5Rvn0kDEg9syden3FGvIAKssx9DXHJK7VXqZEIb/Xf4xekh37MgGyw94uPI08\nnJnmaoo0My0
Izk2L3rmJp0MYoeoWT1KY7KMgNea53pewwkXa9FrHUNlKh07vM9v0S\nnHH7vuBXm1+G2Ujd+aV
Fg\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",
                                "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIF0zCCAY0gAwIBAgIBAgIBANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADAXMRUwEwYDVQDDAxFeGft\ncGx1IE
NBIDIWwhcNMjAwNzEzMTczMTE4WhcNMzAwNzExMTczMTE4WjAXMRUwEwYD\nnVQDDAxFeGftcG
x1IENBIDIwggIiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4ICDwAwggIKAoIC\nnAQCaQ937PQAp9CcNXk5b6V
hqIBXRax1TYcwGR2elf0SRY2KP41mS0jYoZbbJRCJ+\nnpPtFK02AD4RNU00nSkfTX8aEAnBZTB
WdMQy9Nod+1OrHtm0oSwe4dbkDLYZPD0qn\n8VYMrr/aHwImli7MHsITNzdioVZ7p3andLWrEh
8a04yDAqkdQwi9M8X6GPzBmLKK\nnVtYR/wMaZg9W24eT9mMN06sCFxtUeIT2v+jrCSV7FLWAgE
FjhoyZpT2uigbFhnIp\nnB3gnJfUv6MRh6BSeLNF8S0GbbqoyJFYftWlKv/HL9rGtCOjfdxX8K3z
hmNkpM0Aajw\nnjg2XUivWxySZ10TPi8Fu7KKj8g47hiGkERWHPbmswjAq+fBoaircIHmqQUEHPL
ad\nny6IIPuCDljAvTc/M6TlAMX7aGOG0R49LE00UtvVwJyHAKLSntACx7sVLXXWJr0ku\nnrrVd
m4UUX5aLLbS+s0Xum5sNKZLqBYu5B2KPxBfhqXKGL0AJ0IHAM5cg7LPTrdX\nnRDin0/82REr
qVgK+DrhgLP+/kTK/UvWIm8SGN5HfP4Cod/di/11GBjhMYBcHePW7\nnCbGHap4m4vNHSgoPYdKb
D/daLMe1pjTx+1w1HfVIXSysWkC7PTG+LZNn1zLzjs2J\nnVE00cG+gjDouddb43j/T4j1pw5R2
4iaQ+oq9gpj0MY5qewIDAQAB04GRMIGOMAwG\nnA1UdEwQFMAMBAf8wCwYDVR0PBQAQDAgEgMBEG
CWCGSAGG+EIBAQQEAWIBBjAdBgNV\nnHQ4EFgQU5sWDSfrQa+fJkM6Ek07dbkG3130wPwYDVR0j
BDgwNoAUs5wDSfrQa+fJ\nnkM6Ek07dbkG3132hG6QZMBcxFTATBgNVBAMMDEV4YW1wbGUgQ0Eg
MoIBAjanBgkq\nnhkiG9w0BAQ0FAAOCAgEakf2J2M4eHDnRTGQsZTcs91SdV/2fH0W+NLTRdG09
V0NL\nnKMRXr1J8Gy3A/4U/Hx5Lo4dQQckePTdXzFQARX5m/7VIf2+Y1UD1Nre/fMt5aeWG\nn67
v1UnUYLqgHqV2G5QmqZ26DUwcMTXK3oy8rqel1xtQAK1Cpfdfvi7gn2cEFRD7U\nnnext3AemJMB
V26spcGnaf/smfcHeVWo9lwqzyWzwwGYTEeb1MajCgINnh39DZBH10\nnPE77yRyuANTDzWMO0Z
Nn1U+FpHTexhooQnYRKtEagHDTTF2ZuSkcJncz1TFAP4cM\nntvEro4ePMdxLuMf41VrBt+Ouds
Vnoi+U90HJst7Czk5MXyZzGHgkmX0g+JUW49D\nnOfjDq0HiW64QeWYu+lsEFS+2sHES82R/JB
mXWbqHy68JhDUubzAi7nRXEHKKP9N3\nnXF6jD3Fyn47kN4uYeHas9eCvMFmxfv6TGzCPgfs9PH
0ZaZLM/Cp6u914DhyvFV9n\nnuazsa9pkw1QftE8L1Xo/hGmKBdLGJDRDQo1r4eYYZlZS94tj5p
0thztTmUWZF012\nnd0Tyux8EvhpsefDYwt1J1wxqvFdDm5WGCxeZd6YAsV/KukVQLakX1LS/i7
FEFsuL\nnZ89WjWdHC2A3liK0a/y0/vy9gOY7GScvRnyUSThQ2Y0DY089KDzY6Q6ILbpsVr8=\n
n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
    ],
    "fingerprint": {
      "digest":
        "a3:34:5a:77:3d:14:da:a6:d7:de:7a:43:4d:e3:2c:36:35:53:74:5c:61:cf:c1:39:b
        b:75:50:40:29:30:dc:2e",

```

```

        "hash_algorithm": "sha256"
    },
    "subject": [
        {"name": "countryName", "value": "US"},
        {"name": "stateOrProvinceName", "value": "CA"},
        {"name": "streetAddress", "value": "Example Street 2"},
        {"name": "organizationName", "value": "Example Organization
2"},
        {"name": "commonName", "value": "third.example.com"},
        {"name": "emailAddress", "value": "info2@example.com"}
    ],
    "extensions": [
        {"name": "basicConstraints", "value": "CA:FALSE",
"critical": true},
        {"name": "keyUsage", "value":
"digitalSignature,keyAgreement", "critical": true},
        {"name": "extendedKeyUsage", "value": "clientAuth",
"critical": false},
        {"name": "subjectAltName", "value":
"DNS:fourth.example.com", "critical": false}
    ],
    "pem": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
\nMIICIZCCAackCAQAwgdQxCzAJBgNVBAYTA1VMTQ4wDAYDVQQRDAUxMjM0NTElMAkG\naA1UECAwCQ0ExFzAVBgNVBACMDkV4YW1wbGUgQ210eSAyMRkwFwYDVQJJDDBFeGFt\ncGx1IFN0cmVldCAyMR8wHQYDVQKDBZFeGFtcGx1IE9yZ2FuaXphdGlubiAyMRUw\nnEwYDVQQLDAXFeGFtcGx1IFVuaXQxGjAYBgNVBAMMEEXRoaxJkLmV4YW1wbGUuY29t\nnMSAwHgYJKoZIhvcNAQkBFhFpbmZvMkBlEgFtcGx1LmNvbTBZMBMGBYqGSM49AgEG\nnCCqGSM49AwEHA0IABJgGNzspp3C44WUjhG/G0FTFzV9SP0MiC653kGX7TqNN0+d\n\nOpWjTTDbs7Qgv04n4lczzyC+/4G1GH0s0zUhhqggZEwgY4GCSqGSIb3DQEJJDjGB\n\nngDB+MAkGA1UdEwQCMAAwCwYDVR0PBAQDAgOIMBMGA1UdJQQMMAoGCCsGAQUFBwMC\n\nnMBEGCWCGSAGG+EIBAQQEAwIHgDAdBgNVHQ4EFgQUrdDV8+P98jDwpm6M/Ibq3o9J\n\nngcswHQYDVR0RBBYwFIISZm91cnRoLmV4YW1wbGUuY29tMAoGCCqGSM49BAMEA0gA\n\nnMEUCIQDn5/JLVu3TGZqBXodETmj6ndamg9wFi7bxow4krngQtQIgTaDXwBv10L36\n\nncHEQP5At2ss8kKB4QIxEfeesGgMkw8=\n\n-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----\n",
        "public_key": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMFkwEwYHKoZIzj0CAQYIKoZIzj0DAQcDQgAEmAY30ymncLjhZSOGAD8bQVMXN1I\n\nn/QyILrneQZft0o03T5061aNNMntyztCC87ifiVzHPIL7/gbUYc6zTNSGGg==\n\n-----END PUBLIC KEY-----\n"
    }
}
]
}

```



## Example: Querying a single CSR

The following is a sample response received when a single CSR is queried.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
    "parent": "/api/pki/certificate/requests"
  },
  "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
  "body": {
    "certificate_chain": null,
    "fingerprint": {
      "digest":
"eb:46:b6:bf:dc:4e:c6:cb:81:9b:ee:fd:a1:8d:7d:72:86:3d:48:87:ba:94:e0:0c:7
9:8e:73:77:fd:5b:97:3b",
      "hash_algorithm": "sha256"
    },
    "subject": [
      {"name": "countryName", "value": "US"},
      {"name": "stateOrProvinceName", "value": "CA"},
      {"name": "streetAddress", "value": "Example Street"},
      {"name": "organizationName", "value": "Example Organization"},
      {"name": "commonName", "value": "first.example.com"},
      {"name": "emailAddress", "value": "info@example.com"}
    ],
    "extensions": [
      {"name": "basicConstraints", "value": "CA:FALSE", "critical":
true},
      {"name": "keyUsage", "value": "digitalSignature,keyAgreement",
"critical": true},
      {"name": "extendedKeyUsage", "value": "clientAuth", "critical":
false},
      {"name": "subjectAltName", "value":
"IP:123.123.123.123,DNS:second.example.com", "critical": false}
    ],
    "pem": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
\nMIICPzCCAAeQCAQAwgegx CzAJBgNVBAYTA1VTMQ4wDAYDVQQRDAUxMjM0NTELMakG\nA1UECA
wCQ0ExFTATBgNVBACMDEV4YW1wbGUgQ210eTEXMBUGA1UECQwORXhhbXBs\nZSBTdHJlZXQxHT
AbBgNVBAoMFEV4YW1wbGUgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uMRcwFQYDVQQL\nda5FeGFtcGx1IFVuaXQgMT
EXMBUGA1UECwwORXhhbXBsZSBVbm10IDIxGjAYBgNV\nBAMMEWZpcnN0LmV4YW1wbGUuY29tMR
8wHQYJKoZIhvcNAQkBFhBpbmZvQGV4YW1w\nnbGUuY29tMFkwEwYHKoZIzj0CAQYIKoZIzj0DAQ
```

```
cDQgAEC/MA03IIhG6zInpQx0J9\nfFn0QlW11IoeMXHfhrhRC90I9W77MjxRNX7gXS1WVcEQPx
gXtE9sHdc6Z8jgupIi\ncKCBmDCBlQYJKoZIhvcNAQkOMYGHMIGEMAKGA1UdEwQCMAAwCwYDVR
0PBAQDAgOI\nMBMGA1UdJQMMMAoGCCsGAQUFBwMCMBEQWCGSAGG+EIBAQQEAWIGQDAdBgNVHQ
4E\nFgQUUDr0ZP/F5s++a46mW+yIgs1CNWwYwIwYDVR0RBbwwGocEe3t7e4ISc2Vjb25k\nLmV4
YW1wbGUuY29tMAoGCCqGSM49BAMEA0kAMEYCIQCrRLitgHeDJ34VSksqwbZy\nUA0KlZ6l2Ezr
RHGR0UOPbAIhAKA7u8xplNauUutkQPd4KHT5eyBMs0GUYJm1gr3r\ntZFr\n-----END
CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----\n",
      "public_key": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMFkwEwYHKoZIzj0CAQYIKoZIzj0DAQcDQgAEC/MA03IIhG6zInpQx0J9fFn0QlW1\nn1IoeMX
HfhrhRC90I9W77MjxRNX7gXS1WVcEQPxgXtE9sHdc6Z8jgupIicA==\n-----END PUBLIC
KEY-----\n"
    }
  }
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
certificate_chain	string	The certificate chain received from the trusted CA.	
fingerprint	object		
fingerprint.digest	string	The fingerprint of the certificate, for example ef:d3:8e:d0:81:4f:a2:8f:3b:8b:0c:dd:c7:8f:8c:7e.	
fingerprint.hash_algorithm	string	The hash algorithm used to create the fingerprint, for example, sha256.	
subject	object	The subject string of the certificate.	
extensions	object	The list of extensions.	
pem	string	The certificate signing request in PEM format.	
public_key	string	The public key in PEM format.	

### Example: Deleting a CSR

The following is a sample response received when a CSR is deleted.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/pki/certificate/requests",
    "parent": "/api/pki/certificate"
  },
  "items": []
}
```

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	SyntacticError	Syntax error: Could not load PEM certificate: Unable to load certificate; error="\['PEM routines', 'get_name', 'no start line']\"
400	CertChainValidationError	You have attempted to store a certificate chain, which could not be validated with the specified Trust Store.
400	OnlyOnCentralNode	Certificate signing requests can only be created or updated on the Central management node of the cluster.
404	NoMatchingCsrFound	You have attempted to store a certificate chain which belongs to a private key for which no certificate signing requests can be found. Make sure to only send certificates which belong to a private key for which a certificate signing request exists.

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Certificates stored on SPS

To create a new certificate, you have to POST the certificate and its private key as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/x509` endpoint. For details, see [Create a](#)

[new object](#) on page 45. The body of the POST request must contain a JSON object with the parameters listed in [Element](#). The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created certificate in its key attribute. You can reference this ID in other parts of the configuration. Note that you can use a certificate object for only one purpose, that is, you cannot reference one object twice.

## URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/x509
```

- Note that the GET method is not permitted on this endpoint, you cannot list the existing certificates. However, if you know the reference ID of a certificate, you can display its properties:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/x509/<reference-ID-of-the-private-key>
```

- You cannot directly delete or modify a certificate, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on certificate objects. To update a certificate, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old certificate to reference the new certificate.

**Table 7: Headers**

Header name	Description	Required	Values
Content-Type	Specifies the type of the data sent. SPS uses the JSON format	Required	application/json
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> .

## Sample request

The following command creates a new certificate object. Note the following requirements:

The key must be in PKCS-1 PEM format.

You need the certificate and the private key as well.

Encrypted private keys are not supported.

The attributes of the POST message that contain the certificate and the private key must be a single line, enclosed in double-quotes.

Replace line-breaks in the PEM certificate with \n

The certificate and the certificate chain must be valid, SPS will reject invalid certificates and invalid certificate chains.

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/x509 --data '{"private_key": "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhgeg9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2SchDibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n.....\nQbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\n-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n"}'
```

The body should be:

```
{
  "certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhgeg9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2SchDibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n.....\nQbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
  "private_key": "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhgeg9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2SchDibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n.....\nQbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\n-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----",
  "issuer_chain": []
}
```

Element		Description
certificate	string	The certificate in PKCS-1 PEM format (replace line-breaks with \n). For example: -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- \nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhgeg9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2SchDibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n.....\nQbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----
private_key	string	The private key of the certificate, without encryption or password protection (replace line-breaks with \n). For example: -----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY----- \nMIIEpAIBAAKCAQEAu3QMMhgeg9ZMLNfdvQoNN1deVRE2SR0VKY+ALnzPZF4fUoJy\n.....\nI2SchDibk/Xj/ZvuEQ23LvzayW0VVuVHtH3JZX3SU4Sa0vpaeC+3oddVTwQ0WRq0\n.....

Element	Type	Description
		Qbn5W3xKz4vXDDQHEbEsvDQ9A7+uCEuHp04s33IK9KEa0Zdp745AU0DSGXN4HFzc\ n-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
issuer_chain	list	A comma-separated list of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificates that can be used to validate the uploaded certificate.

Querying a specific key returns the following information about the key:

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/x509/<reference-ID-of-the-private-key>;>
```

Element	Type	Description
fingerprint	string	The fingerprint of the certificate.
	digest	The fingerprint of the certificate, for example ef:d3:8e:d0:81:4f:a2:8f:3b:8b:0c:dd:c7:8f:8c:7e
	hash_algorithm	The hash algorithm used to create the fingerprint, for example, sha256.
subject	string	The subject string of the certificate.

## Response

The response to a successful POST message is a JSON object that includes the reference ID of the created certificate in its key attribute.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
  "meta": {
```

```

    "href": "/api/configuration/x509/faa96916-c85e-46ff-8697-f4cc5e596e7f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

The response to querying a specific certificate is a JSON object that includes the parameters of the certificate, for example:

```

{
  "body": {
    "fingerprint": {
      "digest": "ef:d3:8e:d0:81:4f:a2:8f:3b:8b:0c:dd:c7:8f:8c:7e",
      "hash_algorithm": "md5"
    },
    "subject":
    "C=RO/ST=State/L=Locality/O=Organization/OU=OrganizationalUnit/CN=example.com/emailAddress=root@example.com"
  },
  "key": "6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/x509/e5d13d18-07c5-43fa-89f4-c3d2ece17c71",
    "href": "/api/configuration/x509/6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509/6c4d1116-d79d-475b-bb37-9f844f085c14",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/x509/e5d13d18-07c5-43fa-89f4-c3d2ece17c71",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	SyntacticError	Syntax error: Could not load PEM key: Unsupported private key format, only PKCS-1 is supported. Encrypted private keys are not supported.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
405	MethodNotAllowed	The method <method> is not allowed for this node.

### Modify or delete certificate

You cannot directly delete or modify a certificate, the DELETE and PUT methods are not permitted on certificate objects. To update a certificate, create a new one, then update the object that uses the old certificate to reference the new certificate. After you commit the transaction, SPS will automatically delete the old certificate.

## Local services: enabling SSH access to the SPS host

Exclusively for troubleshooting purposes, you can access the SPS host using SSH. Completing the Welcome Wizard automatically disables SSH access to SPS. Re-enabling it allows you to connect remotely to the SPS host and login using the root user. The password of the root user is the one you provided in the Welcome Wizard.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Accessing the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) host directly using SSH is not recommended or supported, except for troubleshooting purposes. In such case, the One Identity Support Team will give you exact instructions on what to do to solve the problem.**

**For security reasons, disable SSH access to SPS when it is not needed. For details, see ["Enabling SSH access to the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions \(SPS\) host" in the Administration Guide](#).**

The following encryption algorithms are configured on the local SSH service of SPS:

- Key exchange (KEX) algorithms:

```
diffie-hellman-group-exchange-sha256
```



- Ciphers:

```
aes256-ctr,aes128-ctr
```

- Message authentication codes:

```
hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256
```

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/ssh
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/ssh
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access_restriction": {
      "allowed_from": [
        "10.40.0.48/24"
      ],
      "enabled": true
    },
    "allow_password_auth": true,
    "bruteforce_protection": true,
    "enabled": true,
    "listen": [
      {
        "address": {
          "key":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1",
          "meta": {
            "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"
          }
        },
        "port": 23
      }
    ],
    "public_keys": [
      {
        "comment": "key-comment anothercomment",
        "selection": "rsa",
        "value":
"AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQDTnisLCjZ3vONMXqFBIIdvpZ0BY73+GdHpgoaL8YsydxJBsYg9
dYTDzVVtYFVvdCVzBdcwCjyOuPwtZoYU3pLEFQ70VoDUDPmVnl6idS/6tB2m89I5zdc02xUeCWTBpTGo
OhNtc+YDmxPGZ1FQIPxCw0MT91jviWm3JydDd5YKINwvdTh8zsRT/702ZD9uZslwkQA/b2B9/hidCAkQ
kvs5H1B3o4laTd0JE9k90N+qbaQjVvoInr+jdXaWvrScwFVxZhb7Q1LvUL6oxW889bOWFMSa+/mnENar
w6rpwfk9Ayi5uQQ2imY/tSnfgbS2RvIa1sKwUsJasDqN2lo/DuhON"
      }
    ]
  },
  "key": "ssh",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
    "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/ssh",
    "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
    "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/snmp_agent",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the SSH server.
access_restriction	JSON object	Enables and configures limitations on the clients that can access the web interface, based on the IP address of the clients.
allow_ed_from	list	The list of IP networks from where the administrators are permitted to access this management interface. To specify the IP addresses or networks, use the IPv4-Address/prefix format, for example, 10.40.0.0/16.
enabled	boolean	Set it to true to restrict access to the specified client addresses.
allow_password_auth	boolean	Enables password-based authentication, so administrators can remotely login to SPS. If this option is set to False, SPS ignores every other option of this endpoint.
brute_force_protection	boolean	Enables protection against brute-force attacks by denying access after failed login attempts for increasingly longer period. Enabled by default.
enabled	boolean	Enables the SSH server, so administrators can remotely login to SPS. If this option is set to False, SPS ignores every other option of this endpoint.
listen	list	Selects the network interface, IP address, and port where the clients can access the web interface.
addresses	JSON object	A reference to a configured network interface and IP address where this local service accepts connections. For example, if querying the interface /api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/ returns the following response: <div> <pre>{   "body": {</pre> </div>

Element	Type	Description
---------	------	-------------

```

    "interfaces": {
      "@order": [
        "ff7574025754b3df1647001"
      ],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "10.40.255.171/24",
          "@order": [
            "1"
          ]
        },
        "name": "default",
        "vlantag": 0
      }
    },
    "name": "eth0",
    "speed": "auto"
  },
  "key": "nic1",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
    "last": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic3",
    "next":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
    "parent": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Then the listening address of the local service is the following.

```
nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1
```

This is the format you have to use when configuring the address of the local service using REST:

```
"address": "nic1.in-
terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1"
```

Element	Type	Description
		<p>When querying a local services endpoint, the response will contain a reference to the IP address of the interface in the following format:</p> <pre>"address": {   "key": "nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",   "meta": {     "href": "/api/- config- uration/net- work/n- ics/n- ic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"   } },</pre>
	port integer	The port number where this local service accepts connections.
public_keys	list	<p>Lists the public keys that can be used to authenticate on SPS. For example:</p> <pre>"public_keys": [   {     "comment": "user@example.com anothercomment",     "key": {       "selection": "rsa",       "value": "AADDDB3Nz- aC1yc2EABBADAQA...../DuhON"     }   },   {     "comment": "username@example.com",     "key": {       "selection": "rsa",       "value": "ASFDFAB3Nz- aC1yc2EAAAABiWAAASdfASF/EuQh9zc2umxX...dU="     }   } ]</pre> <p><b>TIP:</b> One Identity recommends using 2048-bit RSA keys (or stronger).</p>

Elements of public_keys	Type	Description
comment	string	Comments of the public key.
key	JSON object	Contains the type of the key and the key itself. For example: <div> <pre>"key": {   "selection": "rsa",   "value": "ASFDFAB3Nz-aC1yc2EAAAABIwAAASdfASF/EuQh9zc2umxX...dU=" }</pre> </div>
selection	rsa	The type of the public key. Must be rsa.
value	string	The public key itself.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Manage the SPS license

You can display information about the currently used SPS license from the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/license` endpoint.



### CAUTION:

Accessing the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) host directly using SSH is not recommended or supported, except for troubleshooting purposes. In such case, the One Identity Support Team will give you exact instructions on what to do to solve the problem.

For security reasons, disable SSH access to SPS when it is not needed. For details, see ["Enabling SSH access to the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions \(SPS\) host" in the Administration Guide.](#)

The following encryption algorithms are configured on the local SSH service of SPS:

- Key exchange (KEX) algorithms:

```
diffie-hellman-group-exchange-sha256
```

- Ciphers:

```
aes256-ctr,aes128-ctr
```

- Message authentication codes:

```
hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256
```

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/license
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies -H "Content-Type: application/json"
https://10.30.255.28/api/configuration/management/license
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "customer": "Example",
    "limit": 5000,
    "limit_type": "host",
    "serial": "b937d212-db7d-0f2f-4c87-295e3c57024a",
    "valid_not_after": "2018-11-07",
    "valid_not_before": "2017-11-06"
  },
  "key": "license",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/license",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/root_password",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/health_monitoring",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction",
    "upload": "/api/upload/license"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the parameters of the license.
customer	string	The company permitted to use the license (for example, Example Ltd.).
limit	integer	The actual value of the session or host limit (see limit_type).



Element	Type	Description
limit_ type	host   session	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>host: Limits the number of servers (individual IP addresses) that can be connected through SPS.</li> <li>session: Limits the number of concurrent sessions (parallel connections) that can pass through SPS at a time (for example 25). SPS will reject additional connection requests until an already established connection is closed.</li> </ul>
	serial	string
	valid_ not_ after	date
	valid_ not_ before	date

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Upload a new license

To upload a new license file, complete the following steps.

1. Download your license file from [support portal](#).

2. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

3. **Upload the license file.**

Upload the file to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/license` endpoint.  
For example:

```
curl --cookie cookies -F 'data=@/path/license.txt' -H "Expect:" --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/license
```

4. **Restart the traffic on SPS.**

SPS will not use the new license to ongoing sessions. For the new license to take full effect, you must restart all traffic on the **Basic Settings > System > Traffic control** page of the SPS web interface.

```
curl --cookie cookies -F 'data=@/path/license.txt' -H "Expect:" --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/license
```

5. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Change contact information

The **About** page on the SPS web interface and the `/api/info` endpoint contains various contact information. You can change this to a custom email address or URL.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/support_info
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	token of the user		<p>response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the contact information.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/support_info
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "uri": null
  },
  "key": "support_info",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/management/certificates",
    "href": "/api/configuration/management/support_info",
    "last": "/api/configuration/management/webinterface",
    "next": "/api/configuration/management/syslog",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/management",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## Change the support link

To change the support link, complete the following steps.

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. PUT a JSON object containing the new support link.

PUT a JSON object containing the new support link to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/support_info` endpoint. For example:

```
curl -X PUT -d '{"uri": { "selection": "mailto", "value":  
"mailto:support@example.com" } }' -H "Content-Type: application/json" --  
cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/support_info"
```

To use an HTTP or HTTPS link as contact info, use the following JSON object:

```
{  
  "uri": {  
    "selection": "url",  
    "value": "http://example.com"  
  }  
}
```

To use an email address as contact info, use the following JSON object:

```
{  
  "uri": {  
    "selection": "mailto",  
    "value": "mailto:support@example.com"  
  }  
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Splunk integration

SPS can forward session data to Splunk near real-time. Using the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions App for Splunk you can integrate this data with your other sources, and access all your data related to privileged user activities from a single interface. To configure SPS to forward session data to Splunk, complete the following steps.

## Prerequisites and restrictions:

- SPS version 5 F5 or later
- Splunk version 6.5 or later
- SPS does not send historical data to Splunk, only data from the sessions started after you complete this procedure.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints for SNMP configuration settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "enabled": true,
    "flush_interval": 600,
    "host": {
      "selection": "fqdn", "value": "splunk.example.com" },
    "pam_address": {
      "selection": "fqdn", "value": "scb.example.com" },
    "port": 8088,
    "ssl": {
      "selection": "insecure" },
    "token": "2134356431"
  }
}
```

Elements of remote_desktop_gateway	Type	Description
body	JSON object	Top-level element
enabled	boolean	Set to true and configure the other options as needed for your environment to forward session data from SPS to Splunk.
flush_interval	integer [seconds]	If the Splunk server becomes unaccessible, SPS will try to resend the data when this period expires.
host	JSON object	Contains the hostname or the IPv4 address of the Splunk server. <div> <pre>"host": {   "selection": "fqdn", "value": "splunk.example.com" },</pre> <pre>"host": {   "selection": "ip", "value": "192.168.1.1" },</pre> </div>
selection	fqdn   ip	Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn: The server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip: The server address is provided as an IPv4 address.</li> </ul>

Elements of remote_desktop_gateway	Type	Description
value	string	The address of the server.
port	integer	The port number where your Splunk HTTP Event Collector is accepting connections. By default, Splunk uses port 8088.
ssl	JSON object	Determines if encryption is used between SPS and Splunk.
selection	string	<p>Determines if encryption is used between SPS and Splunk. Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled: Use this option if your Splunk HTTP Event Collector accepts only unencrypted HTTP connections. Since the data forwarded to Splunk contains sensitive information, One Identity recommends to use HTTPS encryption between SPS and Splunk. <pre>"ssl": { "selection": "disabled" },</pre></li> <li>insecure: Use HTTPS encryption between SPS and Splunk. <pre>"ssl": { "selection": "insecure" },</pre></li> <li>secure: Use HTTPS encryption between SPS and Splunk and also verify the identity of the Splunk server. If you use this option, you must include the certificate of the Splunk server, or the certificate of the CA that issued the certificate of the Splunk server in the certificate option. <pre>"ssl": { "certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- \nMIIFPzCCAYegA\n...\n- r8lDCPoq\n0wgJ\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",   "selection": "secure" },</pre></li> </ul>
token	string	The HTTP Event Collector authentication token you have generated for SPS.

## Configure Splunk forwarder

1. Install the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions App for Splunk to your Splunk installation. This will automatically enable and configure the HTTP Event Collector (HEC) in your Splunk installation, and create an HTTP Event Collector authentication token ("HEC token") that SPS will use.

To help identify the source of the received data, the following settings are configured automatically in the One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions App for Splunk:

- **index:** The One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions App for Splunk creates the index automatically, with the name `balabit_events`.
  - **sourcetype:** The source type of the events the SPS forwards is `balabit:event`.
2. On your Splunk interface, navigate to **Settings > Data inputs > HTTP Event Collector**. Copy the **Token Value** from the Balabit\_HEC field. This is the HTTP Event Collector authentication token and you will need it when configuring SPS.
  3. **Create the JSON object that configures SPS to forward session data to Splunk.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/splunk_forwarder` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Elements of remote\\_desktop\\_gateway](#). For example,

```
{
  "enabled": true,
  "flush_interval": 600,
  "host":
    { "selection": "fqdn", "value": "splunk.example.com" },
  "pam_address":
    { "selection": "fqdn", "value": "psm.example.com" },
  "port": 8088,
  "ssl":
    { "selection": "insecure" },
  "token": "2134356431"
}
```

4. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

5. Splunk will display the data received from SPS as it was received from the host set in the `pam_address` field. By default, this is the hostname and domain name of the SPS appliance as set on the `/api/configuration/network/naming` endpoint. Adjust this field as needed for your environment.
6. Start a session that SPS will audit to test your configuration, and verify that the data of the session appears in Splunk.



# Splunk integration

The universal SIEM forwarder can automatically send data about the audited sessions to Splunk, ArcSight, or other third-party systems. The messages are standard syslog messages in RFC3164 format (also called legacy-syslog or BSD-syslog format). The body of the syslog message (the MESSAGE part) can be formatted as JavaScript Object Notation (JSON), Common Event Format (CEF), or JSON-CIM format. For information about the details of the messages that the universal SIEM forwarder sends to the external SIEM network elements, see ["Message format forwarded to SIEMs" in the Administration Guide](#).

One of the main advantages of the universal SIEM forwarder is that it has a lower impact on network and performance.

Each message contains the minimal information relevant to the event. Use the built-in correlation feature of the SIEM to combine events by session ID and view all information in one place.

## Prerequisites and restrictions

- SPS version 5 F9 or later
- Splunk version 6.5 or later
- The CEF format is supported on all currently supported versions of ArcSight ESM, IBM QRadar and Microsoft Azure Sentinel.
- SPS does not send historical data, only data from the sessions started after you complete this procedure.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/universal_siem_forwarder
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints for SNMP configuration settings.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/universal_siem_forwarder
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "enabled": true,
    "prefix": "myprefix",
    "targets": [
      {
        "format": "json_cim",
        "name": "siem_target",
        "protocol": {
          "selection": "syslog",
          "value": {
            "address": {
              "selection": "ip",
              "value": "192.168.1.1"
            },
            "port": 5555,
            "tls": {
              "selection": "disabled"
            }
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
body	JSON object	Top-level element
enabled	boolean	Set to true and configure the other options as needed for your environment to forward session data from SPS to an external SIEM device.
prefix	string	A prefix to make the data more readable.

Elements	Type	Description
		<p>The prefix is added to each JSON key. For example, if you use <b>sps_</b> as a prefix, in the forwarded JSON message the {"protocol": "ssh"} key changes to {"<b>sps_</b>protocol": "ssh"}, which allows you to identify the forwarded data more easily.</p> <p>Other formats ignore the Prefix option.</p>
targets	JSON object	Specifies the details of the target SIEM device.
format	cef   json   json_cim	<p>The format of the message sent to the SIEM. Use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>json_cim: if using Splunk.</li> <li>cef: if using CEF-compatible SIEMs, for example, <a href="#">Microsoft Azure Sentinel</a>.</li> <li>json: for general use.</li> </ul>
name	string	The name of the SIEM forwarder policy.
protocol	JSON object	Specifies connection details to the target SIEM device. For example:

```

"protocol": {
  "selection": "syslog",
  "value": {
    "address": {
      "selection": "ip",
      "value": "192.168.1.1"
    },
    "port": 5555,
    "tls": {
      "selection": "secure",
      "trusted_ca_list_ref":
"1241814345d074efd1ded7"
    }
  }
}

```

Elements of protocol	Type	Description
selection	string	Must be syslog
value	JSON object	Contains the address of the SIEM and the TLS settings of the connection.

Elements of protocol		Type	Description
address		JSON object	<p>Contains the type and the value of the address. For example:</p> <pre>"address": {   "selection": "ip",   "value":     "192.168.1.1" },</pre> <pre>"address": {   "selection": "fqdn",   "value": "my-siem.ex- ample.com" },</pre>
selection	string	<p>Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip The server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>	
value	string	The address of the server, corresponding to the format set in the selection field.	
port		integer	The port number of the server.
tls		JSON object	The security settings of the

Elements of protocol	Type	Description
		<p>connection. For example:</p> <pre> tls": {   "selection": "secure",   "trusted_ca_list_ref": "1241814345d074ef-d1ded7" } </pre> <pre> "tls": {   "selection": "disabled" } </pre>
selection	disabled   insecure   secure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled: Use an unencrypted connection. Since the data forwarded contains sensitive information, One Identity recommends to use TLS encryption between SPS and your SIEM.</li> <li>insecure: Use TLS encryption, but do not validate the certificate of the SIEM.</li> <li>secure: Use TLS encryption and validate the certificate</li> </ul>

Elements of protocol	Type	Description
		of the SIEM. If you use this option, you must also set the trusted_ca_list_ref field.
trusted_ca_list_ref	string	The key of the trusted CA list used to validate the certificate of the SIEM. This option is required if you set "selection": "secure". For details on creating trusted CA lists, see <a href="#">Trusted Certificate Authorities</a> .

## Configure universal SIEM forwarder

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

- If you want to send the messages in an encrypted connection to the SIEM and also validate the certificate of the SIEM, upload the certificate of the CA that signed the certificate of the SIEM to a trusted CA list. For details on creating trusted CA lists, see [Trusted Certificate Authorities](#).

### 3. Create the JSON object that configures SPS to forward session data to your SIEM.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/management/universal_siem_forwarder` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Splunk integration](#). For example,

```
{
  "enabled": true,
  "prefix": "myprefix",
  "targets": [
    {
```

```

    "format": "json_cim",
    "name": "siem_target",
    "protocol": {
      "selection": "syslog",
      "value": {
        "address": {
          "selection": "ip",
          "value": "192.168.1.1"
        },
        "port": 5555,
        "tls": {
          "selection": "disabled"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
]
}

```

#### 4. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Manage SPS clusters

When you have a set of two or more One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) instances in your deployment, you can join them into a cluster. This has several advantages. You can:

- Manage the nodes from one central location.
- Monitor their status and update their configuration centrally.
- Search all session data recorded by all nodes in the cluster on a single node.
- Scale the performance of the cluster by adding new nodes and joining them to the cluster easily.
- Extend auditing to other networks by adding new nodes to the cluster and joining them to the cluster.

This is achieved by assigning roles to the individual nodes in your cluster: you can set one of your SPS nodes to be the Central management node and the rest of the nodes are managed from this central node.

**NOTE:** All nodes in a cluster must run the same version of SPS.

**NOTE:** To configure the `/api/cluster/` endpoint, your usergroup must have "read and write/perform" privileges assigned to the Basic Settings > Cluster management object.

You can configure this on the **Users & Access Control > Appliance Access** page of SPS's web interface.

For details, see ["Managing user rights and usergroups" in the Administration Guide](#).

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-any-node-in-cluster>/api/cluster
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the endpoints available under the cluster endpoint.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-any-node-in-cluster>/api/cluster
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "configuration_sync",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/cluster/configuration_sync"
      }
    },
  ],
}
```



```

{
  "key": "join_request",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/join_request"
  }
},
{
  "key": "nodes",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/nodes"
  }
},
{
  "key": "promote",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/promote"
  }
},
{
  "key": "status",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/status"
  }
}
],
"meta": {
  "href": "/api/cluster",
  "join_request": "/api/cluster/join_request",
  "nodes": "/api/cluster/nodes",
  "parent": "/api",
  "promote": "/api/cluster/promote",
  "status": "/api/cluster/status",
  "configuration_sync": "/api/cluster/configuration_sync"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
items	Top-level element (list of JSON objects)	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint.
key	string	The ID of the endpoint.
meta	Top-level item (JSON object)	Contains the path to the endpoint.
href	string (relative path)	The path of the resource that returned the response.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Promote a SPS node to be the Central Management node in a new cluster

You can build a cluster by promoting a SPS node to the role of the Central Management node, and then join other nodes to your cluster.

To promote a node to be the Central Management node, complete the following steps:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the Central Management node.**

POST an empty request to the `https://<IP-address-of-node-to-become-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/promote` endpoint.

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "address": "<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>",
    "roles": [
      "central-management"
    ]
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/nodes/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
    "parent": "/api/cluster/nodes",
    "remaining_seconds": 28800
  }
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (JSON object)	Contains the JSON object of the node.
address	string	The IP address of the node.
roles	string	The role of the node.

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Join node(s) to the cluster

Once you have a Central Management SPS node in place, then you can join other nodes to your cluster.

To join nodes to your cluster, complete the following steps for each node that you want to join to the cluster:

#### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

#### 2. Create a join request.

POST the IP address of the Central Management node as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-node-to-join-to-cluster>/api/cluster/join_request` endpoint. The body of the POST request should be the following:

```
{
  "central_management_address": "<IP-address-of-Central-Management-
node>"
}
```

For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-node-to-join-to-cluster>/api/cluster/join_request -
-data '{"central_management_address": "<IP-address-of-Central-Management-
node>"}'
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

By default, no role is assigned to a non-management node, that is why the "roles" array is empty.

```
{
  "body": {
    "address": "<IP-address-of-node-joined-to-cluster>",
    "node_id": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
    "psk":
"Ler7HZDFmZCxnLLgHNRfZYfORh1ZS9919vEVr5UKtJEb1d4WeaHcBmQJLs4VDWIn",
    "roles": []
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/join_request",
    "parent": "/api/cluster",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  }
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (JSON object)	Contains the JSON object of the node.
address	string	The IP address of the node.
node_id	string	A reference ID for the node.
psk	string	The pre-shared key of the node used for authentication.
roles	string	The role of the node.

### 3. Join the node to the cluster.

POST the "body" object of the response to the `https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/nodes` endpoint as a JSON object. The body of the POST request should be the following:

```
{
  "address": "<IP-address-of-node-joined-to-cluster>",
  "node_id": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
  "psk":
  "Ler7HZDFmZCxnLLgHNRfZYfORh1ZS9919vEVR5UKtJEb1d4WeaHcBmQJLs4VDWIn",
  "roles": []
},
```

For example:

```
POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies https://<IP-
address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/nodes --data '{"address":
"<IP-address-of-node-joined-to-cluster>", "node_id": "46f97a58-4028-467d-
9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c", "psk":
"Ler7HZDFmZCxnLLgHNRfZYfORh1ZS9919vEVR5UKtJEb1d4WeaHcBmQJLs4VDWIn", "role
s": []}'
```

If the POST request is successful, the response includes:

```
{
  "body": {
    "address": "<IP-address-of-node-joined-to-cluster>",
    "roles": []
  },
  "key": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/nodes/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-
9cfe78ae3e1c",
    "parent": "/api/cluster/nodes",
    "remaining_seconds": 28800
  }
}
```

### 4. Commit your changes on both the Central Management node and the node you joined to the cluster.

For details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Query join status

To find out whether a node has been joined to a cluster, complete the following steps.

1. Query the `/api/cluster/join_request` endpoint on the node whose join status you want to figure out.

```
curl GET --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-node-to-be-queried>/api/cluster/join_request
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "details": {
    "central_management_address": "<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>"
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/join_request",
    "parent": "/api/cluster",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  },
  "status": "in cluster"
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
details	Top-level element	Contains the IP address of the Central Management node of the cluster.
central_management_address	string	The IP address of the Central Management node. Not provided when no cluster has been set up yet.
status	string	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• not configured: Displayed when no cluster has been set up yet.</li><li>• in progress: Displayed when the join action is in progress.</li><li>• in cluster: Displayed when the node is already in the cluster.</li></ul>

# Assign a role to a node

By default, nodes do not have any roles assigned to them. The only exception is the Central management node, which you specifically promoted to fulfill that role. To assign a role to a node in the cluster, complete the following steps.

## 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Update the JSON object of the node.

PUT the role you want to assign to the node and the node's IP address as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/nodes/<node-id-of-node-to-be-updated>` endpoint.

You can assign the following roles to a node:

**NOTE:** The `central-management` role can only be assigned using the `/api/cluster/promote` endpoint.

**NOTE:** Ensure that each node has a search role and only one search role.

Role	Description
managed-host	<p>There can be several nodes with this role.</p> <p>Nodes with the Managed Host role synchronize their entire configuration from the Central Management node, not only those elements of the configuration that are related to the cluster.</p>
search-master	<p>There can be only one node with this role.</p> <p>The Search Master node is the one node in the cluster on which you can search all the session data recorded by other nodes in the cluster, provided that the other nodes have been assigned the Search Minion role.</p>
search-minion	<p>There can be several nodes with this role.</p> <p>Nodes with the Search Minion role send session data that they recorded to the Search Master for central search purposes. The session data recorded by a Search Minion node is not searchable on the node itself, only on the Search Master.</p>
search-local	<p>There can be several nodes with this role.</p> <p>Nodes with the Search Local role keep the session data that they recorded for local searching. The session data recorded by a Search Local node is searchable on the node itself, but not on the Search Master.</p> <p>This is the only backward-compatible search role.</p>

For further details on roles, see ["Cluster roles" in the Administration Guide](#).

The body of the PUT request should be the following:

```
{
  "roles": ["<role-to-assign>"],
  "address": "<IP-address-of-node-to-be-updated>"
}
```

For example:

```
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies -X PUT
https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-
node>/api/cluster/nodes/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c --data '
{"roles": ["managed-host"], "address": "<IP-address-of-node-to-be-
updated>"}'
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Query nodes

To list the nodes available in a cluster, complete the following steps.

#### 1. Query the `/api/cluster/nodes` endpoint on the Central Management node.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-
node>/api/cluster/nodes
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/cluster/nodes/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-
9cfe78ae3e1c",
        "status": "/api/cluster/status/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-
9cfe78ae3e1c"
      }
    },
    {

```



```

        "key": "b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/cluster/nodes/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
            "status": "/api/cluster/status/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277"
        }
    },
    "meta": {
        "href": "/api/cluster/nodes",
        "parent": "/api/cluster",
        "remaining_seconds": 28800,
        "self": "/api/cluster/nodes/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
        "status": "/api/cluster/status"
    }
}

```

Elements	Type	Description
items	Top-level element (list of JSON objects)	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint.
key	string	The ID of the node.
meta	Top-level item (JSON object)	Contains links to different parts of the REST service.
href	string (relative path)	The path of the node that returned the response.
status	string (relative path)	The path to the status of the node that returned the response.

## Query one particular node

To query one particular node, complete the following steps.

1. **Query the `/api/cluster/nodes/<node-id-of-node-to-be-queried>` endpoint on the node that you want to query.**

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-node-to-be-queried>/api/cluster/nodes/<node-id-of-node-to-be-queried>
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "address": "<IP-address-of-node-to-be-queried>",
    "roles": [
      "central-management"
    ]
  },
  "key": "b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/nodes/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
    "parent": "/api/cluster/nodes",
    "remaining_seconds": 28800,
    "status": "/api/cluster/status/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277"
  }
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (JSON object)	Contains the JSON object of the node.
address	string	The IP address of the node.
roles	string	The role assigned to the node.
key	string	The ID of the node.

## Query the status of all nodes in the cluster

To query the status of all nodes in your cluster, complete the following steps.

1. **Query the `/api/cluster/status` endpoint on the Central Management node.**

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/status
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
      "fqdn": "sps.example.com",
      "health_status": null,
      "sync_status": "n/a",
      "meta": {
        "configuration": "/api/cluster/nodes/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277",
        "href": "/api/cluster/status/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
      "last_seen": "2018-02-08T10:00:30Z",
      "fqdn": "managed-host.cluster",
      "health_status": {
        "memory": 62.5,
        "disk": 1.9,
        "swap": 0,
        "load1": 0.53,
        "load5": 0.68,
        "load15": 0.37,
        "sessions": {
          "ssh": 3,
          "rdp": 4
        },
        "total_sessions": 7
      },
      "sync_status": "pending",
      "configuration_sync": {
        "last_updated": "2018-02-08T09:59:00Z",
        "last_checked": "2018-02-08T09:59:00Z",
        "downloaded_xml_hash": "2853830f4aa0a90a63e75bab1b22e513",
        "issues": {
          "warnings": [
            {
              "message": "Connection 'simple_ssh_connection' and local service 'SSH' conflict on 10.30.42.42:22",
              "paths": [
                "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/12345",
                "/api/configuration/local_services/ssh"
              ]
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

```

    },
    "meta": {
      "configuration": "/api/cluster/nodes/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
      "href": "/api/cluster/status/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c"
    }
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/cluster/status",
    "parent": "/api/cluster",
    "self": "/api/cluster/status/b35c54da-b556-4f91-ade5-d26283d68277"
  }
}

```

Elements	Type	Description
items	Top-level element (list of JSON objects)	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint.
key	string	The ID of the node.
fqdn	string	The address of the node as a fully qualified domain name.
health_status	null or object	The health status of a node. If the node is down, the value is null. Otherwise, the health-related data is listed.
memory	floating point integer (percent)	Memory use
disk	floating point integer (percent)	Hard disk use
swap	floating point integer (percent)	Swap use

Elements	Type	Description
load1	floating point integer	<p>The average system load during the last one minute. The values mean the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
load5	floating point integer	<p>The average system load during the last five-minute period. The values mean the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
load15	floating point integer	<p>The average system load during the last fifteen-minute period. The values mean the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
sessions	string	<p>The protocol type and the number of ongoing sessions. For example:</p> <pre>"sessions": {   "ssh": 3,   "rdp": 4</pre>

Elements	Type	Description
		},
total_sessions	integer (number of)	The total number of ongoing sessions.
sync_status	string	<p>Indicates the status of configuration synchronization. It has the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• up-to-date: The node has fetched the latest configuration from the Central Management node, and has applied it. It is in sync with the Central Management node.</li> <li>• pending: There has been a configuration change on the Central Management node, and the change has not been synchronized yet to the node.</li> <li>• outdated: There has been some error on the node and therefore it is running an old configuration.</li> <li>• not-fetched: The node has not fetched any configuration yet.</li> <li>• n/a: The node is the Central Management</li> </ul>

Elements	Type	Description
		node, so it is not fetching its configuration from any other node.
meta	Top-level item (JSON object)	Contains links to different parts of the REST service.
configuration	string (relative path)	The path to the configuration of the node that returned the response.
href	string (relative path)	The path to the node that returned the response.
last_seen	string	The last time the node sent status information to the Central Management node, in ISO 8601 format.
configuration_sync	Top-level item (JSON object)	
downloaded_xml_hash	string	The hash of the latest downloaded configuration file (used for configuration synchronization). If no configuration file has been downloaded yet, it says null.
last_updated	string	The last time the node's configuration was synchronized, in ISO 8601 format.
last_checked	string	The last time the node attempted to fetch a new configuration, in ISO 8601 format.
issues	Top-level	The issues that

Elements	Type	Description
	item (JSON object)	occurred during configuration synchronization.

Elements of issues	Type	Description
warning	Top-level item (JSON object)	
message	string	Human-readable text explaining why the warning occurred.
details	array	List of additional information about the warning (for example, the path where the warning occurred).
error	Top-level item (JSON object)	
type	string	The type of the error.
message	string	Human-readable text explaining why the error occurred.
details	JSON object	List of additional information about the error (for example, the path where the error occurred).

## Query the status of one particular node

To query the status of one particular node in your cluster, complete the following steps.

1. **Query the `/api/cluster/status/<node-id-of-node-to-be-queried>` endpoint on the Central Management node.**

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/status/<node-id-of-node-to-be-queried>
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

For details of the other objects, see tables [Cluster status details](#) and ["issues" object details](#).



```
{
  "fqdn": "managed-host.cluster",
  "key": "46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
  "configuration_sync": {
    "downloaded_xml_hash": "2853830f4aa0a90a63e75bab1b22e513",

    "last_updated": "2018-02-08T09:59:30Z",
    "last_checked": "2018-02-08T09:59:30Z",
    "issues": {}
  },
  "health_status": {
    "memory": 62.5,
    "disk": 1.9,
    "swap": 0,
    "load1": 0.53,
    "load5": 0.68,
    "load15": 0.37,
    "sessions": {
      "ssh": 3,
      "rdp": 4
    },
    "total_sessions": 7
  },
  "sync_status": "up-to-date",
  "last_seen": "2018-02-08T10:00:00Z",
  "meta": {
    "configuration": "/api/cluster/nodes/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c",
    "href": "/api/cluster/status/46f97a58-4028-467d-9a22-9cfe78ae3e1c"
  }
}
```

Elements	Type	Description
items	Top-level element (list of JSON objects)	List of endpoints (objects) available from the current endpoint.
key	string	The ID of the node.
fqdn	string	The address of the node as a fully qualified domain name.

Elements	Type	Description
health_status	null or object	The health status of a node. If the node is down, the value is null. Otherwise, the health-related data is listed.
memory	floating point integer (percent)	Memory use
disk	floating point integer (percent)	Hard disk use
swap	floating point integer (percent)	Swap use
load1	floating point integer	The average system load during the last one minute. The values mean the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
load5	floating point integer	The average system load during the last five-minute period. The values mean the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
load15	floating	The average system

Elements	Type	Description
	point integer	load during the last fifteen-minute period. The values mean the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt; 1: low system load</li> <li>• 1-5: high system load</li> <li>• &gt; 5: extremely high system load</li> </ul>
sessions	string	The protocol type and the number of ongoing sessions. For example: <pre>"sessions": {</pre>
total_sessions	integer (number of)	The total number of ongoing sessions.
sync_status	string	Indicates the status of configuration synchronization. It has the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• up-to-date: The node has fetched the latest configuration from the Central Management node, and has applied it. It is in sync with the Central Management node.</li> <li>• pending: There has been a configuration change on the Central Management node, and the</li> </ul>

Elements	Type	Description
		<p>change has not been synchronized yet to the node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• outdated: There has been some error on the node and therefore it is running an old configuration.</li> <li>• not-fetched: The node has not fetched any configuration yet.</li> <li>• n/a: The node is the Central Management node, so it is not fetching its configuration from any other node.</li> </ul>
meta	Top-level item (JSON object)	Contains links to different parts of the REST service.
configuration	string (relative path)	The path to the configuration of the node that returned the response.
href	string (relative path)	The path to the node that returned the response.
last_seen	string	The last time the node sent status information to the Central Management node, in ISO 8601 format.
configuration_sync	Top-level item (JSON object)	

Elements		Type	Description
	downloaded_xml_hash	string	The hash of the latest downloaded configuration file (used for configuration synchronization). If no configuration file has been downloaded yet, it says null.
	last_updated	string	The last time the node's configuration was synchronized, in ISO 8601 format.
	last_checked	string	The last time the node attempted to fetch a new configuration, in ISO 8601 format.
	issues	Top-level item (JSON object)	The issues that occurred during configuration synchronization.

Elements of issues	Type	Description
warning	Top-level item (JSON object)	
message	string	Human-readable text explaining why the warning occurred.
details	array	List of additional information about the warning (for example, the path where the warning occurred).
error	Top-level item (JSON object)	
type	string	The type of the error.
message	string	Human-readable text explaining why the error occurred.
details	JSON object	List of additional information about the error (for example, the path where the error occurred).

# Upload and enable a configuration synchronization plugin

Nodes fetch their configuration from the Central management node, and merge it into their own configuration. Depending on their role, nodes may merge the whole configuration into their own (Managed host nodes), or only the cluster-specific parts (nodes with no roles assigned). Whenever a configuration change is made on the Central management node and the change is committed, it is synchronized to all nodes in the cluster as soon as the nodes fetch the latest configuration from the Central management node.

When synchronizing the central configuration across nodes, you may want to:

- Keep certain parts in the configuration of individual nodes unchanged.
- Customize certain parts of the central configuration to specific needs of individual nodes in the cluster (for example, your nodes may access external services through different network addresses).

You can achieve all of these by using a configuration synchronization plugin that contains transformations for the problematic parts. The plugin only runs on nodes that have the Managed host role.

Customizing certain parts or features of a node using a configuration synchronization plugin has the same limitations as configuring One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) through the REST API. In other words, whatever you can configure through the REST API, you can configure the exact same settings using the plugin. One notable difference between the REST API and the plugin is that using the REST API, you can only read certain types of data (such as keys and passwords), while using the configuration synchronization plugin, you can write these types of data as well.

Data structures in the plugin are represented as nested JSON objects. For object references, the plugin uses keys.

The plugin works with the following key parameters:

- `local_config`: The current configuration of a Managed Host node (those parts that can be configured through the REST API).
- `merged_config`: The configuration of the Central management node that is about to be synced to the Managed host node (those parts that can be configured through the REST API), with settings related to networking, local services, management, and the license of SPS whitelisted. These settings are never overwritten by configuration synchronization.
- `node_id`: The unique ID of the Managed host node in the cluster (you can retrieve this identifier by querying the `/api/cluster/nodes` endpoint through the REST API).
- `plugin_config`: The configuration of the plugin provided as free-form text. Specifying the configuration of the plugin is optional. It enables you to run configuration synchronization on each cluster with different parameters if you have multiple clusters.

### Example: Customizing an IP address in a connection policy

For example, an RDP connection policy on a Managed host node specifies the following client and target addresses:

```
$ curl ... https://<url-of-Central-Management-  
node>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/<id-of-the-connection-policy>
```

```
{  
  "body": {  
    "network": {  
      "clients": [  
        "0.0.0.0/0"  
      ],  
      "ports": [  
        3389  
      ],  
      "targets": [  
        "10.30.255.28/24"  
      ]  
    },  
    ...  
  }  
}
```

In the following example, an RDP connection policy is configured with the following details on the Central management node:

```
$ curl ... https://<url-of-Managed-  
Node>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/<id-of-the-connection-policy>
```

```
{  
  "body": {  
    "network": {  
      "clients": [  
        "0.0.0.0/0"  
      ],  
      "ports": [  
        3389  
      ],  
      "targets": [  
        "10.30.255.8/24"  
      ]  
    }  
  }  
}
```

```

    },
    },
    ...
}

```

To ensure that the details of the connection policy on the Managed host node are kept as-is after configuration synchronization, add the following lines to the plugin `main.py` file:

```

$ cat main.py
def merge(local_config: dict, merged_config: dict, node_id: str, plugin_
config: str, **kwargs):
    merged_config['rdp']['connections']['<id-of-the-connection-policy>']
['network']['targets'][0] = "10.30.255.8/24"
    return merged_config

```

Due to possible new (as yet undefined) parameters, it is good practice to close the parameter list of the merge function with `**kwargs`.

In case you need assistance with writing customized transformations, [contact our Professional Services Team](#), and a One Identity Service Delivery Engineer will be able to help you.

**NOTE:** Configuration settings related to networking (`/api/configuration/network`), local services (`/api/configuration/local_services`), and the management of SPS (`/api/configuration/management`) are not overwritten on the nodes by configuration synchronization even when not using a plugin.

To upload a configuration synchronization plugin to the Central Management node, complete the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Upload the plugin file.**

POST the plugin as a zip file (`application/zip`) to the `https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/upload/plugins` endpoint, for example:

```

curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/zip" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/upload/plugins --data-
binary @<path-to-plugin.zip>

```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.



```

{
  "body": {
    "api": "1.0",
    "default_configuration": "",
    "description": "Whitelist the list of paths when merging
the configuration",
    "name": "whitelist",
    "path": "/opt/scb/var/plugins/configuration_sync/whitelist",
    "scb_max_version": "",
    "scb_min_version": "",
    "version": "1.0"
  },
  "key": "794a5e17-b8be-4426-8596-0dfc129c06ef",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/configuration_
sync/794a5e17-b8be-4426-8596-0dfc129c06ef",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins/configuration_sync",
    "remaining_seconds": 599
  }
}

```

Elements	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (JSON object)	
api	string	Always "1.0".
default_configuration	string	Contains the default configuration of the plugin if there is one.
description	string	The description of what the plugin does.
name	string	The name of the plugin.
path	string	The path to the plugin.
scb_max_version	string	The plugin is compatible with SPS versions not later than this one.
scb_min_version	string	The plugin is compatible with SPS versions not earlier than this one.
version	string	The version number of the plugin.
key	string	The ID of the plugin.

### 3. To enable the plugin

Replace `/api/cluster/configuration_sync_plugin` with:

```
{
  "enabled": true,
  "plugin": "<'key' from-response-of-last-creation>",
  "configuration": ""
}
```

For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/configuration_
sync_plugin --data '{"enabled": true, "plugin": "794a5e17-b8be-4426-8596-
0dfc129c06ef", "configuration": ""}'
```

The following is a sample response received:

```
{
  "plugin": {
    "key": "794a5e17-b8be-4426-8596-0dfc129c06ef",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/configuration_
sync/794a5e17-b8be-4426-8596-0dfc129c06ef"
    }
  }
}
```

### 4. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Disable a configuration synchronization plugin

To disable a configuration synchronization plugin on the Central Management node, complete the following steps.

#### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **To disable the plugin, replace `/api/cluster/configuration_sync_plugin` with:**

```
{
  "enabled": false
}
```

For example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-Central-Management-node>/api/cluster/configuration_
sync_plugin --data '{"enabled": false}'
```

The following is a sample response received:

```
{
  "plugin": {
    "key": null,
    "meta": {}
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Configuration tools in SPS

A list of tools that can help with the configuration of SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists available configuration tools in SPS.

```
curl -X GET -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when the available configuration tools are listed.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "hosts-by-name",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/tools/hosts-by-name"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "ldaptest",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest"
      }
    }
  ],
}
```

Item	Description
<a href="#">Resolving hostnames to IP addresses</a> on page 345	Resolve the hostname of a computer or server to IP addresses.
<a href="#">Testing LDAP server connection</a> on page 347	Test LDAP server connection.

## HTTP response codes

For more information and a list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Resolving hostnames to IP addresses

SPS configuration requires you to set IP addresses as values. Resolve the hostname of a computer or server with the /hosts-by-name endpoint to receive the list of all related IP addresses that you can use for configuration.

**NOTE:** The protocol parameter can only take the following two values: TCP and UDP. Anything else will return an error message.

### URL

```
POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/hosts-by-name
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command resolves the hostname to IP addresses.

```
curl -X POST -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/hosts-by-name
```

```
{
  "hostname": "example.org",
  "protocol": "TCP"
}
```

Elements of the request message body include:

Element	Type	Required	Description	Notes
hostname	string	Required	The unique identifier that serves as the name of the computer or server whose IP address you want to resolve.	
protocol	string	Required	The type of Internet Protocol used to address and route packets of data.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TCP</li> <li>• UDP</li> </ul>

## Response

When resolving a hostname to IP addresses, the response is the following.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "ipv4": [
    "93.184.216.34",
    "93.184.216.35"
  ],
  "ipv6": [
    "2606:2800:220:1:248:1893:25c8:1946",
    "2606:2800:220:1:248:1893:25c8:1947"
  ]
}
```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
ipv4	string array	The Internet Protocol type of the IP addresses is version 4.	
ipv6	string array	The Internet Protocol type of the IP addresses is version 6.	

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	Syntactic Error	The protocol you provided is not valid. Use TCP or UDP as value instead.
400	HostnameCannotBeResolved	The hostname you provided cannot be resolved. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The hostname you provided is valid.</li><li>• The hostname is available on the Internet.</li></ul>
401	Unauthenticated	Unauthenticated users cannot query the IP addresses of a host.

For more information and a list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Testing LDAP server connection

Use the /ldaptest endpoint to test whether your LDAP server configuration was successful and the connection between the LDAP server and SPS can be established. You can identify connection issues based on the specific error messages received (for example, unsuccessful authorization due to incomplete credentials).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/ldaptest
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	token of the user		<p>response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists endpoints for testing LDAP server availability.

```
curl -k -X GET -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/ldaptest
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when LDAP test endpoints are listed.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "aaa",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest/aaa"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest/policies"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "aaa": "/api/tools/ldaptest/aaa",
    "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest",
  }
}
```



```

    "parent": "/api/tools",
    "policies": "/api/tools/ldaptest/policies",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  }
}

```

## Operations

Operations with the /ldaptest endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
List endpoints for testing LDAP server availability	GET	/api/tools/ldaptest	
Testing a LDAP server	POST	/api/tools/ldaptest/policies	
Testing an AAA LDAP server	POST	/api/tools/ldaptest/aaa	

### Example: Testing LDAP server connection

**To test your connection to a LDAP server, you have to**

1. Authenticate to SPS. For more information, see [Authenticate to the SPS REST API](#) on page 19.
2. List the available LDAP servers that you have previously configured.

```
curl -k -X GET -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers
```

3. Select the key of the LDAP server that you want to test.
4. Use the key to test whether you can connect to the LDAP server.

```
curl -k -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/ldaptest/policies --data '{"key": "200796612861e564724534a"}'
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when you test your connection to a LDAP server.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest/policies",
    "ldap_server": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/200796612861e564724534a",
    "parent": "/api/tools/ldaptest",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  },
  "success": true
}
```

### Example: Testing AAA LDAP server connection

**To test your connection to an AAA LDAP server, you have to**

1. Authenticate to SPS. For more information, see [Authenticate to the SPS REST API](#) on page 19.
2. List the available AAA LDAP servers that you have previously configured.

```
curl -k -X GET -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers
```

3. Select the key of the AAA LDAP server that you want to test.
4. Use the key to test whether you can connect to the AAA LDAP server.

```
curl -k -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/json" -b "${COOKIE_PATH}" https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/tools/ldaptest/aaa --data '{"key": "200796612861e564724534a"}'
```

### Response

The following is a sample response received when you test your connection to an AAA LDAP server.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/tools/ldaptest/policies",
    "ldap_server": "/api/configuration/aaa/ldap_servers/200796612861e564724534a",
  },
  "success": true
}
```

```

    "parent": "/api/tools/ldaptest",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  },
  "success": true
}

```

Elements of the response message body include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
success	boolean	Indicates that the connection to the provided LDAP server could be established.	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true - the test was successful</li> <li>• false - the test was not successful</li> </ul>
meta.href	string (relative path)	Path of the resource that returned the response. When creating a new object, this is the URL of the created object.	
meta.ldap_server	string (relative path)	Identifier of the LDAP server that was tested.	
meta.parent	string (relative path)		
meta.remaining_seconds	integer	Time left until the session times out in seconds.	SPS closes idle sessions after a period of inactivity. This value shows the number of seconds left until the timeout. For details on setting the session timeout, see <a href="#">Web interface</a> .

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	TransactionMustBeClosed	<p>The user attempted to test a LDAP server while a transaction was open (for example, there were pending configuration changes while the test was attempted).</p> <p>Commit or roll back the transaction before testing the LDAP server.</p>
400	NoSuchLDAPServer	<p>There are no LDAP servers configured with the identifier specified in the request:</p> <pre>--data '{"key": "&lt;invalid value&gt;"}'</pre> <p>Make sure that you use a valid key from the list of configured LDAP servers.</p> <p>This can also occur if you attempt to test an AAA LDAP server using the /ldaptest/policies endpoint or vice versa.</p>
400	LDAPServerWithNoBindPassword	<p>You can connect to a LDAP server using a bind DN (bind_dn) and a bind password (bind_password). These credentials are used for authentication. Normally, you need both credentials to make a successful connection, so that access to the LDAP server can be controlled. Some LDAP servers might be configured to allow so-called anonymous connections, meaning that there is no access control whatsoever and anybody can connect to that server. To test such a connection, there must be no credentials configured for that LDAP server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>valid: a bind_dn and a bind_password are both configured, or there is no bind_dn and no bind_</li> </ul>

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
		password <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>invalid: there is a bind_dn, but no bind_password, or there is a bind_password, but no bind_dn</li> </ul>
400	LDAPServerWithNoBindDn	See LDAPServer-WithNoBindPassword.
500	LDAPConnectionFailure	<p>Something went wrong during testing the connection. The most common reason would be an incorrect server address/port, DNS resolution failure, firewalls, or a damaged networking cable.</p> <p>Make sure that the configured address/port is reachable from SPS.</p>

For more information and a list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## General connection settings

### Channel policy

The channel policy lists the channels (for example, terminal session and SCP in SSH, Drawing, Clipboard in RDP) that can be used in a connection. The channel policy can further restrict access to each channel based on the IP address of the client or the server, a user list, user group, or a time policy. For example, all clients may access the servers defined in a connection via SSH terminal, but the channel policy may restrict SCP access only to a single client. The policies set in the channel policy are checked when the user attempts to open a particular channel type in the connection.

Channel policies are protocol specific. To list the available Channel policies for a protocol, use the following command.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<http|ica|rdp|ssh|telnet|vnc>/channel_policies
```

The following sections detail the properties of Channel policy objects.

#### URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<http|ica|rdp|ssh|telnet|vnc>/channel_policies/<object-id>
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the properties of a specific RDP Channel policy object.

```
curl --cookie cookies -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/<rdp>/channel_policies/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Channel policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "terminal-only",
    "rules": [
      {
        "actions": {
          "audit": true,
          "content_policy": null,
          "four_eyes": false,
          "ids": false
        },
        "allowed_for": {
          "clients": [],
          "gateway_groups": [],
          "remote_groups": [],
          "servers": [],
          "time_policy": {
            "key": "-100",
            "meta": {
              "href": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/-100"
            }
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    },
    "channel": "#drawing"
  },
  {
    "actions": {
      "audit": true,
      "four_eyes": false,
      "ids": false
    },
    "allowed_for": {
      "clients": [],
      "gateway_groups": [],
      "remote_groups": [],
      "servers": [],
      "time_policy": {
        "key": "-100",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/-100"
        }
      }
    }
  },
  {
    "channel": "cliprdr"
  }
]
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
rules	list of JSON objects	Top level element, contains the configuration properties of the object.
actions	JSON object	The actions that SPS performs for the channel, for example, recording the traffic into an audit trail.
allowed_for	JSON object	Specifies the access control rules of the channel, for example, permitted target IP addresses or usergroups.
channel	string	The type of the channel. Note that channels are protocol specific, and different type of channels can have different parameters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For details on HTTP-specific channels, see <a href="#">HTTP channels</a> on page 452.</li> </ul>



Element	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For details on Citrix ICA-specific channels, see <a href="#">ICA channels</a> on page 484.</li> <li>For details on RDP-specific channels, see <a href="#">RDP channels</a> on page 565.</li> <li>For details on SSH-specific channels, see <a href="#">SSH channels</a> on page 611.</li> <li>For details on Telnet-specific channels, see <a href="#">Telnet channels</a> on page 668.</li> </ul>

For example:

```
"channel": "#drawing",
```

Element	Type	Description
actions	JSON object	The list of actions to perform when the Content policy matches the analyzed traffic. All actions are boolean values (true or false)
audit	boolean	Set to true to record the activities of the channel into audit trails. Possible values: true or false
content_policy	JSON object	Specifies the Content policy to use in the channel, otherwise its value is null (which is the default). For details on Content policies, see <a href="#">Real-time content monitoring with Content Policies</a> For example: <pre>"content_policy": {   "key": "&lt;object-id&gt;", }</pre>
four_eyes	boolean	Set to true to require four-eyes authorization to access the channel. For details, see <a href="#">"Configuring four-eyes authorization" in the Administration Guide</a> . Possible values: true or false

Element	Type	Description
allowed_for	JSON object	Specifies the access control rules of the channel.
clients	list	To restrict the availability of the channel only to certain clients, list the IP address or network of the clients allowed to use this the channel. For IPv6 addresses, use the canonized format of the address. For example:

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>"clients": [   "192.168.1.1/24",   "2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:0:0/32"</pre> <p>Alternatively, you can also enter a hostname instead. One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) saves the hostname and resolves it when opening channels, therefore SPS can trace dynamic IP addresses.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Note the following limitations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Domain Name Servers you set must be able to resolve the hostnames you enter into the <code>clients</code> and <code>servers</code> fields, otherwise this function (and, therefore, the sessions using this Channel Policy) will not work.</li> <li>• SPS Channel Policies support wildcard characters in the <code>*.example.com</code> format. If the channel opening request contains an IP address, SPS uses a reverse lookup method to resolve this IP address into a hostname for a match.</li> <li>• SPS uses the Domain Name Servers set in the <code>/api/configuration/network/dns</code> endpoint to resolve the hostnames.</li> </ul>
gateway_ groups	list	<p>You can control channel access during gateway authentication with blacklists or whitelists of user groups. You can use local user lists on SPS, or LDAP groups.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure web gateway authentication in the connection policy, or client-side gateway authentication back-end in the authentication policy.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"gateway_groups": ["group1", "group2"],</pre> <p>To configure local user lists, see <a href="#">User lists</a> on page 425.</p>
remote_ groups	list	<p>You can control channel access during authentication to the remote server with blacklists or whitelists of</p>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>user groups. You can use local user lists on SPS, or LDAP groups.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"remote_groups": ["group1", "group2"],</pre> <p>To configure local user lists, see <a href="#">User lists</a> on page 425.</p>
servers	list	<p>To restrict the availability of the channel only to certain servers, list the IP address or network of the servers that your clients are allowed to access using this the channel. For IPv6 addresses, use the canonized format of the address. For example:</p> <pre>"servers": [   "192.168.1.1/24",   "2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:0:0/32"</pre> <p>Alternatively, you can also enter a hostname instead. One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) saves the hostname and resolves it when opening channels, therefore SPS can trace dynamic IP addresses.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Note the following limitations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Domain Name Servers you set must be able to resolve the hostnames you enter into the clients and servers fields, otherwise this function (and, therefore, the sessions using this Channel Policy) will not work.</li> <li>• SPS Channel Policies support wildcard characters in the *.example.com format. If the channel opening request contains an IP address, SPS uses a reverse lookup method to resolve this IP address into a hostname for a match.</li> <li>• SPS uses the Domain Name Servers set in the /api/configuration/network/dns endpoint to resolve the hostnames.</li> </ul> <p>Alternatively, you can configure a custom DNS server to be used for target selection custom_dns field of the Connection Policy.</p>

Element	Type	Description
time_policy	JSON object	Specifies the Time policy to use in the channel. If you do not want to restrict access, use the default 7x24 policy-100. For details on Time policies, see <a href="#">Time policy</a> on page 410. For example:

```

"time_policy": {
  "key": "-100",
}
```

## Policies

List of endpoints for configuring policies and settings that can be referenced when configuring connections.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the available endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the available configuration endpoints.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "aa_plugin_instances",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "analytics",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "archive_cleanup_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "audit_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "backup_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "content_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "credentialstores",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

},
{
  "key": "indexing",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing"
  }
},
{
  "key": "ldap_servers",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers"
  }
},
{
  "key": "signing_cas",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas"
  }
},
{
  "key": "time_policies",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies"
  }
},
{
  "key": "trusted_ca_lists",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists"
  }
},
{
  "key": "user_databases",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases"
  }
},
{
  "key": "userlists",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists"
  }
},
{
  "key": "usermapping_policies",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies"
  }
}

```

```

    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/private_keys",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/plugins",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Endpoint	Description
<code>aa_plugin_instances</code>	Authentication and Authorization plugin policies
<code>analytics</code>	Analytics.
<code>archive_cleanup_policies</code>	Archive/Cleanup policies.
<code>audit_policies</code>	Audit trail encryption, timestamping, and signing.
<code>backup_policies</code>	Backup policies.
<code>content_policies</code>	Actions for detected commands, screen content, credit card information, and window titles.
<code>credentialstores</code>	Local and external credential stores.
<code>indexing</code>	Languages for Optical Character Recognition (OCR).
<code>ldap_servers</code>	LDAP servers.
<code>signing_cas</code>	<p>Signing CAs for generating the server-side certificates on the fly. You can use such CAs in SSL-encrypted RDP sessions, RDP sessions that use Network Level Authentication (CredSSP), or SSH connections that use X.509-based authentication.</p> <p>To configure signing for audit trails, use the <code>audit_policies</code> endpoint.</p>
<code>time_policies</code>	Time policies.
<code>trusted_ca_lists</code>	Trusted Certificate Authorities (CAs), and options for restricting the accepted certificates.
<code>user_databases</code>	Local User Databases are available for RDP, SSH and Telnet protocols, and can be used to authenticate the clients to credentials (passwords, public keys, and certificates) that are locally available on SPS.

Endpoint	Description
<a href="#">userlists</a>	Local white- or blacklists of usernames that allow fine-control over who can access a connection or a channel.
<a href="#">usermapping_policies</a>	Usermapping policies describe who can use a specific username to access the remote server.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Archive/Cleanup policy

Archiving transfers data from SPS to an external storage solution, cleanup removes (deletes) old files. Archived data can be accessed and searched, but cannot be restored (moved back) to the SPS appliance. Only those closed audit-trail files are archived where the retention time has already elapsed. To list the available Archive policies, use the following command.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/
```

The following sections detail the properties of Archive/Cleanup policy objects.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/<object-id>
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the properties of a specific Archive/Cleanup policy object.

```
curl --cookie cookies -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Archive/Cleanup policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "99375192754364c2b1bd01",
  "body": {
    "name": "archive_all_with_filelist",
    "include_node_id_in_path": false,
    "notification_event": {
      "type": "all",
      "send_filelist": true,
      "file_count_limit": 123456
    },
    "target": {
      "type": "nfs",
      "server": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "1.2.3.5"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    "path": "/data/backup"
  },
  "start_times": [
    "10:10"
  ],
  "template": "PROTOCOL/CONNECTION/ARCHIVEDATE/",
  "retention_days": 30
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
include_node_id_in_path	boolean	Include the Cluster Node ID in the path. Recommended to set to True if the SPS instance is a node in a cluster. This ensures that the ID of the node is included in the path of the relevant directory, which is required to prevent cluster nodes from archiving data to the same location, and so overwriting each other's data and resulting in data loss.
notification_event	Top level element	
type	string (all   errors-only   none)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>all: Sends notification emails on all archive-related events.</li> <li>errors-only: Sends notification emails only on archive-related errors.</li> <li>none: Sends no archive-related notification emails.</li> </ul>
send_filelist	boolean	<p>This is meaningful only if notification_event is set to all.</p> <p>True if the list of files are included in the notification e-mail.</p>
file_count_limit	integer	<p>This is meaningful only if notification_event is set to all and send_filelist is set to True.</p> <p>The maximum number of files that are included in the notification e-mail.</p>
target	Top level element	Defines the address of the archive server,

Element	Type	Description
		which protocol to use to access it, and other parameters. SPS can be configured to use the SMB/CIFS, and NFS protocols to access the archive server.
type	string (smb   nfs   none)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>smb: Move data to a remote server using SMB/CIFS</li> <li>nfs: Move data to a remote server using NFS</li> <li>none: Cleanup data. Data is deleted from SPS forever and cannot be recovered.</li> </ul>
server	Top level element	
domain	string	Only if type is set to smb. The domain name of the target server
protocol_version	string	Only if type is set to smb. The SMB protocol to use when SPS connects to the server. Servers are usually backwards compatible with earlier protocol versions (for example, a server that supports version 2.1 supports versions 2.0 and 1.0 as well).
share	string	Only if type is set to smb. The name and directory path of the share in the following format: <div>share_name/path/to/directory</div>
authentication	Top level element	Only if type is set to smb.
path	string	The path to the archive directory on the target server
start_times	list of strings	The time when the archive process starts in H:MM or HH:MM format.
template	string	SPS organizes the audit trails into directories based on the date or the protocol. The subdirectories are created directly into the archive directory. The following subdirectory structures are

Element	Type	Description
		possible: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PROTOCOL/CONNECTION/ARCHIVEDATE/</li> <li>• ARCHIVEDATE/CONNECTION/PROTOCOL/</li> <li>• CONNECTIONDATE/PROTOCOL/CONNECTION/</li> <li>• ARCHIVEDATE/</li> <li>• CONNECTIONDATE/</li> </ul>
retention_ days	integer (days)	Data older than this value is archived to the external server. The archived data is deleted from SPS.

Elements of server	Type	Description
server	Top level element	
selection	string (ip   fqdn)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ip: IP address</li> <li>• fqdn: Hostname</li> </ul>
value	string	The IP address or the hostname of the remote server

Elements of authentication	Type	Description
authentication	Top level element	Only if type is set to smb.
selection	string (password   anonymous)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• password: To log on using a username and password.</li> <li>• anonymous: To log on anonymously.</li> </ul>
username	string	Only if selection is set to password. The username used to log on to the remote server
password	string	Only if selection is set to password. The password corresponding to the username

# Audit policies

The list of audit policies. An audit policy contains settings for encrypting, timestamping, and signing audit trails. To enable auditing for a connection, select an audit policy when configuring connections, and enable auditing for the appropriate protocol channels in the connection's channel policy.

**NOTE:** The default audit policy is pre-selected when creating connection policies. Modify that audit policy with care.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the audit policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/policies/audit_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing audit policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/78101850949e47437dd91d"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "9161063345713f11489305",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/9161063345713f11489305"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific audit policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "encryption": {
      "certificates": [
        {
          "certificate": "<cert1>",
          "four_eyes_certificate": "<cert2>"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  ],
  "different_certificates_for_upstream": {
    "certificates": [
      {
        "certificate": "<cert3>",
        "four_eyes_certificate": "<cert4>"
      }
    ],
    "enabled": true
  },
  "enabled": true
},
"name": "<policy-name>",
"signing": {
  "enabled": true,
  "x509_identity": {
    "key": "ec0b6604-37f6-4df6-bd2f-d7879a75b324",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/x509/ec0b6604-37f6-4df6-bd2f-d7879a75b324"
    }
  }
},
"timestamping_enabled": true
},
"key": "1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d",
  "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-
c83ebc74dc2e",
  "last": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-
c83ebc74dc2e",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/9161063345713f11489305",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element	The configuration elements of the policy.

Element	Type	Description
	(string)	
<a href="#">encryption</a>	Top level element	Audit trail encryption settings.
name	string	The name of the policy. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
signing	Top level element	Audit trail signing settings.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable audit trail signing. If signing is enabled, the x509_identity element is also required.
x509_identity	string	Required for signing audit trails. References the identifier of the X.509 certificate stored on SPS. You can configure certificates at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint. To modify or add an X.509 host certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
timestamping	boolean	Set to true to timestamp the audit trail.

Elements of encryption	Type	Description
certificates	Top level list	Contains the encrypting certificates.
certificate	string	The encrypting certificate. You can replay an encrypted audit trail with the private key of the encrypting certificate.
four_eyes_certificate	string	Additional certificate for joint (4-eyes) encryption. You can only replay a jointly encrypted audit trail with the private keys of both certificates.
different_certificates_	Top level item	Configures encrypting upstream traffic separ-



Elements of encryption	Type	Description
for_upstream		ately.
certificates	Top level list	The certificates for encrypting upstream traffic.
certificate	string	The encrypting certificate. You can replay an encrypted upstream with the private key of the encrypting certificate.
four_eyes_certificate	string	Additional certificate for joint (4-eyes) encryption. You can only replay a jointly encrypted upstream with the private keys of both certificates.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to encrypt the upstream traffic with separate certificate(s). If upstream encryption is enabled, the certificates element is required.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable encrypting audit trails. If encryption is enabled, the certificates and different_certificates_for_upstream elements are required.

## Examples:

Disable encryption, signing, and timestamping.

```
{
  "encryption": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "name": "default",
  "signing": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "timestamping_enabled": false
}
```

Encrypt upstream traffic only (single certificate).

```
{
  "encryption": {
    "certificates": [],
    "different_certificates_for_upstream": {
      "certificates": [
        {
          "certificate": "<cert>",
          "four_eyes_certificate": null
        }
      ],
      "enabled": true
    },
    "enabled": true
  },
  "name": "Upstream_only",
  "signing": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "timestamping_enabled": false
}
```

Enable signing and timestamping, no traffic encryption.

```
{
  "encryption": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "name": "Sign_and_timestamp",
  "signing": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509_identity": {
      "key": "9508db81-4a3f-45a7-a2b1-a86f71c56416",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/x509/9508db81-4a3f-45a7-a2b1-a86f71c56416"
      }
    }
  },
  "timestamping_enabled": true
}
```

Enable signing and timestamping, and encrypt traffic with a single certificate (no separate upstream encryption).

```
{
  "encryption": {
    "certificates": [
      {
        "certificate": "<cert>",
```

```

        "four_eyes_certificate": null
    },
    ],
    "different_certificates_for_upstream": {
        "enabled": false
    },
    "enabled": true
},
"name": "API_audit_pol",
"signing": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509_identity": {
        "key": "d0286f64-41aa-45e1-ab19-830ac2f99f57",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/x509/d0286f64-41aa-45e1-ab19-830ac2f99f57"
        }
    }
},
"timestamping_enabled": true
}

```

## Encrypting certificates

Encrypting certificates must not contain any metadata. SPS uses only the key part of the certificate, no other data (expiry, etc.) are relevant for encryption.

To use a certificate with the SPS API, remove all metadata, and substitute line breaks with \n.

The following is an example certificate, as used on the SPS web interface:

```

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDnDCCAAoQCCQDc536Ob5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC
Q0ExEDAOBgNVBAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBACTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT
B0JhbGFiaXQxZjAUBG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbiB1YXhYbW10Lm1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
MDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRADGQYDQVQKEwdP
bnRhcmlvMRADGQYDQVQKEwdUub3JvbnRvMRADGQYDQVQKEwdCYWxhYm10MRYwFAYD
VQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRADGQYDQVQKEwdiYXhYbW10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN
AQkBFHfjYXRhaWxAYmF5WjpdC5odTCCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBA0Ga9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS
59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kVIv0+Z6bBHfg/7wHwysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3CHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy

```

```

0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oVl1/Fzo7mt
qYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----

```

The same certificate, as accepted by the SPS API:

```

"certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\ nMIIDnDCCAAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCbjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC\nQ0ExEDAOBgNV
BAgTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBAcTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT\nB0JhbGFiaXQxZjAUBGNVBA5TDU
RvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFiaXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxh
Ym10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2\nMDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAKNBMRAdG
YDVQZIEwDQ\nbnRhcmlvMRAdGyYDVQZHEwdU3JvbnRvMRAdGyYDVQZKEwdCYWxhYm10MRYwFAYD\nnVQ
QLEw1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAdGyYDVQZQEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN\nnAQkBFhFjYXRhaWxA
YmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASiDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC\nnAQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmV1vdVWEI/Wy7a
hTeyaIjK52FQUXqG8okOSD+nV74ZFUuIS\nn59X+20w1aDqVGrDMGPNhSVpYXUvDUAU0ILJW4rAIoxDY
6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw\nn0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zf9T+eDG2
oSobPc\n3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6wnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxZFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs\nnX5kVIv
0+Z6bBHfg/7wHwysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfbQTX\nnhJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4di
KU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA\nnR5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh
6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP\nnAB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57
IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy\nn0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7X
DB\nnuNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc\nnN5+4ImYnFN
xSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oVl1/Fzo7mt\nnqYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"

```

## Add an audit policy

To add an audit policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new audit policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new audit policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an audit policy

To modify an audit policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the audit policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/<policy-key>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Backup policy

Backup policies define the address of the backup server, which protocol to use to access it, and other parameters. To list the available Backup policies, use the following command.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/
```

The following sections detail the properties of Backup policy objects.

### URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/<object-id>
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the properties of a specific Backup policy object.

```
curl --cookie cookies -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Backup policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "99275192754364c2b1bd01",
  "body": {
    "name": "backup_all_with_filelist",
    "include_node_id_in_path": false,
    "notification_event": {
      "type": "all",
      "send_filelist": true,
      "file_count_limit": 123456
    },
    "target": {
      "type": "nfs",
      "server": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "1.2.3.5"
      },
      "path": "/data/backup"
    },
    "start_times": [
      "10:10"
    ]
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
include_node_id_in_path	boolean	Include the Cluster Node ID in the path. Recommended to set to True if the SPS instance is a node in a cluster. This ensures that the ID of the node is included in the path of the relevant directory, which is required to prevent cluster nodes from backing up data to

Element	Type	Description
		the same location, and so overwriting each other's data and resulting in data loss.
notification_event	Top level element	
type	string (all   errors-only   none)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>all: Sends notification emails on all backup-related events.</li> <li>errors-only: Sends notification emails only on backup-related errors.</li> <li>none: Sends no backup-related notification emails.</li> </ul>
send_filelist	boolean	<p>This is meaningful only if notification_event is set to all.</p> <p>True if the list of files are included in the notification e-mail.</p>
file_count_limit	integer	<p>This is meaningful only if notification_event is set to all and send_filelist is set to True.</p> <p>The maximum number of files that are included in the notification e-mail.</p>
target	Top level element	Defines the address of the backup server, which protocol to use to access it, and other parameters. SPS can be configured to use the Rsync, SMB/CIFS, and NFS protocols to access the backup server.
type	string (rsync   smb   nfs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>rsync: Rsync over SSH</li> <li>smb: Copy data to a remote server using SMB/CIFS</li> <li>nfs: Copy data to a remote server using NFS</li> </ul>
server	Top level element	
domain	string	<p>Only if type is set to smb.</p> <p>The domain name of the target server</p>
protocol_version	string	Only if type is set to smb.



Element	Type	Description
		The SMB protocol to use when SPS connects to the server. Servers are usually backwards compatible with earlier protocol versions (for example, a server that supports version 2.1 supports versions 2.0 and 1.0 as well).
share	string	<p>Only if type is set to smb.</p> <p>The name and directory path of the share in the following format:</p> <pre>share_name/path/to/directory</pre>
authentication	Top level element	Only if type is set to smb.
username	string	<p>Only if type is set to rsync.</p> <p>The username used to log on to the remote server</p>
path	string	The path to the backup directory on the target server
auth_key	JSON object	<p>Only if type is set to rsync.</p> <p>This key will be used to authenticate SPS on the remote server. The public key of this keypair must be imported to the remote server. For details on private keys, see <a href="#">Private keys stored on SPS</a> on page 267. For example:</p> <pre>"auth_key": {   "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",   "meta": {     "href": "/api/- configuration/private_ keys/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX"   } },</pre>
host_key	Top level element or string	Only if type is set to rsync.

Element	Type	Description
port	integer	Only if type is set to rsync. The port number of the SSH server running on the remote machine
start_times	list of strings	The time when the archive process starts in H:MM or HH:MM format.

Elements of server	Type	Description
server	Top level element	
selection	string (ip   fqdn)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ip: IP address</li> <li>fqdn: Hostname</li> </ul>
value	string	The IP address or the hostname of the remote server

Elements of authentication	Type	Description
authentication	Top level element	Only if type is set to smb.
selection	string (password   anonymous)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>password: To log on using a username and password.</li> <li>anonymous: To log on anonymously.</li> </ul>
username	string	Only if selection is set to password. The username used to log on to the remote server
password	string	Only if selection is set to password. The password corresponding to the username

## El- T-Description

e- y-  
m- p-  
e- e  
nt- -  
s  
of  
ho  
s  
t\_  
ke  
y

h T-Only if type is set to rsync.

o O- When editing this policy, for usability purposes, you can enter the public key of the  
s P host in the host\_key element without using the selection and value elements. For  
t example:

- l-  
k e-  
e v-  
y e-  
l  
e-  
l-  
e-  
m-  
e-  
n-  
t

```
"host_key": "ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nz-  
aC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQDmIDa1PuJFzgVzVps9hzgvMd/9WIn4J7RBFu0769g/OgTvCRT-  
grF8IM/0iN0YzcUM3IGyPnJ101LE2Gb6CxVvEcjP6pme7JroAWo039wQHR3Rx11KoEmC+0EO-  
ImQycIdAS7-  
grWNwD2VB2S7iyFErZhqRx-  
hGJPKbR/kF3lQ3dGt-  
t3pr4+R6wnU9lZ7RSETfB+N09FE4f5Nqy+VEShg-  
dc66ElFRXXVilmiTnIMay-  
im3T7UVNgRdZYIUAZ79tkyTp6I+DZ7k7BG9TYwdBjh-  
wr0eVL56ILxpXylpzW0NuMhHxLKsL42NfmeagjVUD1CJV0rfaGjCVGEeS3iQs6GVVxe78n"
```

o- When querying, the public key of the host will always be displayed in the selection  
r and value elements.

s-  
t-  
r-  
i-  
n-  
g

s s- The algorithm the key is based on.

e t-  
l r-  
e i-  
c n-  
t g  
i  
o

## Example: querying an Rsync backup policy

Example: querying an Rsync backup policy

```
GET /api/v1/rsync/policies/{id}
```

Example: querying an Rsync backup policy

### Example: querying an Rsync backup policy

When the query is the following:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/99275192754364c2b1bd04"
```

The response is the following:

```
{
  "key": "99275192754364c2b1bd04",
  "body": {
    "name": "backup_rsync",
    "include_node_id_in_path": true,
    "notification_event": {
      "type": "none",
      "send_filelist": true,
      "file_count_limit": 10240
    },
    "target": {
      "type": "rsync",
      "server": {
        "selection": "ip",
        "value": "192.168.122.1"
      },
      "username": "user1",
      "path": "/data/backup",
      "auth_key": {
        "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/private_keys/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX"
        }
      },
      "host_key": {
        "selection": "rsa",
        "value": "AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQQAQABAAAYQCsU80IBrJb0lqCi03qZK+FtgS783VKE1TVZBtDQ1sXJ9FXu6KNBvqvSAjCxiWY+izqn+P14UVRy1vOdz7WwLIW0UoTKHfPMqv3bdjwM4Bhd26POWSFYDf46yx1YzvMwgc="
      },
      "port": 1122
    },
    "start_times": [
      "8:00"
    ]
  }
}
```

# Real-time content monitoring with Content Policies

You can monitor the traffic of certain connections in real time, and execute various actions if a certain pattern (for example, a particular command or text) appears in the command line or on the screen, or if a window with a particular title appears in a graphical protocol. Since content-monitoring is performed real-time, One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) can prevent harmful commands from being executed on your servers. SPS can also detect numbers that might be credit card numbers. The patterns to find can be defined as regular expressions. In case of ICA, RDP, and VNC connections, SPS can detect window title content.

The following actions can be performed:

- Log the event in the system logs.
- Immediately terminate the connection.
- Send an e-mail or SNMP alerts about the event.
- Store the event in the connection database of SPS.

SPS currently supports content monitoring in SSH session-shell connections, Telnet connections, RDP and Citrix ICA Drawing channels, and in VNC connections.

**NOTE:** Command, credit card and window detection algorithms use heuristics. In certain (rare) situations, they might not match the configured content. In such cases, [contact our Support Team](#) to help analyze the problem.

Real-time content monitoring in graphical protocols is not supported for Arabic and CJK languages.

To list the available Content policies, use the following command.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/content_policies
```

The following sections detail the properties of Content policy objects.

## URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/<object-id>
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	token of the user		<p>response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the properties of a specific Content policy object.

```
curl --cookie cookies -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Content policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "example-content-policy-window-title",
    "rules": [
      {
        "actions": {
          "log": true,
          "notify": true,
          "store_in_connection_database": true,
          "terminate": false
        },
        "event": {
          "ignore": [],
          "match": [
            "mmc.exe"
          ],
          "selection": "window_title"
        },
        "gateway_groups": [],
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    "remote_groups": []
  }
]
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
rules	JSON object	Top level element, contains the configuration properties of the object.
actions	JSON object	The list of actions to perform when the Content policy matches the analyzed traffic. All actions are boolean values (true or false)
event	JSON object	Specifies the event that triggers an action.
gateway_groups	list	<p>To apply the Content policy only for users belonging to specific groups, list those groups in the gateway_groups or remote_groups fields. If the gateway_groups or remote_groups field is set, the content policy is applied only to connections of these usergroups.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"gateway_groups": ["group1", "group2"],</pre>
remote_groups	list	<p>To apply the Content policy only for users belonging to specific groups, list those groups in the gateway_groups or remote_groups fields. If the gateway_groups or remote_groups field is set, the content policy is applied only to connections of these usergroups.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"remote_groups": ["group1", "group3"],</pre>

Element	Type	Description
actions	JSON object	The list of actions to perform when the Content policy matches the analyzed traffic. All actions are boolean values (true or false)
log	boolean	Log the event in the system logs. Possible values: true or false



Element	Type	Description
terminate	boolean	Immediately terminate the connection. Possible values: true or false
notify	boolean	Send an e-mail or SNMP alerts about the event. Possible values: true or false
store_in_connection_database	boolean	Store the event in the connection database of SPS. Possible values: true or false

Element	Type	Description
event	JSON object	Specifies the event that triggers an action.
ignore	list	A list of strings or regular expressions. SPS will perform an action if the match expression is found in the connection, unless it is listed in the ignore list. For example:

```
"ignore": [
  "mmc.exe",
  "cmd.exe"
```

- Use Perl Compatible Regular Expressions (PCRE).
- The following characters must be escaped using a backslash character: ' (single-quote). For example, instead of .\*' use .\*\'
- SPS uses substring search to find the expression in the content. That is, SPS finds the expression even if there is more content before or after the matching part. For example, the conf pattern will match the following texts: conf, configure, reconfigure, arconf, and so on.
- Using complicated regular expressions or using many regular expressions will affect the performance of SPS.
- If the multiple expressions are set, SPS processes them one after the other, and stops processing the content if the first match is found, even if other expressions would also match the content. Therefore, when using multiple expressions, start with the most specific one, and add general expressions

Element	Type	Description
		afterward.
match	list	<p>A list of strings or regular expressions. SPS will perform an action if the <code>match</code> expression is found in the connection, unless it is listed in the <code>ignore</code> list. For example:</p> <pre>"match": [   "mmc.exe",   "cmd.exe"</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use Perl Compatible Regular Expressions (PCRE).</li> <li>• The following characters must be escaped using a backslash character: ' (single-quote). For example, instead of <code>.*</code> use <code>.*\</code></li> <li>• SPS uses substring search to find the expression in the content. That is, SPS finds the expression even if there is more content before or after the matching part. For example, the <code>conf</code> pattern will match the following texts: <code>conf</code>, <code>configure</code>, <code>reconfigure</code>, <code>arconf</code>, and so on.</li> <li>• Using complicated regular expressions or using many regular expressions will affect the performance of SPS.</li> <li>• If the multiple expressions are set, SPS processes them one after the other, and stops processing the content if the first match is found, even if other expressions would also match the content. Therefore, when using multiple expressions, start with the most specific one, and add general expressions afterward.</li> </ul>
selection	string	<p>The type of event that you want to monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>command</code>: The commands executed in the <code>session-shell</code> channel of SSH connections, or in Telnet connections.</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p><b>CAUTION:</b></p> <p>During indexing, if a separate certificate is used to encrypt the upstream traffic, command detection works only if the upstream key is accessible on the machine running the indexer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>screen_content: Every text that appears on the screen. For example, every text that is displayed in the terminal of SSH or Telnet connections. This includes the executed commands as well, unless echoing is turned off for the terminal.</li> <li>creditcard: Process every text that appears on the screen and attempt to detect credit card numbers in SSH or Telnet connections. SPS performs an action if the number of detected credit card numbers exceeds the value set as <b>Permitted number of credit card numbers</b>.  Credit card number detection is based on the Luhn algorithm and lists of known credit card number prefixes.</li> <li>window_title: Text appearing as window titles in case of RDP, Citrix ICA, and VNC connections. Only Windows Classic Themes are supported. Themes with rounded corners, or Windows Aero themes are not supported.</li> </ul>

For example:

```
"selection": "window_title"
```

## Add a content policy

To add a content policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new content policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/content_policies` endpoint. You can find a

detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#) .

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy.  
For example:

```
{
  "key": "1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Modify a content policy**

To modify a content policy, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the content policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/<policy-key>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#) .

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Status and error codes**

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires author-

Code	Description	Notes
		ization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## LDAP servers

SPS can authenticate the users of the controlled SSH or RDP connections to LDAP databases.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists the available LDAP server configurations.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific LDAP server.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing LDAP servers.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "3548834825727acc530407",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/3548834825727acc530407"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific LDAP server, the response is the following.

```
{
  "key": "posix-simple",
  "body": {
    "name": "posix-simple",
    "schema": {
      "selection": "posix",
      "membership_check": {
        "enabled": true,
        "member_uid_attribute": "memberUid"
      },
      "memberof_check": {
```

```

        "enabled": true,
        "memberof_user_attribute": "memberOf",
        "memberof_group_objectclass": "groupOfNames"
    },
    "username_attribute": "uid",
    "user_dn_in_groups": []
},
"servers": [
    {
        "host": {
            "selection" : "ip",
            "value": "10.110.0.1"
        },
        "port": 389
    }
],
"user_base_dn": "ou=People,dc=example,dc=com",
"group_base_dn": "ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com",
"bind_dn": null,
"bind_password": null,
"memberof_attribute": null,
"encryption": {
    "selection": "disabled"
},
"publickey_attribute": "sshPublicKey",
"generated_publickey_attribute": null
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the LDAP server configuration.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the LDAP server.
user_base_dn	string	<p>Name of the DN to be used as the base of queries regarding users.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You must fill in this field. It is OK to use the same value for user_base_dn and group_base_dn.</p> <p>However, note that specifying a sufficiently narrow base for the LDAP subtrees where users and groups are stored can speed up LDAP operations.</p>

Element	Type	Description
group_base_dn	string	<p>Name of the DN to be used as the base of queries regarding groups.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You must fill in this field. It is OK to use the same value for user_base_dn and group_base_dn.</p> <p>However, note that specifying a sufficiently narrow base for the LDAP subtrees where users and groups are stored can speed up LDAP operations.</p>
bind_dn	string	The Distinguished Name that SPS should use to bind to the LDAP directory.
bind_password	string	<p>References the password SPS uses to authenticate on the server. You can configure passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
encryption	Top level item	Configuration settings for encrypting the communication between SPS and the LDAP server.
generated_publickey_attribute	string	<p>Set this element to null if you use passwords to authenticate.</p> <p>Configure this element if you want SPS to generate server-side encryption keys on-the-fly, and store them in a separate attribute on the LDAP server.</p>
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
publickey_attribute	string	<p>Set this element to null if you use passwords to authenticate.</p> <p>The name of the LDAP attribute that stores the public keys of the users.</p>
schema	Top level item	Contains the configuration settings for the AD schema.
servers	Top level list	Contains the addresses and ports of the LDAP servers.



Elements of encryption	Type	Description
selection	string	<p>Defines the type of encryption SPS uses to communicate with the LDAP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled The communication is not encrypted.</li> <li>ssl TLS/SSL encryption. To use a TLS-encrypted with certificate verification to connect to the LDAP server, use the full domain name (for example ldap.example.com) as the server address, otherwise the certificate verification might fail. The name of the LDAP server must appear in the Common Name of the certificate. TLS-encrypted connection to Microsoft Active Directory is supported only on Windows 2003 Server and newer platforms. Windows 2000 Server is not supported.</li> <li>starttls Opportunistic TLS.</li> </ul>
client_authentication	Top level item	<p>Must be used with the selection child element.</p> <p>Configures the X.509 certificate SPS uses to authenticate on the LDAP server.</p>
enabled	boolean	<p>Must be used with the client-authentication parent element.</p> <p>Set to true if the LDAP server requires mutual authentication.</p>
x509_identity	string	<p>Must be used if the enabled element is set to true.</p> <p>References the identifier of the X.509 certificate stored on SPS. You can configure X.509 certificates at the <a href="/api/configuration/x509/">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.</p>

Elements of encryption	Type	Description
		To modify or add an X.509 host certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
selection	string	<p>Defines the type of encryption SPS uses to communicate with the LDAP server. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled The communication is not encrypted.</li> <li>ssl TLS/SSL encryption. To use a TLS-encrypted with certificate verification to connect to the LDAP server, use the full domain name (for example ldap.example.com) as the server address, otherwise the certificate verification might fail. The name of the LDAP server must appear in the Common Name of the certificate. TLS-encrypted connection to Microsoft Active Directory is supported only on Windows 2003 Server and newer platforms. Windows 2000 Server is not supported.</li> <li>starttls Opportunistic TLS.</li> </ul>
server_certificate_check	Top level item	<p>Must be used with the enabled child element.</p> <p>Configuration settings for verifying the LDAP server's certificate.</p>
enabled	boolean	<p>Must be used with the server_certificate_check parent element.</p> <p>Set to true to verify the LDAP server's certificate using the certificate of a Certificate Authority (CA).</p>

Elements of encryption	Type	Description
server_certificate_ca	string	Must be used if the enabled element is set to true. The certificate of the CA.

Elements of servers	Type	Description
host	Top level item	Contains the address of the LDAP server.
selection	string	Defines the address type (IP or domain name). Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The LDAP server address is provided as a fully qualified domain name.</li> <li>ip The LDAP server address is provided as an IP address.</li> </ul>
value	string	The address of the LDAP server.
port	int	The port of the LDAP server.

Elements of schema	Type	Description
selection	string	Configures which LDAP schema to use: AD or POSIX. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ad: Microsoft Active Directory server. For details and examples, see <a href="#">LDAP servers</a>.</li> <li>posix: The server uses the POSIX LDAP scheme.</li> </ul> Must be used with the member_uid_attribute and username_attribute elements. For details and examples, see <a href="#">LDAP servers</a> .
membership_check	Top level element	
enabled	boolean	POSIX: Enables POSIX primary and supplementary group membership checking. AD: Enables Active Directory specific non-primary group membership checking.
nested_	boolean	Must be used if the selection element is set to

Elements of schema	Type	Description
groups		ad. Enable nested groups allows AD nested group support.
member_ uid_ attribute	string	Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to posix.  The POSIX group membership attribute name is the name of the attribute in a posixGroup group object, which lists the plain usernames that are members of the group. These groups are usually referred to as supplementary groups of the referred user. Can be null.
memberof_ check	Top level element	The Enable checking for group DNs in user objects setting allows checking a configurable attribute in the user object. This attribute contains a list of group DNs the user is additionally a member of. This user attribute is usually memberOf.
enabled	boolean	To enable memberof_check, set it to true.
memberof_ user_ attribute	string	Must be used if the memberof_check is set it to true. The name of the user attribute (for example, memberOf) that contains the group DNs.
username_ attribute	string	Must be used if the selection element is set to posix.  Attribute name of the username (user ID).
user_dn_in_ groups	Top level list	Add object_class / attribute pairs. SPS will search for the user DN in the group's attribute defined here. If it finds the user DN there, SPS considers the user the member of that group.  For example:

```
"user_dn_in_groups": [
  {
    "object_class": "groupOfNames",
    "attribute": "member"
  },
  {
    "object_class": "groupOfUniqueNames",
    "attribute": "uniqueMember"
  }
]
```

Elements of schema	Type	Description
		<pre>       }     ] </pre>
object_class	string	Consider groups of this objectClass.
attribute	string	Name of the group attribute which contains the user DN.

### Example: Configure a POSIX server without communication encryption

```

{
  "name": "<name-of-ldap-policy>",
  "schema": {
    "selection": "posix",
    "username_attribute": "<uid>",
    "membership_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "member_uid_attribute": "<memberUid>"
    },
    "memberof_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "memberof_user_attribute": "<memberOf>",
      "memberof_group_objectclass": "<groupOfNames>"
    },
    "user_dn_in_groups": [
      {
        "object_class": "<groupOfNames>",
        "attribute": "<member>"
      },
      {
        "object_class": "<groupOfUniqueNames>",
        "attribute": "<uniqueMember>"
      }
    ]
  },
  "servers": [
    {
      "host": {
        "selection": "fqdn",
        "value": "<server-name>"
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

```

    },
    "port": <server-port>
  }
],
"user_base_dn": "<basedn>",
"group_base_dn": "<basedn>",
"bind_dn": "<binddn>",
"bind_password": "<bind-password>",
"encryption": {
  "client_authentication": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "selection": "ssl",
  "server_certificate_check": {
    "enabled": false
  }
},
"publickey_attribute": "<sshPublicKey>",
"generated_publickey_attribute": null
}

```

**Example: Configure a Microsoft Active Directory server with mutual authentication, and the verification of the server's X.509 certificate**

```

{
  "name": "<name-of-ldap-policy>",
  "schema": {
    "selection": "ad",
    "membership_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "nested_groups": false
    },
    "memberof_check": {
      "enabled": true,
      "memberof_user_attribute": "<memberOf>"
    },
    "user_dn_in_groups": [
      {
        "object_class": "<groupOfNames>",
        "attribute": "<member>"
      },
    ],
  },
}

```

```

    {
      "object_class": "<groupOfUniqueNames>",
      "attribute": "<uniqueMember>"
    }
  ],
},
"servers": [
  {
    "host": {
      "selection": "ip",
      "value": "<server-ip>"
    },
    "port": <server-port>
  }
],
"user_base_dn": "<basedn>",
"group_base_dn": "<basedn>",
"bind_dn": "<binddn>",
"bind_password": "<key-of-password>",
"encryption": {
  "client_authentication": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509_identity": "<key-of-cert>"
  },
  "selection": "starttls",
  "server_certificate_check": {
    "enabled": true,
    "server_certificate_ca": "<ca-cert>"
  }
},
"publickey_attribute": "<sshPublicKey>",
"generated_publickey_attribute": null
}

```

## CA certificates

CA certificates must not contain any metadata. SPS uses only the key part of the certificate.

To use a certificate with the SPS API, remove all metadata, and substitute line breaks with `\n`.

The following is an example certificate, as used on the SPS web interface:

```

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDnDCCAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC
Q0ExEDA0BgNVBAgTB09udGFyaW8xEDA0BgNVBAcTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDA0BgNVBAoT
B0JhbGFiaXQxYjAUBgNVBA5TDURvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDA0BgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi
aXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxhYm10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
MDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRADgYDVQIQIEwdP
bnRhcmlvMRADgYDVQHQHEwdU3JvbnRvMRADgYDVQQKEwdCYWxhYm10MRYwFAYD
VQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aw9uMRADgYDVQQDEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN
AQkBFHfjYXRhaWwAYmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBA0Ga9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUiS
59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kVIv0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRFbQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy
0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh1tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8W1PZc03oV11/Fzo7mt
qYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----

```

The same certificate, as accepted by the SPS API:

```

"certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIDnDCCAoQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC\n
\nQ0ExEDA0BgNVBAgTB09udGFyaW8xEDA0BgNVBAcTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDA0BgNVBAoT\n
\nB0JhbGFiaXQxYjAUBgNVBA5TDURvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDA0BgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi
\naXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxhYm10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
\nMDAyNl0XDTE2MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRADgYDVQIQIEwdP\n
\nbnRhcmlvMRADgYDVQHQHEwdU3JvbnRvMRADgYDVQQKEwdCYWxhYm10MRYwFAYD\n
\nvVQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aw9uMRADgYDVQQDEwdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN\n
\nAQkBFHfjYXRhaWwAYmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC\n
\nAQoCggEBA0Ga9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUiS\n
\n59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw\n
\n0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc\n
\n3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs\n
\nX5kVIv0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRFbQTX\n
\nnhJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA\n
\nR5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP\n
\nAB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy\n
\n0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh1tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB\n
\nuNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc\n
\nN5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8W1PZc03oV11/Fzo7mt\n
\nqYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==\n
\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"

```

## Add an LDAP server

To add an LDAP server, you have to:



1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new LDAP server.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new LDAP server. For example:

```
{
  "key": "f9f9783c-1e28-4ce8-a650-fc4c7311ac52",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/f9f9783c-1e28-4ce8-a650-fc4c7311ac52",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an LDAP server

To modify the configuration of an LDAP server, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the LDAP server.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Signing CA policies

SPS can generate the server-side certificates on the fly. This technique is used for example in SSL-encrypted RDP sessions, RDP sessions that use Network Level Authentication (CredSSP), or SSH connections that use X.509-based authentication.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configured signing Certificate Authorities (CAs).

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing signing CAs.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "991699365727ac4eb4606",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/991699365727ac4eb4606"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/ticketing_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific signing CA, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "ca": {
      "key": "55b2419c-f94f-4836-9c0b-bc3796b6f556",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/x509/55b2419c-f94f-4836-9c0b-bc3796b6f556"
      }
    }
  },
}
```

```

    "name": "API_CA"
  },
  "key": "991699365727ac4eb4606",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/991699365727ac4eb4606",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/991699365727ac4eb4606",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/991699365727ac4eb4606",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the signing CA.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the signing CA.
ca	string	References the identifier of the signing CA's X.509 certificate. You can configure certificates at the <a href="/api/configuration/x509/">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add an X.509 certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
name	string	The name of the signing CA. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.

## Add a signing CA

To add a signing CA, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create a signing CA**

Have the value of the key element of a valid X.509 CA certificate stored on SPS.

3. **Create the JSON object for the new signing CA.**

Use the X.509 certificate's key as the value of the ca element for the signing CA. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas` endpoint. If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new signing CA. For example:

```
{
  "key": "325768b5-5b85-467d-8e30-e2b57d0869c8",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/325768b5-5b85-467d-8e30-e2b57d0869c8",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

#### 4. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

### **Modify a signing CA**

To modify a signing CA, you have to:

#### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

#### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the signing CA.**

Use the X.509 certificate's key as the value of the `ca` element for the signing CA. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint.

#### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

### **Status and error codes**

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
400	Bad Request	The referenced certificate is not a valid CA certificate.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Time policy

The time policy determines the timeframe when the users are permitted to access a particular channel. To list the available Time policies, use the following command.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/time_policies
```

The following sections detail the properties of Time policy objects.

### URL

```
GET https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/<object-id>
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example,

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	user		a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19. <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format).. </div>

## Sample request

The following command lists the properties of a specific Time policy object.

```
curl --cookie cookies -https:<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/time_policies/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received, showing the properties of Content policy objects.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "Fri": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "Mon": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "Sat": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "Sun": [
```

```

    [
      "0:00",
      "23:59"
    ],
    "Thu": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "Tue": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "Wed": [
      [
        "0:00",
        "23:59"
      ]
    ],
    "name": "7x24"
  }

```

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Top level element, the name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
Fri	list	<p>A list of intervals for the day when the users are allowed to access the connection. Use the hh:mm format.</p> <p>If the users are not allowed to access the connection for this day, use an empty list. For example:</p> <pre>"Sat": [],</pre> <p>To allow access for the whole day, use 0:00 for the starting time, and 23:59 for the end. For example:</p> <p>"Wed": [ [ "0:00", "23:59" ] ] You can list multiple intervals for a day, for example:</p> <pre>"Wed": [   [     "8:00",     "18:00"   ] ]</pre>



Element	Type	Description
		<pre>], [     "19:00",     "22:00" ]</pre>
Sat	list	
Sun	list	
Tue	list	
Wed	list	
Thu	list	

## Trusted Certificate Authorities

SPS can check the validity of certificates using the certificates and certificate-revocation lists of trusted certificate authorities (CAs) that issued the certificates.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the trusted CAs.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific CA.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing trusted CAs.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/12269547065727ad6e79d9e"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/time_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific CA, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "authorities": [
      {
        "certificate": "<cert>",
        "crl": "<url-of-revocation-list>"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    "dn_check": {
      "altEmailAddress": "<altEmail>",
      "c": "<country>",
      "cn": "<commonName>",
      "emailAddress": "<email>",
      "l": "<localityName>",
      "o": "<orgName>",
      "ou": "<orgUnitName>",
      "st": "<stateOrProvince>"
    },
    "dns_lookup": false,
    "name": "<ca-name>",
    "strict_hostcheck": true
  },
  "key": "12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the CA.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the CA.
authorities	Top level list	Contains the certificates and the Certificate Revocation Lists (CLR) of the trusted CAs.  You can add multiple certificate and CRL pairs.
certificate	string	The certificate of the trusted CA.
crl	string	The URL of the Certificate Revocation List of the CA.

Element	Type	Description
dn_check	Top level item	Certificates are only accepted if their content matches the configured values.
altEmailAddress	string	The certificate is only accepted if its alternative e-mail address matches the value of the altEmailAddress element.
c	string	The certificate is only accepted if its country matches the value of the c element.
cn	string	The certificate is only accepted if its common name matches the value of the cn element.
emailAddress	string	The certificate is only accepted if its e-mail address matches the value of the emailAddress element.
l	string	The certificate is only accepted if its locality matches the value of the l element.
o	string	The certificate is only accepted if its organization name matches value of the o element.
ou	string	The certificate is only accepted if its organization unit name matches value of the ou element.
st	string	The certificate is only accepted if its state or province matches value of the st element.
dns_lookup	boolean	Set to true to use the domain name server set on the /api/-configuration/network/naming endpoint to resolve the hostnames and IP addresses for certificate validation. If you have enabled strict_hostcheck, you probably want to enable this option as well.
name	string	The name of the trusted CA. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.

Element	Type	Description
strict_ hostcheck	boolean	Set to true to configure only accepting certificates where the Common Name of the certificate contains the hostname or the IP address of the host showing the certificate.

## Uploading CA certificates

SPS uses only the key part of the CA certificate.

To use a certificate with the SPS API, remove all data, and substitute line breaks with \n.

The following is an example certificate, as used on the SPS web interface:

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDnDCCAOQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC
Q0ExEDAOBgNVBAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBACTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT
B0JhbGFiaXQxYjAUBGNVBAsTDURvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi
aXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxhYm10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2
MDAyNl0xODTE3MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRADgYDVQQIEWdP
bnRhcmlvMRAwDgYDVQQHEWdUb3JvbnRvMRAwDgYDVQQKEWdCYWxhYm10MRwYFAyD
VQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAwDgYDVQQDEWdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN
AQkBFHfjYXRhaWxAYmFsYWJpdC50dTCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS
59X+20W1aDqVGrDMGPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zktvD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kViV0+Z6bBHfg/7wHwysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfBQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjRxa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy
0jQE+nmoVD31DytIOxCfQvZhl1tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoWS6RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8W1PZc03oV11/Fzo7mt
qYyyD11d890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

The same certificate, as accepted by the SPS API:

```
"certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIDnDCCAOQCCQDc5360b5tPQTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBjzELMAkGA1UEBhMC\nnQ0ExEDAOBgNV
BAGTB09udGFyaW8xEDAOBgNVBACTB1Rvcn9udG8xEDAOBgNVBAoT\nnB0JhbGFiaXQxYjAUBGNVBAsTDU
RvY3VtZW50YXRpb24xEDAOBgNVBAMTB2JhbGFi\nnaXQxIDAeBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWENhdGFpbEBiYWxh
Ym10Lmh1MB4XDTE2MDQyMjE2\nnMDAyNl0xODTE3MDQyMjE2MDAyNl0wY8xCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNBMRADgYDVQQIEWdP
YDVQQHEWdUb3JvbnRvMRAwDgYDVQQKEWdCYWxhYm10MRwYFAyD
VQQLew1Eb2N1bWVudGF0aW9uMRAwDgYDVQQDEWdiYWxhYm10MSAwHgYJKoZIhvcN\nnAQkBFHfjYXRhaWxAYmFsYWJpdC50dTCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC
AQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmV1VdVWEI/Wy7ahTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS
59X+20W1aDqVGrDMGPNhSVpYXUvDUAUOILJW4rAIoxDY6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw
0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2oSobPc
3mV2zktvD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs
X5kViV0+Z6bBHfg/7wHwysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRfBQTX
hJVfUzSUWHVhFQAb4diKU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA
R5DIwOHsEKOgkiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh6El+DFnQPdjRxa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP
AB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy
0jQE+nmoVD31DytIOxCfQvZhl1tcbBE5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7XDB
uNaUoWS6RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc
N5+4ImYnFNxSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8W1PZc03oV11/Fzo7mt
qYyyD11d890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
```

```
YmFsYWJpdC5odTCCASiWdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCC\nAQoCggEBAOGa9I2jmVlVdVWEI/Wy7a
hTeyaIjK52FQUXqxG8ok0SD+nV74ZFUuiS\n59X+20w1aDqVGrDMgPNhSVpYXUvDUAU0ILJW4rAIoxDY
6vDU9/4v9dDiQfEP1auw\n0qNRjPS1MLzjSOQDSKqPkdivkS6HKZeX3+TFq30x0+vIrF9zFfp9T+eDG2
oSobPc\n3mV2zkvtD61CXzbezAVdArDl6WnysRyzxyH8WEhFwZepWxFD9Y5N1dzKody7Hncs\nX5kVIv
0+Z6bBHfg/7wHWysJdwNuLr0ByTOvPM6WdA83k3Fy2gYNk7Rc0BbRFbQTX\nhJVfUzSUWHVhFQtAb4di
KU5voqepfNMCAwEAATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFAAOCAQEA\nR5DIwOHsEKOgKiI3cHC2VMnxP2rRhpTneh
6E1+DFnQPdjrXa+tnqV4TdnNaD+FvP\nAB1kqbmC4hJAsjMLU2b1ne6m+SLmzhRuMxcA6x+fnYvcQT57
IbRdq2E/4oJGeyuy\n0jQE+nmoVD3lDytIOxCfQvZh11tcB5hp5USme4PmNhY6QfUlgjsFjPfoVG7X
DB\nuNaUoW56RvZPmL5IuvF9tqe96ES6DTjC8rBfQYvSoVNjjPnUMx0C8xstRSEG7oJc\nN5+4ImYnFN
xSG20hZpFy00FDf2g7Fx+W50/NtXamUF1Sf8WlPZc03oVl1/Fzo7mt\nnqYyyD1ld890UEYZ+aJQd/A==
\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
```

## Add a trusted CA

To add a trusted CA, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new trusted CA.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new trusted CA. For example:

```
{
  "key": "becc17b1-e876-4443-b22e-a3baf7825e55",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/becc17b1-
e876-4443-b22e-a3baf7825e55",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a trusted CA

To modify a trusted CA, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the trusted CA.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Local user databases

Local User Databases are available for RDP, SSH and Telnet protocols, and can be used to authenticate the clients to credentials that are locally available on SPS. Such credentials include passwords and public keys. Local User Databases are most commonly used in inband gateway authentication scenarios.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists local user databases.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific local user database.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing local user databases.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "8235074425707e306abf39",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/8235074425707e306abf39"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```



```

    }
  },
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific local user database, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "name": "<name-of-the-user-database>",
    "users": [
      {
        "passwords": [
          {
            "key": "ad55822d-fa28-45aa-bca4-220074f770e1",
            "meta": {
              "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/ad55822d-fa28-45aa-bca4-220074f770e1"
            }
          }
        ],
        "public_keys": [
          {
            "selection": "rsa",
            "value": "<public-key>"
          }
        ],
        "username": "<username>"
      }
    ],
    "key": "8235074425707e306abf39",
    "meta": {
      "first": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/8235074425707e306abf39",
      "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/8235074425707e306abf39",
      "last": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/8235074425707e306abf39",
      "next": null,

```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the local user database.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the local user database.
name	string	The name of the local user database. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
users	Top level list	Contains the credentials (password, key) of each configured user.
passwords	Top level item	References the password of the user. You can configure passwords at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint. To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
public_keys	Top level list	Contains the public keys of the user.
username	Top level list, string	Name of the user.

Elements of public_keys	Type	Description
selection	string	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>rsa The value element contains an RSA key.</li> <li>dss The value element contains a DSS key.</li> </ul>
value	string	The public key.

## Examples:

Configure password authentication only for test\_user. (New passwords can only be provided using the web interface of SPS.)

```
{
  "name": "<name-of-the-user-database>",
  "users": [
    {
      "certificates": [],
      "passwords": [
        "ad55822d-fa28-45aa-bca4-220074f770e1"
      ],
      "public_keys": [],
      "username": "test_user"
    }
  ]
}
```

Configure two possible X.509 certificates for test\_user, and no other authentication options.

```
{
  "name": "<name-of-the-user-database>",
  "users": [
    {
      "certificates": [
        "<cert1>",
        "<cert2>"
      ],
      "passwords": [],
      "public_keys": [],
      "username": "test_user"
    }
  ]
}
```

## Add a local user database

To add a local user database, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object for the new local user database.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new local user database. For example:

```
{
  "key": "c4e60325-971a-44bc-ac01-e353dc6320d6",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/c4e60325-971a-44bc-ac01-e353dc6320d6",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a local user database

To modify a local user database, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the local user database.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## User lists

User lists are local white- or blacklists of usernames that allow fine-control over who can access a connection or a channel.

**NOTE:** User lists on SPS cannot prevent a user from accessing the server from a local terminal.

You can use user lists when configuring `gateway_groups` or `remote_groups` in the `allowed_` for element of channel policies. For more information on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#) on page 354.

To use this option, you must also configure web gateway authentication in the connection policy, or client-side gateway authentication back-end in the authentication policy.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/userlists
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the user lists created on SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/userlists
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific list.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/userlists/<key-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when retrieving the user lists.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

The keys with negative ID values are the default user lists of SPS.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/user_databases",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-1",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

{
  "key": "-2",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-2"
  }
},
{
  "key": "-3",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-3"
  }
},
{
  "key": "-4",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-4"
  }
},
{
  "key": "20088200245706af301b1ba",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/20088200245706af301b1ba"
  }
}
]
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific user list, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "allow": "no_user",
    "except": [
      "root"
    ],
    "name": "root_only"
  },
  "key": "-4",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-4"
  }
},
{
  "key": "-4",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-1",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-4",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/20088200245706af301b1ba",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/20088200245706af301b1ba",
  }
}

```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/-3",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the user list
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the user policy.
allow	string	The default policy of the user list. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>all_users creates a blacklist, where every user is permitted, except the ones listed in the except field.</li> <li>no_user creates a whitelist, where only the users listed in the except field are allowed access.</li> </ul>
name	string	The name of the user list.
except	list	The usernames added to the list.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.



## Examples

The following defines a blacklist called `no_root` that permits every username except root.

```
{
  "allow": "all_users",
  "except": [
    "root"
  ],
  "name": "no_root"
}
```

The following defines a whitelist called `my_list` that permits only the `permitted_user1` and `permitted_user2` usernames.

```
{
  "allow": "no_user",
  "except": [
    "permitted_user1",
    "permitted_user2"
  ],
  "name": "no_root"
}
```

## Add a user list

To add a user list, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new user list.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/userlists` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new user list. For example:

```
{
  "key": "321314dc-eca0-4e97-b445-0612fedc0165",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists/321314dc-eca0-4e97-
```

```
b445-0612fedc0165",  
  "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists",  
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"  
}  
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Modify a user list**

To modify a user list, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the user list.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/userlists/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## HTTP connections

### HTTP connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of HTTP connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for HTTP connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "authentication_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/connections"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/options"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "settings_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/http",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ica",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/datetime",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Item	Description
<a href="#">authentication_policies</a>	List of the default and custom authentication policies.
<a href="#">channel_policies</a>	List of the default and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of the HTTP connection policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global HTTP options that affect all connections.
<a href="#">settings_policies</a>	List of protocol-level settings (idle and session timeout). You can create multiple variations, and choose the appropriate one for each connection policy.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# HTTP connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/connections/
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists HTTP connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/connections/<connection-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying an HTTP connection policy with proxy connection.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "key": "http-connection-simple-proxy",
  "body": {
    {
      "name": "http_proxy",
      "active": true,
      "network": {
        "clients": ["0.0.0.0/0"],
        "targets": ["0.0.0.0/0"],
        "ports": [3128]
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

"server_address": {
  "selection": "inband",
  "dns_server": null,
  "dns_suffixes": [],
  "exception_domains": [],
  "domains": [
    {
      "domain": {
        "selection": "domain",
        "value": "*"
      },
      "port": 80
    }
  ]
},
"source_address": {
  "selection": "box_address"
},
"web_proxy": {
  "enabled": true,
  "transport_security": {
    "selection": "disabled"
  }
},
"transport_security": {
  "selection": "disabled"
},
"access_control": [],
"indexing": {
  "enabled": true,
  "policy": {
    "key": "-50000",
    "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000" }
  },
  "priority": 3
},
"rate_limit": {
  "enabled": false
},
"log_audit_trail_downloads": true,
"channel_database_cleanup": {
  "enabled": false
},
"policies": {
  "channel_policy": {
    "key": "-304001002",
    "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies/-304001002"
  }
}

```

```

    },
    "settings": {
      "key": "-3040010",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/-3040010" }
    },
    "audit_policy": {
      "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d" }
    },
    "ldap_server": null,
    "backup_policy": null,
    "authentication_policy": {
      "key": "-304002001",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/-
304002001" }
    },
    "usermapping_policy": null,
    "archive_cleanup_policy": null,
    "analytics_policy": null
  }
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the connection policy.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the connection policy.
name	string	The name of the connection policy
active	boolean	Set to false to suspend the connection policy. Connection settings are preserved.
network	Top level element	
clients	list, string	List of client ("from") IP addresses.
ports	list, integers	List of target ports.
targets	list,	List of target IP addresses.



Element	Type	Description
	string	
<a href="#">server_address</a>	Top level item	Defines the address where the clients connect to.
<a href="#">source_address</a>	Top level element	Allows you to configure Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) on the server side of SPS. SNAT determines the IP address SPS uses in the server-side connection. The target server will see the connection coming from this address.
<a href="#">selection</a>	string	<p>Configures Source Network Address Translation. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">box_address</a> Default. Uses the network address of the logical interface of SPS.</li> <li><a href="#">original</a> Uses the IP address of the client, as seen by SPS.</li> <li><a href="#">fix</a> Uses a fixed address when connecting to the remote server. Must be used with the <a href="#">address</a> element.</li> </ul>
<a href="#">address</a>	string	<p>Must be used if the value of the <a href="#">selection</a> element is set to <a href="#">fix</a>.</p> <p>The IP address to use as the source address in server-side connections.</p>
<a href="#">web_proxy</a>	Top level element	This will allow the clients to use SPS as an HTTP web proxy.
<a href="#">enabled</a>	boolean	When set to true This will allow the clients to use SPS as an HTTP web proxy.
<a href="#">transport_security</a>	Top level element	Configures the transport security (TLS) of the web proxy connection, between the client and SPS. Note that this setting requires a compatible client application

Element	Type	Description
		that is capable of using TLS-secured web proxy connections.
<code>transport_security</code>	Top level element	Configures the end-to-end encryption used in the sessions.
<code>access_control</code>	Top level list	Collection of access policies. Access policies define who can authorize and audit a connection.
<code>indexing</code>	Top level item	Configures indexing for the connection policy.
<code>enabled</code>	boolean	Set to true to enable indexing the connections.
<code>policy</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the indexing policy. You can configure indexing policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/indexing/">/api/configuration/policies/indexing/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an indexing policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>policy</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>priority</code>	int	<p>Specifies the indexing priority for the connection. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 Very low priority.</li> <li>• 4 Low priority.</li> <li>• 3 Normal (default) priority.</li> <li>• 2 High priority.</li> <li>• 1 Very high priority.</li> <li>• 0 Near real-time priority.</li> </ul>

Element		Type	Description
rate_limit		Top level element	Connection rate limit.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to provide a connection rate limit.
	value	int	The number of connections (per minute) that are allowed in the connection policy.
log_audit_trail_downloads		boolean	Set to true to log audit trail downloads.
channel_database_cleanup		Top level item	Configures cleanup of the connection metadata on the connection policy's level.
	days	int	Retention time, in days. Must not exceed the retention time of the archive_cleanup_policy, and the retention time configured in the global settings of the protocol.  The global settings of the HTTP protocol are available at the <code>api/configuration/http/options</code> endpoint.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable periodical cleanup of the connection metadata.
override_log_level		Top level item	Specifies the verbosity level of sessions handled by this connection policy. The log level of other connection policies is not affected. If disabled, the log level set at the <code>/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/options</code> endpoint is used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default log level, disable this option: <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": false },</pre> </li> <li>To use a custom log level for the connection policy, enable this</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>option and set the log level to use:</p> <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": true,   "log_level": 5 },</pre>
policies	Top level item	List of policies referenced by the connection policy.
channel_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the channel policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the channel_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure HTTP channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/http/channel_policies/">/api/configuration/http/channel_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
settings	string	<p>References the identifier of the settings policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a settings policy for this protocol, use the value of the returned key as the value of the settings element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure HTTP settings policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/">/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
audit_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the audit policy. You can configure audit policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an audit policy, use the</p>

Element	Type	Description
		value of the returned key as the value of the audit_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
ldap_server	string	<p>References the identifier of the LDAP server. You can configure LDAP servers at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an LDAP server, use the value of the returned key as the value of the ldap_server element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
backup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the backup policy. You can configure backup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a backup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the backup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
authentication_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the authentication policy. You can configure authentication policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/">/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an authentication policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the authentication_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
usermapping_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of a Usermapping Policy. You can configure Usermapping Policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a Usermapping Policy, use the value of the returned key as the</p>

Element	Type	Description
		value of the <code>usermapping_policies</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
<code>archive_cleanup_policy</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the archive/cleanup policy. You can configure archive and cleanup policies at the <code>/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/</code> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an archive/cleanup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>archive_cleanup_policy</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>analytics_policy</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the analytics policy. You can configure analytics policies at the <code>/api/configuration/analytics/</code> endpoint.</p> <p>To add or modify an analytics policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>analytics</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>

Elements of <code>server_address</code>	Type	Description
<code>custom_dns</code>	string	<p>Configures a DNS server that is used to reverse-resolve the hostname if the Channel Policy contains the address of the target as a hostname instead of an IP address. By default, this is disabled and SPS uses the DNS server set in the <code>/api/configuration/network/dns</code> endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default DNS, disable this option:</li> </ul> <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": false   },   ... </pre>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<pre>},</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use a custom DNS, enable this option and set the IP address of the domain name server to use:</li> </ul> <pre>"server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": true,     "server":       "192.168.1.1"   },   ... },</pre>
selection	string	<p>Configures the address where the clients connect to. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>original Connect to the same address specified by the client.</li> <li>nat Perform a network address translation on the target address. Must be used with the network element.</li> <li>fix Must be used with the address and port elements.</li> <li>inband Extract the address of the server from the username. Must be used with the domains element. Optional elements: exception_domains, dns_server, and dns_suffixes.</li> </ul>
dns_server	string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>IP address or the hostname of the</p>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		domain name server used to resolve the address of the target server.
dns_ suffixes	list, string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>If the clients do not include the domain name when addressing the server (for example they use username@server instead of username@server.example.com), SPS can automatically add domain information (for example example.com).</p> <p>You can add multiple domain names. SPS attempts to resolve the target address by appending the domain names in the provided order, and uses the first successfully resolved address to establish the connection.</p>
domains	Top level list	Must be used if selection is set to inband.
domain	Top level item	Lists the address ranges that are included in the connection policy.
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the target address range is provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the target address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the target address is a domain.</li> </ul>
value	string	<p>The address range of the target server (s).</p> <p>Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>
port	int	The port of the target server(s).
exception_ domains	Top	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.



Elements of server_address	Type	Description
	level list	Lists the address ranges that are excluded from the connection policy.
domain	Top level item	Contains the excluded address range.
selection	string	Specifies if the excluded address(es) are provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address <p>The value of the excluded address is an IP range.</p> </li> <li>domain <p>The value of the excluded address is a domain.</p> </li> </ul>
value	string	The excluded address(es). Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.
port	int	The excluded port.

Elements of web_proxy.transport_security	Type	Description
selection	string	Configures the encryption used in the sessions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled: Use unencrypted web proxy connection between the HTTP client and . <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection":   "disabled" },</pre> </li> <li>tls: Enables TLS-encryption. <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection": "tls" }</pre> </li> </ul>

Elements of web_ proxy.transport_security	Type	Description
--	------	-------------

host_ certification_ method	JSON object	
-----------------------------------	-------------	--

Selects the certificate to show to the peers. You have the following options:

- **Use the same certificate for each connection:**

Select this option if you want to use the same certificate for each connection. Note that you must reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see [Certificates stored on SPS](#) on page 287.

```
"host_certification_
method": {
  "selection": "fix",
  "x509_identity":
    "893b7eb7-8c6f-403a-
ba3a-1d09dc4b4c7a"
}
```

- **Generate a certificate for the target requested by the client:**

Select this option if you want to generate a certificate for the target requested by the client. Note that you must reference a Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see [Signing CA policies](#) on page 406.

## Elements of web\_ proxy.transport\_security

### Type Description

```
"host_certification_
method": {
  "selection":
"generate",
  "signing_ca":
"1904188625a843f11d30a-
5"
},
```

selection

string

Possible values:

- fix: if you want to use the same certificate for every peer.
- generate: if you want to generate a certificate for the target requested by the client.

x509\_  
identity

string

Reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see [Certificates stored on SPS](#) on page 287.

signing\_  
ca

string

Reference the Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see [Signing CA policies](#) on page 406.

## Elements of body.transport\_security

### Type Description

selection

string

Configures the encryption used in the sessions.

- disabled: Use unencrypted connection between the HTTP client and server.

```
"transport_security": {
  "selection":
"disabled"
},
```

- client-only: Enables half-

Elements of	Type	Description
body.transport_security		<p>sided TLS encryption. Require HTTPS on client side, and HTTP on server side.</p> <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection":     "client-only" }</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>client-server: Enables end-to-end TLS-encryption. To allow unencrypted HTTP requests in addition to HTTPS requests, set allow_non_encrypted to true.</li> </ul> <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection":     "client-server",   "allow_non_ encrypted": true   "server_ certificate_check": {} }</pre>
allow_non_ encrypted	boolean	<p>Only if selection is set to client_server. To allow unencrypted HTTP requests in addition to HTTPS requests, set allow_non_encrypted to true.</p>
server_ certificate_ check	Top level item	<p>By default, SPS accepts any certificate shown by the server.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {   "enabled": false },</pre> <p>To verify the certificate of the destination server, configure and reference a <a href="#">Trusted CA list</a>.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {</pre>

Elements of body.transport_security	Type	Description
		<pre>"enabled": true, "trusted_ca": "9106862955a844051d7bf6" },</pre>
enabled	boolean	To verify the certificate of the destination server, set to true. In this case, you will also have to reference a trusted_ca.
trusted_ca	string	Reference a <a href="#">Trusted CA list</a> .
host_certification_method	JSON object	<p>Selects the certificate to show to the peers. You have the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Use the same certificate for each connection:</b></li> </ul> <p>Select this option if you want to use the same certificate for each connection. Note that you must reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.</p> <pre>"host_certification_ method": {   "selection": "fix",   "x509_identity": "893b7eb7-8c6f-403a- ba3a-1d09dc4b4c7a" }</pre>

Elements of body.transport_security	Type	Description
--	------	-------------

- **Generate a certificate for the target requested by the client:**

Select this option if you want to generate a certificate for the target requested by the client. Note that you must reference a Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see [Signing CA policies](#) on page 406.

```
"host_certification_
method": {
  "selection":
    "generate",
  "signing_ca":
    "1904188625a843f11d30a-
5"
},
```

selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fix: if you want to use the same certificate for every peer.</li> <li>• generate: if you want to generate a certificate for the target requested by the client.</li> </ul>
x509_identity	string	Reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.
signing_ca	string	Reference the Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Signing CA policies</a> on page 406.

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
authorizer	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) who can authorize or audit the connection.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
permission	string	<p>Defines the permissions of the authorizer usergroup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>audit <p>The usergroup with the audit permission can monitor ongoing connections, and download the audit trails of a closed and indexed connection.</p> </li> <li>authorize <p>The usergroup with the authorize permission can authorize connection requests.</p> </li> <li>audit_and_authorize <p>The usergroup with the audit_and_authorize permission can authorize connection requests, monitor connections, and download the audit trail of closed and indexed connections.</p> </li> </ul>
require_different_ip	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different IP addresses.
require_different_username	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different usernames.
subject	Top level item	Defines the subjects of the access control policy.
group	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) that is subject to the access control policy.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>everybody</li> </ul>

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
		<p>Every user is subject to the access control policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only</li> </ul> <p>Requires the group element.</p> <p>Members of the usergroup specified in the group element are subject to the access control policy.</p>

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## HTTP channels

The available HTTP channel types and their functionalities are described below. For details on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#).

Channel	Special options	Description
http	No	<b>http:</b> Enables access to the server. This channel must be enabled for HTTP connections to work.
websocket	No	<p><b>websocket:</b> Enables all WebSocket traffic. If the WebSocket channel type is not allowed, HTTP requests trying the WebSocket upgrade are rejected.</p> <p><i>WebSocket/VNC audit trails:</i> You can replay audit trails of a WebSocket connection in your browser or using the Safeguard Desktop Player application only if it contains Virtual Network Computing (VNC) traffic. For all other WebSocket connections, export the audit trail as a PCAP file and replay it using the Safeguard Desktop Player application.</p>



# HTTP authentication policies

Lists the configured authentication methods that can be used in a connection. Each connection policy uses an authentication policy to determine how the client can authenticate to SPS.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists HTTP authentication policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing HTTP authentication policies. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-200",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/-200"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "-304002001",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/-304002001" }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/http",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "key": "http-auth-pol-4",
  "body": {
    "name": "http_radius",
    "gateway_authentication": {
      "selection": "radius",
      "servers": [
        {
          "address": {
            "selection": "ip",
            "value": "1.2.3.4"
          },
          "port": 1812,
          "shared_secret": {
            "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
            "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/passwords#XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX" }
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

```

    ],
    "authentication_protocol": "pap",
    "timeout": 3600,
    "keepalive": true
  }
}

```

```

}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element	Contains the elements of the policy.
name	string	The name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
gateway_authentication	Top level item	Client-side gateway authentication settings. The value of selection defines which authentication method is used.
selection	string	<p>Defines the authentication method for client-side gateway authentication. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none Disables client-side gateway authentication.</li> <li>• ldap Uses the LDAP server selected for the connection policy. LDAP servers can be configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers</code> endpoint).</li> <li>• local Uses the local user database configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</code> endpoint. To use this option, you must</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>also configure the user_database element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>radius</li> </ul> <p>Uses one or more Radius servers for authentication.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the authentication_protocol and servers elements.</p>
servers	Top level list	<p>Only if selection is set to radius</p> <p>Defines the properties of the RADIUS servers used for client-side authentication.</p> <p>A valid list item consists of the address, port and shared_secret elements.</p>
authentication_protocol	Top level item	<p>Only if selection is set to radius</p> <p>RADIUS setting. Set to pap to use the Password Authentication Protocol. To use the Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol, set it to chap.</p>
user_database	string	<p>Only if selection is set to local</p> <p>References the key of the local user database. You can configure local user databases at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/">/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a local user database, use the value of the returned key as the value of the user_database element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
timeout	integer (seconds)	Specify the time remaining until a successful gateway authentication times out.
keepalive	boolean	Set to true to avoid interruptions for active HTTP sessions. Active HTTP sessions can extend the gateway authentication beyond the configured timeout.

Elements of servers	Type	Description
address	Top level element	Defines the address of a RADIUS server.
selection	string	<p>Required child of the address element. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ip The value element contains the IP of the RADIUS server.</li> <li>fqdn The value element contains the FQDN of the RADIUS server.</li> </ul>
value	string	The IP or the FQDN address of the RADIUS server.
port	int	The port number of the RADIUS server.
shared_secret	string	<p>References the key of the shared secret for the RADIUS server. You can configure shared secrets at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a shared secret, use the value of the returned key as the value of the shared_secret element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>Alternatively, you can include the new password as plain text.</p> <pre>"shared_secret": {   "plain": "&lt;new-password&gt;" }</pre>

## Examples:

Querying base authentication policy without gateway authentication:

```
{
  "key": "-304002001",
  "body": {
    "name": "base",
    "gateway_authentication": {
      "selection": "none"
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with LDAP backend:

```
{
  "key": "http-auth-pol-2",
  "body": {
    "name": "http_ldap",
    "gateway_authentication": {
      "selection": "ldap",
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with local backend:

```
{
  "key": "http-auth-pol-3",
  "body": {
    "name": "http_local",
    "gateway_authentication": {
      "selection": "local",
      "user_database": {
        "key": "local-user-database-1",
        "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_
databases/local-user-database-1" }
      },
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with RADIUS backend:

```
{
  "key": "http-auth-pol-4",
  "body": {
    "name": "http_radius",
    "gateway_authentication": {
      "selection": "radius",
      "servers": [
        {
          "address": {
            "selection": "ip",
            "value": "1.2.3.4"
          },
          "port": 1812,
          "shared_secret": {
            "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
            "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/passwords#XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-"

```

```

XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX" }
    }
  },
  "authentication_protocol": "pap",
  "timeout": 3600,
  "keepalive": true
}
}
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add an HTTP authentication policy

To add an HTTP authentication policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "6f924f39-e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/6f924f39-
e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Modify an HTTP authentication policy**

To modify an HTTP authentication policy, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/authentication_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# **Global HTTP options**

List of options that affect all HTTP connections.

## **URL**

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/options
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists global HTTP options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global HTTP options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
```

```

"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies",
  "href": "/api/configuration/http/options",
  "last": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
  "next": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/http",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global HTTP options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable HTTP connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable HTTP connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of HTTP connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for HTTP connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Only if enabled is set to true. Global retention time for the metadata of HTTP connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for HTTP connections, and the

Elements of audit	Type	Description
		connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
	enabled	boolean To enable the global cleanup of HTTP connection metadata, set this element to true.
timestamping		Top level item Global timestamping settings for HTTP connections.
	selection	string Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set local to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set remote to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
	server_url	string Required for remote timestamping. The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
	oid	Top level item The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
	enabled	boolean Required for remote timestamping. Set to true to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
	policy_oid	string Required if the oid is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
	signing_interval	int Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

## Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",

```

```

        "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
        "signing_interval": 30
    }
},
"service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
}
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": true,
        "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

## Modify global HTTP settings

To modify global HTTP settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global HTTP settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description

of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## HTTP settings policies

HTTP settings policies define protocol-level settings for idle and session timeout. You can create multiple policies, and choose the appropriate one for each HTTP connection.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/settings_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
	token of the user		<p>response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists HTTP settings policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/settings_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing HTTP settings policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-3040010",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/-3040010"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/http/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
    "next": null,
  }
}
```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/http",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/http/options",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "client_tls_security_settings": {
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      },
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2"
    },
    "name": "default",
    "server_tls_security_settings": {
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      },
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2"
    },
    "session_timeout": 900,
    "timeout": 300
    "webapp_session_cookies": [
      "PHPSESSID",
      "JSESSIONID",
      "ASP.NET_SessionId"
    ]
  },
  "key": "-3040010",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "last": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the default settings policy with a built-in HTTP proxy error template, the response is the following.



```
{
  "key": "-3040010",
  "body": {
    "name": "default",
    "timeout": 300,
    "session_timeout": 900,
    "webapp_session_cookies": [],
    "client_tls_security_settings": {
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2",
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      }
    },
    "server_tls_security_settings": {
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2",
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      }
    },
    "error_template": {
      "selection": "builtin"
    }
  }
}
```

When you create a new settings policy with a custom error template, the response is the following.

```
{
  "name": "custom_http_settings_policy",
  "timeout": 400,
  "session_timeout": 1000,
  "webapp_session_cookies": [
    "PHPSESSID",
    "JSESSIONID",
    "ASP.NET_SessionId"
  ],
  "client_tls_security_settings": {
    "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2",
    "cipher_strength": {
      "selection": "recommended"
    }
  },
  "server_tls_security_settings": {
    "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2",
    "cipher_strength": {
      "selection": "recommended"
    }
  },
}
```

```

    "error_template": {
      "selection": "custom",
      "reference": "123456789"
    }
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the HTTP settings policy.
<a href="#">client_tls_security_settings</a>	JSON object	Configures TLS security settings on the client side.
name	string	Name of the HTTP settings policy. Cannot contain whitespace.
<a href="#">server_tls_security_settings</a>	JSON object	Configures TLS security settings on the server side.
session_timeout	int	Session timeout, in seconds.
timeout	int	Idle timeout, in seconds. Note that the SPS web UI displays the same value in seconds.
webapp_session_cookies	list (string)	<p>To distinguish the audited HTTP requests and responses based on the session cookies of web applications, enter the name of the session cookie, for example, PHPSESSID, JSESSIONID, or ASP.NET_SessionId. Note that the names of session cookies are case sensitive.</p> <p>Note that this is a priority list. If there are multiple cookie names, SPS will use the first one from this list it finds in the request headers to assign the requests to a session.</p>
error_template	object	
error_template.selection	enum	The type of the error template. Possible values: builtin, custom
error_template.reference	number	The identifier of the error template.

Elements of client_ tls_security_settings and server_tls_ security_settings	Type	Description
cipher_ strength	JSON object	Specifies the cipher string OpenSSL will use.
custom_ cipher	string	The list of ciphers you want to permit SPS to use in the connection. For more details on customizing this list, check the 'openssl-ciphers' manual page on your SPS appliance.
selection	string	<p>Specifies the cipher string OpenSSL will use. The following settings options are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>recommended: this setting only uses ciphers with adequate security level.</li> <li>custom: this setting allows you to specify the list of ciphers you want to permit SPS to use in the connection. This setting is only recommended to ensure compatibility with older systems. For more details on customizing this list, check the 'openssl-ciphers' manual page on your SPS appliance.</li> </ul> <p>For example: ALL : !aNULL :@STRENGTH</p>
minimum_ tls_ version	string	<p>Specifies the minimal TLS version SPS will offer during negotiation. The following settings options are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TLSv1_2: this setting only offers TLS version 1.2 during the negotiation. This is the recommended setting.</li> <li>TLSv1_1: this setting offers TLS version 1.1 and later versions during the negotiation.</li> <li>TLSv1_0: this setting offers TLS version 1.0 and later versions during the negotiation.</li> </ul>

## Add HTTP settings policies

To add a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object for the new policy.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "3848c708-2e1d-4463-b232-0c8c5875ff55",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/3848c708-2e1d-4463-b232-0c8c5875ff55",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/http/settings_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify HTTP settings policies

To modify a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/settings_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Creating custom HTTP error templates

Configure HTTP error templates to create custom error pages when HTTP proxy errors occur.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/error_templates
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Operations

Operations with the `/http/error_templates` endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Querying existing error templates	GET	<code>/api/configuration/http/error_templates</code>	
Creating a new error template with a custom logo	POST	<code>/api/configuration/http/error_templates</code>	
Updating an existing error template	PUT	<code>/api/configuration/http/error_templates/&lt;key&gt;</code>	
Querying error templates info	GET	<code>/api/configuration/http/error_templates?info=</code>	
Querying custom error template preview	GET	<code>/api/configuration/http/error_templates?preview=&amp;error_type=&lt;type-of-the-error-template&gt;</code>	

## Sample request

The following command lists the available HTTP proxy error templates.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/error_templates
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when available HTTP proxy error templates are queried.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "name": "Template_with_logo",
  "color": "#123456",
  "logo": "<'logo_id' from the response of the first creation>",
  "brand_name": "Noname brand",
  "md_contents": {
    "auth": "Custom auth failed markdown content.",
    "badcontent": "Custom bad content error markdown content.",
    "clientsyntax": "Custom client syntax error markdown content.",
    "clienttimeout": "Custom client timeout error markdown content.",
    "connecterror": "Custom connection error markdown content.",
    "ftpperror": "Custom FTP error markdown content.",
  }
}
```

```

    "internal": "Custom internal error markdown content.",
    "invalidurl": "Custom invalid URL markdown content.",
    "ioerror": "Custom I/O error markdown content.",
    "policysyntax": "Custom policy syntax error markdown content.",
    "policyviolation": "Custom policy violation error markdown content.",
    "redirect": "Custom redirect markdown content.",
    "serversyntax": "Custom server syntax error markdown content.",
    "servertimeout": "Custom server timeout error markdown content."
  }
}

```

The following is a sample response received when HTTP proxy error template information is queried with `/api/configuration/http/error_templates?info=`.

```

{
  "error_type_names": {
    "auth": "Authentication Failed",
    "badcontent": "Bad Content",
    "clientsyntax": "Client Syntax",
    "clienttimeout": "Client Timeout",
    "connecterror": "Connection Error",
    "ftperror": "FTP Error",
    "internal": "Internal Error",
    "invalidurl": "Invalid URL",
    "ioerror": "I/O Error",
    "policysyntax": "Policy Syntax",
    "policyviolation": "Policy Violation",
    "redirect": "Redirect",
    "serversyntax": "Server Syntax",
    "servertimeout": "Server Timeout"
  }
}

```

Elements of the response message include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
name	string	The name of the template.	
color	number	The color of the brand and links appearing in the error template.	The value is given in hex color code.
logo	string? union?	The identifier of the logo.	The value of the logo can be 'null'.
brand_name	string	The name of the brand.	

Element	Type	Description	Notes
md_contents	object	Contains a list of error templates written in Markdown.	
md_contents.auth	string	The content of the <b>Authentication failed</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.badcontent	string	The content of the <b>Bad content</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.clientsyntax	string	The content of the <b>Client syntax</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.clienttimeout	string	The content of the <b>Client timeout</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.connecterror	string	The content of the <b>Connect error</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.ftperror	string	The content of the <b>FTP error</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.internal	string	The content of the <b>Internal error</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.invalidurl	string	The content of the <b>Invalid URL</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.ioerror	string	The content of the <b>IO error</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.policysyntax	string	The content of the <b>Policy syntax</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.policyviolation	string	The content of the <b>Policy violation</b> error template in Markdown.	
md_contents.redirect	string	The content of the <b>Redirect error</b> template in Markdown.	
md_contents.serversyntax	string	The content of the <b>Server syntax</b> error template in Markdown.	



Element	Type	Description	Notes
md_contents.servvertimeout	string	The content of the <b>Server timeout</b> error template in Markdown.	

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#).

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	NotSupportedProxyErrorType	Preview could not be created. The used error type is not supported. Use an error type from the following list: <b>Authentication failed, Bad content, Client syntax, Client timeout, Connect error, FTP error, Internal, Invalid URL, IO error, Policy syntax, Policy violation, Redirect, Server syntax, Server timeout.</b>

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

# Uploading a custom logo to your custom HTTP proxy error pages

Upload a custom logo to your custom HTTP proxy error pages.

Supported formats: PNG, JPEG, GIF.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/proxy_error_logo
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Operations

Operations with the /http/proxy\_error\_logo endpoint include:

Operation	HTTP method	URL	Notes
Uploading a custom logo	POST	/api/upload/http/proxy_error_logo	If you upload an oversized logo, for example 800x800 pixels, your image will be automatically resized to 128x128 pixels, keeping the original aspect ratio.

**NOTE:** GET / PUT / DELETE methods are not allowed on logo upload.

## Sample request

The following command uploads a custom logo.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/http/proxy_error_logo
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when the custom logo has been uploaded. The response of the creation without the unique ID is the following.

```
{
  "logo_id": "rest_XXXXXXX",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/upload/http/proxy_error_logo",
    "parent": "/api/upload/http"
  }
}
```

The response of the query without a unique logo ID is the following.

```
{
  "changes": [
    {
      "new_value": "rest_XXXXXXX",
      "path": "/api/upload/http/proxy_error_logo",
      "type": "creation"
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/transaction/changes",
    "parent": "/api/transaction",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

Elements of the response message include:

Element	Type	Description	Notes
logo_id	string	The identifier of the custom logo.	
supported_formats	enum	The supported image formats.	Possible values: PNG, JPEG, GIF.
actual_resolution	number	The actual resolution of the uploaded custom logo.	
max_resolution	number	The maximal resolution of the uploaded custom logo.	The maximum accepted size is 4096x4096 pixels.
file_size	number	The actual size of the file.	
file_limit	number	The maximum size of the file.	The file size limit is 16 megabyte.

## HTTP response codes

HTTP response codes comprise of standard or endpoint-specific HTTP status and error codes. The following table lists the endpoint-specific HTTP response codes for this request.

HTTP response code	Status/Error	Description
400	ResolutionTooLarge	The logo you uploaded (5200x5200 pixels) is larger than the maximum accepted size (4096x4096 pixels). Upload a logo that is not larger than 4096x4096 pixels.
413	FileTooLarge	The file in the request exceeds the file size limitation.
415	InvalidImageFormat	The file format of the uploaded logo is not supported. Make sure that you upload a logo in one of our supported file formats (PNG, JPEG, GIF).

For more information and a complete list of standard HTTP response codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

## Citrix ICA connections

### ICA connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of ICA connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for ICA connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica/connections"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica/options"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "settings_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ica",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/http",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Item	Description
<a href="#">channel_policies</a>	List of the default and custom channel policies.

Item	Description
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of ICA connection policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global ICA options that affect all connections.
<a href="#">settings_policies</a>	List of protocol-level settings (timeout, reliability). You can create multiple variations, and choose the appropriate one for each connection policy.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## ICA connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**The connection policies of this protocol are available in READ-ONLY mode on the REST API. Also, the returned data is incomplete, it does not include any protocol-specific settings, only the parameters that are common to every supported protocol.**

**To modify the connection policies of this protocol, you must use the SPS web interface.**

**Using the REST API, you can modify the connection policies of the RDP and SSH protocols.**

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/connections/
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists ICA connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/connections/<connection-key>
```

# ICA channels

The available ICA channel types and their functionalities are described below. For details on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#).

Channel	Special options	Description
CTXTW	Yes	<b>Drawing (Thinwire):</b> Enables access to the server's desktop



Channel	Special options	Description
		<p>(screen). This channel is for remoting graphics and user input (keyboard, mouse). This channel must be enabled for ICA to work.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>content_policy</b> reference: The ID of the Content policy to apply to the connection.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre> "actions": {   "audit": true,   "four_eyes": true,   "content_policy": {     "key": "433849548566ab327522e6"     "meta": {       "href": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/44287216854f482e7f2b24"     }   }, } </pre>
CTXCAM	None	<b>Audio Mapping:</b> Enable access to the sound device of the server.
CTXCDM	None	<b>Drive Mapping:</b> Enable access to the client's hard drives on the server.
CTXCLIP	None	<b>Clipboard:</b> Enable access to the server's clipboard: the clipboard of the remote desktop can be pasted into local applications (and vice-versa). Note that SPS can audit the clipboard channel, but the Safeguard Desktop Player cannot search or display its contents.
CTXSCRD	None	<b>Smartcard:</b> Enable using client side installed smartcards in server-side applications.
CTXCOM1	None	<b>Printer (COM1):</b> Enable access to the serial port COM1.
CTXCOM2	None	<b>Printer (COM2):</b> Enable access to the serial port COM2.
CTXLPT1	None	<b>Printer (LPT1):</b> Enable access to the parallel port LPT1.
CTXLPT2	None	<b>Printer (LPT2):</b> Enable access to the parallel port LPT2.
CTXCPM	None	<b>Printer Spooler:</b> Enable access to the client's printer from the remote desktops and applications.

Channel	Special options	Description
CTXFLSH	None	<b>HDX Mediastream:</b> Some user widgets (for example Flash player) will not run on the server but on the client. These widgets are controlled from the server side using this channel. This is not supported by Safeguard Desktop Player and it is disabled by default.
CTXUSB	None	<b>USB:</b> Enable using client side installed USB devices in server-side applications.
CTXTWI	None	<b>Seamless:</b> Enable seamless channels that run a single application on the ICA server, instead of accessing the entire desktop. When disabled, the application window will be accessed along with an empty desktop.
SPDBRS	None	<b>Speedbrowse:</b> Speeds up web browsing. Not currently supported by Safeguard Desktop Player, should be disabled by default.
custom	Yes	<p><b>Custom:</b> Applications can open custom channels to the clients connecting remotely to the server. Enabling the <b>Custom</b> channel allows the clients to access all of these custom channels. To permit only specific channels, configure the channels field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>channels: To permit only specific custom channels, configure this field. For example:.</li> </ul> <pre>"channels": {   "selection": "restricted",   "restrictions": [ "CUSTOM1", "CUSTOM2" ] }</pre>

## Global ICA options

List of options that affect all ICA connections.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/options
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists global ICA options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global ICA options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
  "meta": {
```

```

    "first": "/api/configuration/ica/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ica/options",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ica",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ica/channel_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global ICA options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable ICA connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable ICA connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of ICA connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for ICA connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of ICA connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for ICA connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of ICA connection metadata, set this element to true.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for ICA connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set local to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set remote to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
server_url	string	Required for remote timestamping. The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
oid	Top level item	The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
enabled	boolean	Required for remote timestamping. Set to true to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
policy_oid	string	Required if the oid is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
signing_interval	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

## Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
}
```

```

"service": {
  "enabled": true,
  "log_level": 4
}
}

```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": true,
        "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

## Modify global ICA settings

To modify global ICA settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global ICA settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## ICA settings policies

ICA settings policies define protocol-level settings (timeout, reliability). You can create multiple policies, and choose the appropriate one for each ICA connection.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>



## Sample request

The following command lists ICA settings policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing ICA settings policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-301101020",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/-301101020"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ica/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ica",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ica/options",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "default",
    "timeout": 600,
    "inactivity_timeout": {
      "enabled": true
      "value": 13000
    },
    "preconnect_channel_check": false,
  }
}
```

```

    "reliability": {
      "reconnect_attempts": 30,
      "reconnect_sleep": 2,
      "reconnect_timeout": 600
    },
    "timeout": 600
  },
  "key": "-301101020",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/-301101020",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/-301101020",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/-301101020",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the ICA settings policy.
name	string	Name of the ICA settings policy. Cannot contain whitespace.
preconnect_channel_check	boolean	<p>Before establishing the server-side connection, SPS can evaluate the connection and channel policies to determine if the connection might be permitted at all. The server-side connection is established only if the evaluated policies permit the client to access the server.</p> <p>To enable this function, set the parameter to true.</p>
reliability	Top level item	Settings for ICA connection attempts.
timeout	int	Connection timeout, in seconds.
inactivity_timeout	Top level element	

Element		Type	Description
	enabled	boolean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: If no user activity is detected, it terminates the session after the configured time has passed since the last user activity.</li> <li>• false: No user inactivity timeout.</li> </ul>
	value	int	<p>Only if enabled is true</p> <p>The value of user activity timeout. Must be greater than or equal to the value of timeout</p>

Elements of reliability	Type	Description
reconnect_attempts	int	The number of times SPS attempts to connect to the target server.
reconnect_sleep	int	The number of seconds SPS waits between connection attempts.
reconnect_timeout	int	The number of seconds SPS waits after exhausting the number of reconnect_attempts.

## Add ICA settings policies

To add a settings policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [the parameter list table](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "dcd58077-98b3-4c73-8f0b-b34147863028",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/dcd58077-98b3-4c73-
```

```
8f0b-b34147863028",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify ICA settings policies

To modify a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ica/settings_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [the parameter list table](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## MSSQL connections

### Limitations in handling MSSQL connections

The current version of One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) has the following limitations:

- TDS protocol version 7.3 or later is required.
- Due to the TDS protocol version requirement, Microsoft® SQL Server® 2008, or later, is recommended.
- The **Require Gateway Authentication on the SPS Web Interface** option in **MSSQL Control > Connections** does not work in case of MSSQL connections.
- MSSQL server with TCP dynamic port settings is not supported.

You must specify a static TCP port for every instance in the SQL Server Configuration Manager you want to audit. By doing so, you can configure the access to multiple MSSQL instances with multiple connection policies and specify the instances with inband or fixed targets and ports. You can also create and assign different Credential Store policies to check out SQL users' passwords of the instances.

In the MSSQL client program, always specify the address with the port number of the SPS connection policy you want to connect to.

## MSSQL connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of MSSQL connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for MSSQL connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "authentication_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
```

```

        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections"
    }
},
{
    "key": "options",
    "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/options"
    }
},
{
    "key": "settings_policies",
    "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies"
    }
}
],
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/network",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/management",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Item	Description
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of connection policies.
<a href="#">authentication_policies</a>	List of the default and custom authentication policies.
<a href="#">channel_policies</a>	List of the default and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global MSSQL options that affect all connections.
<a href="#">settings_policies</a>	List of protocol-level settings (idle and session timeout). You can create multiple variations, and choose the appropriate one for each connection policy.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## MSSQL connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/connections/
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>



## Sample request

The following command lists MSSQL connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/connections/<connection-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing MSSQL connection policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "19443158785dee0621437ad",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/mssql/connections/19443158785dee0621437ad"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections",
    "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/options",
    "next": "/api/configuration/mssql/options",
    "order": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections/@order",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific MSSQL Connection Policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access_control": [],
    "active": true,
    "channel_database_cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "indexing": {
      "enabled": true,
      "policy": {
        "key": "-50000",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000"
        }
      },
      "priority": 3
    },
    "log_audit_trail_downloads": true,
    "name": "demo_mssql",
    "network": {
      "clients": [
        "0.0.0.0/0"
      ],
      "ports": [
        1433
      ],
      "targets": [
        "192.168.1.1/24"
      ]
    },
    "override_log_level": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "policies": {
      "aa_plugin": null,
      "analytics_policy": {
        "key": "20509709385cd578654cdab",
        "meta": {
          "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/20509709385cd578654cdab"
        }
      },
      "archive_cleanup_policy": null,
      "audit_policy": {
        "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  },
  "authentication_policy": {
    "key": "-30700201",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/-30700201"
    }
  },
  "backup_policy": null,
  "channel_policy": {
    "key": "-30700102",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies/-30700102"
    }
  },
  "credential_store": null,
  "ldap_server": null,
  "settings": {
    "key": "-30700301",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/-30700301"
    }
  },
  "usermapping_policy": null
},
"rate_limit": {
  "enabled": false
},
"server_address": {
  "custom_dns": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "selection": "original"
},
"source_address": {
  "selection": "box_address"
},
"transport_security": {
  "selection": "disabled"
},
"web_gateway_authentication": {
  "enabled": false
}
},
"key": "19443158785dee0621437ad",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections/19443158785dee0621437ad",
  "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections/19443158785dee0621437ad",

```

```

    "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections/19443158785dee0621437ad",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the connection policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the connection policy.
access_control	Top level list	Collection of access policies. Access policies define who can authorize and audit a connection.
active	boolean	Set to false to suspend the connection policy. Connection settings are preserved.
channel_database_cleanup	Top level item	Configures cleanup of the connection metadata on the connection policy's level.
days	int	Retention time, in days. Must not exceed the retention time of the archive_cleanup_policy, and the retention time configured in the global settings of the protocol.  The global settings of the MSSQL protocol are available at the api/configuration/mssql/options endpoint.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable periodical cleanup of the connection metadata.
indexing	Top level item	Configures indexing for the connection policy.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable indexing the connections.

Element		Type	Description
	policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the indexing policy. You can configure indexing policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/indexing/">/api/configuration/policies/indexing/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an indexing policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
	priority	int	<p>Specifies the indexing priority for the connection. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 Very low priority.</li> <li>• 4 Low priority.</li> <li>• 3 Normal (default) priority.</li> <li>• 2 High priority.</li> <li>• 1 Very high priority.</li> <li>• 0 Near real-time priority.</li> </ul>
log_audit_trail_downloads		boolean	Set to true to log audit trail downloads.
name		string	The name of the connection policy.
network			
	clients	list, string	List of client ("from") IP addresses.
	ports	list, integer-s	List of target ports.
	targets	list, string	List of target IP addresses.
override_log_level		Top level	Specifies the verbosity level of sessions

Element	Type	Description
	item	<p>handled by this connection policy. The log level of other connection policies is not affected. If disabled, the log level set at the <code>/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/options</code> endpoint is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default log level, disable this option: <pre> "override_log_level": {   "enabled": false }, </pre> </li> <li>To use a custom log level for the connection policy, enable this option and set the log level to use: <pre> "override_log_level": {   "enabled": true,   "log_level": 5 }, </pre> </li> </ul>
policies	Top level item	List of policies referenced by the connection policy.
aa_plugin	string	<p>References the identifier of the AA plug-in. You can configure AA plug-ins at the <a href="/api/configuration/plugins/aa/">/api/configuration/plugins/aa/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an AA plug-in, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>aa_plugin</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
analytics_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the analytics policy. You can configure analytics policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/analytics/">/api/configuration/analytics/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To add or modify an analytics policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>analytics</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
archive_	string	References the identifier of the

Element	Type	Description
cleanup_policy		<p>archive/cleanup policy. You can configure archive and cleanup policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an archive/cleanup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the archive_cleanup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
audit_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the audit policy. You can configure audit policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an audit policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the audit_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
authentication_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the authentication policy. Note that currently you cannot create or modify MSSQL Authentication Policies using the REST API. Use the web UI instead.</p> <p>To modify or add an authentication policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the authentication_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
backup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the backup policy. You can configure backup policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a backup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the backup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
channel_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the channel policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>channel_policy</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure MSSQL channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies/">/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
<code>credential_store</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the credential store.</p> <p>You can configure credential stores at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/">/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a credential store, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>credential_store</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>ldap_server</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the LDAP server. You can configure LDAP servers at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an LDAP server, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>ldap_server</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>settings</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the settings policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a settings policy for this protocol, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>settings</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>usermapping_policy</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of a Usermapping Policy. You can configure Usermapping Policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a Usermapping Policy,</p>



Element		Type	Description
			use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>usermapping_policies</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
<code>rate_limit</code>		Top level element	Connection rate limit.
	<code>enabled</code>	boolean	Set to true to provide a connection rate limit.
	<code>value</code>	int	The number of connections (per minute) that are allowed in the connection policy.
<code>server_address</code>		Top level item	Defines the address where the clients connect to.
<code>source_address</code>		Top level element	Allows you to configure Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) on the server side of SPS. SNAT determines the IP address SPS uses in the server-side connection. The target server will see the connection coming from this address.
	<code>selection</code>	string	Configures Source Network Address Translation. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>box_address</code> Default. Uses the network address of the logical interface of SPS.</li> <li><code>original</code> Uses the IP address of the client, as seen by SPS.</li> <li><code>fix</code> Uses a fixed address when connecting to the remote server. Must be used with the <code>address</code> element.</li> </ul>
	<code>address</code>	string	Must be used if the value of the <code>selection</code> element is set to <code>fix</code> . The IP address to use as the source address in server-side connections.
<code>transport_</code>		Top	Configures the encryption used in the

Element	Type	Description
security	level element	sessions.
certificate	JSON object	<p>Selects the certificate to show to the peers. You have the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Use the same certificate for each client:</b> <p>Select this option if you want to use the same certificate for every peer. Note that you must reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.</p> <pre>"certificate": {   "selection": "fix",   "x509_identity":     "893b7eb7-8c6f-403a-ba3a-1d09dc4b4c7a" }</pre> </li> <li> <b>Generate a certificate for each client:</b> <p>Select this option if you want to generate a certificate for each client. Note that you must reference a Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Signing CA policies</a> on page 406.</p> <pre>"certificate": {   "selection": "generate",   "signing_ca":     "1904188625a843f11d30a5" },</pre> </li> </ul>
selection	disabled   tls	Configures the encryption used in the sessions.

Element	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled: Disables TLS encryption for MSSQL connections completely.</li> </ul> <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection": "disabled" },</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>tls: Enables TLS-encryption. Note that you must also set the certificate and server_certificate_check options.</li> </ul> <pre>"transport_security": {   "certificate": {     "selection": "generate",     "signing_ca": "19605948865d07511f09eca"   },   "selection": "tls",   "server_certificate_ check": {     "enabled": true,     "trusted_ca": "1241814345d074efd1ded7"   } }</pre>
server_certificate_check	JSON object	<p>By default, SPS accepts any certificate shown by the server.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {   "enabled": false },</pre> <p>To verify the certificate of the destination server, configure and reference a <a href="#">Trusted CA list</a>.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {   "enabled": true,   "trusted_ca": "9106862955a844051d7bf6" },</pre>
web_gateway_	Top	When gateway authentication is required

Element		Type	Description
authentication		level item	for a connection, the user must authenticate on SPS as well. This additional authentication can be performed out-of-band on the SPS web interface for every protocol.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface.
	groups	list, string	By default, any user can perform gateway authentication for the connections. You can restrict authentication to members of specific usergroups. Define the usergroups at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint, and list the name of each group here.
	require_same_ip	boolean	Set to true to only accept web gateway authentication from the same host that initiated the connection.

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
authorizer	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) who can authorize or audit the connection.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
permission	string	<p>Defines the permissions of the authorizer usergroup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>audit <p>The usergroup with the audit permission can monitor ongoing connections, and download the audit trails of a closed and indexed connection.</p> </li> <li>authorize <p>The usergroup with the authorize permission can authorize connection requests.</p> </li> <li>audit_and_authorize <p>The usergroup with the audit_and_</p> </li> </ul>

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
		authorize permission can authorize connection requests, monitor connections, and download the audit trail of closed and indexed connections.
require_different_ip	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different IP addresses.
require_different_username	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different usernames.
subject	Top level item	Defines the subjects of the access control policy.
group	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) that is subject to the access control policy.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>everybody</li> </ul> <p>Every user is subject to the access control policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only</li> </ul> <p>Requires the group element.</p> <p>Members of the usergroup specified in the group element are subject to the access control policy.</p>

## Elements of server\_address

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
custom_dns	string	Configures a DNS server that is used to reverse-resolve the hostname if the Channel Policy contains the address of the target as a hostname instead of an IP address. By default, this is disabled and SPS uses the DNS server set in the

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<p><a href="#">/api/configuration/network/dns</a> endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default DNS, disable this option: <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": false   },   ... }, </pre> </li> <li>To use a custom DNS, enable this option and set the IP address of the domain name server to use: <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": true,     "server": "192.168.1.1"   },   ... }, </pre> </li> </ul>
selection	string	<p>Configures the address where the clients connect to. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>original <p>Connect to the same address specified by the client.</p> </li> <li>nat <p>Perform a network address translation on the target address.</p> <p>Must be used with the network element.</p> </li> <li>fix <p>Must be used with the address and port elements.</p> </li> <li>inband <p>Extract the address of the server from the username.</p> <p>Must be used with the domains</p> </li> </ul>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<p>element.</p> <p>Optional elements: exception_domains, dns_server, and dns_suffixes.</p>
network	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to nat.</p> <p>The target address in IP/prefix format. Example: "10.20.30.40/24".</p>
address	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to fix.</p> <p>The IP address of the target server.</p>
port	int	<p>Must be used if selection is set to fix.</p> <p>The port of the target server.</p>
domains	Top level list	<p>Must be used if selection is set to inband.</p>
domain	Top level item	<p>Lists the address ranges that are included in the connection policy.</p>
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the target address range is provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address <p>The value of the target address is an IP range.</p> </li> <li>domain <p>The value of the target address is a domain.</p> </li> </ul>
value	string	<p>The address range of the target server (s).</p> <p>Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>
port	int	<p>The port of the target server(s).</p>
exception_domains	Top level list	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>Lists the address ranges that are excluded from the connection policy.</p>
domain	Top level	<p>Contains the excluded address range.</p>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
	item	
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the excluded address(es) are provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the excluded address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the excluded address is a domain.</li> </ul>
value	string	<p>The excluded address(es). Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>
port	int	The excluded port.
dns_server	string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>IP address or the hostname of the domain name server used to resolve the address of the target server.</p>
dns_suffices	list, string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>If the clients do not include the domain name when addressing the server (for example they use username@server instead of username@server.example.com), SPS can automatically add domain information (for example example.com).</p> <p>You can add multiple domain names. SPS attempts to resolve the target address by appending the domain names in the provided order, and uses the first successfully resolved address to establish the connection.</p>

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.



Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a MSSQL connection policy

To add a MSSQL connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new MSSQL connection policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/connections/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new MSSQL connection policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections/a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql/connections",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a MSSQL connection policy

To modify a MSSQL connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the connection policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/connections/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## MSSQL channels

The available MSSQL channel types and their functionalities are described below. For details on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#).

Channel	Special options	Description
mssql	Yes	<p><b>mssql:</b> Enables access to the MSSQL server. This channel must be enabled for MSSQL to work.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>content_policy</code> reference: The ID of the Content policy to apply to the connection.</li></ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"actions": {   "audit": true,   "four_eyes": true,   "content_policy": {     "key": "433849548566ab327522e6"     "meta": {       "href": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/44287216854f482e7f2b24"     }   }, }</pre>

# MSSQL authentication policies

Lists the configured authentication methods that can be used in a connection. Each connection policy uses an authentication policy to determine how the client can authenticate on the SPS gateway.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists MSSQL authentication policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing MSSQL authentication policies. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-200",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/-200"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "-304002001",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/-304002001"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "backend": {
      "selection": "ldap"
    },
    "name": "mssql_auth_policy_with_ldap"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element	Contains the elements of the policy.
name	string	The name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.

Element	Type	Description
backend	Top level item	Client-side gateway authentication settings. The value of selection defines which authentication method is used.
selection	string	<p>Defines the authentication method for client-side gateway authentication. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none Disables client-side gateway authentication.</li> <li>• ldap Uses the LDAP server selected for the connection policy. LDAP servers can be configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers</code> endpoint). To use this option, you must also configure the certificate, password, and public_key elements.</li> <li>• local Uses the local user database configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</code> endpoint. To use this option, you must also configure the <a href="#">user_database</a> element.</li> <li>• radius Uses one or more Radius servers for authentication. To use this option, you must also configure the <a href="#">authentication_protocol</a> and <a href="#">servers</a> elements.</li> </ul>
<a href="#">servers</a>	Top level list	<p>Only if selection is set to radius</p> <p>Defines the properties of the RADIUS servers used for client-side authentication.</p> <p>A valid list item consists of the address, port and shared_secret elements.</p>

Element	Type	Description
authentication_protocol	Top level item	Only if selection is set to radius RADIUS setting. Set to pap to use the Password Authentication Protocol. To use the Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol, set it to chap.
user_database	string	Only if selection is set to local References the key of the local user database. You can configure local user databases at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/">/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add a local user database, use the value of the returned key as the value of the user_database element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
timeout	integer (seconds)	Specify the time remaining until a successful gateway authentication times out.
keepalive	boolean	Set to true to avoid interruptions for active HTTP sessions. Active HTTP sessions can extend the gateway authentication beyond the configured timeout.

Elements of servers	Type	Description
address	Top level element	Defines the address of a RADIUS server.
selection	string	Required child of the address element. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ip The value element contains the IP of the RADIUS server.</li> <li>fqdn The value element contains the FQDN of the RADIUS server.</li> </ul>
value	string	The IP or the FQDN address of the RADIUS server.
port	int	The port number of the RADIUS server.
shared_	string	References the key of the shared secret for the

Elements of servers	Type	Description
secret		<p>RADIUS server. You can configure shared secrets at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a shared secret, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>shared_secret</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>Alternatively, you can include the new password as plain text.</p> <pre>"shared_secret": {   "plain": "&lt;new-password&gt;" }</pre>

## Examples:

Querying base authentication policy without gateway authentication:

```
{
  "key": "-304002001",
  "body": {
    "name": "base",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "none"
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with LDAP backend:

```
{
  "key": "mssql-auth-pol-2",
  "body": {
    "name": "mssql_ldap",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "ldap",
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with local backend:

```
{
  "key": "mssql-auth-pol-3",
  "body": {
    "name": "mssql_local",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "local",
      "user_database": {
        "key": "local-user-database-1",
        "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_
databases/local-user-database-1" }
      },
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with RADIUS backend:

```
{
  "key": "mssql-auth-pol-4",
  "body": {
    "name": "mssql_radius",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "radius",
      "servers": [
        {
          "address": {
            "selection": "ip",
            "value": "1.2.3.4"
          },
          "port": 1812,
          "shared_secret": {
            "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
            "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/passwords#XXXXXXXX-
XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX" }
          }
        }
      ],
      "authentication_protocol": "pap",
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```



## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a MSSQL authentication policy

To add a MSSQL authentication policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [MSSQL authentication policies](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "6f924f39-e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/6f924f39-
```

```
e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Modify a MSSQL authentication policy**

To modify a MSSQL authentication policy, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/authentication_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [MSSQL authentication policies](#).

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# **Global MSSQL options**

List of options that affect all MSSQL connections.

## **URL**

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/options
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists global MSSQL options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global MSSQL options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
}
```

```

"key": "options",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
  "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/options",
  "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/options",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global MSSQL options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable MSSQL connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable MSSQL connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of MSSQL connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for MSSQL connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of MSSQL connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for MSSQL connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of

Elements of audit	Type	Description
		MSSQL connection metadata, set this element to true.
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for MSSQL connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <code>local</code> to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set <code>remote</code> to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
server_url	string	Required for remote timestamping. The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
oid	Top level item	The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
enabled	boolean	Required for remote timestamping. Set to <code>true</code> to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
policy_oid	string	Required if the <code>oid</code> is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
signing_interval	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

## Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
```

```

        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
    }
},
"service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
}
}

```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
}

```

```

"service": {
  "enabled": true,
  "log_level": 4
}
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": true,
        "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

## Modify global MSSQL settings

To modify global MSSQL settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global MSSQL settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## MSSQL settings policies

MSSQL settings policies define protocol-level settings for idle and session timeout. You can create multiple policies, and choose the appropriate one for each MSSQL connection.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS



Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists MSSQL settings policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing MSSQL settings policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-3040010",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/-3040010"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/mssql/options",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "client_tls_security_settings": {
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      },
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2"
    },
    "name": "default",
    "server_tls_security_settings": {
      "cipher_strength": {
        "selection": "recommended"
      },
      "minimum_tls_version": "TLSv1_2"
    },
    "session_timeout": 900,
    "timeout": 300
  },
  "key": "-3040010",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "last": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/-3040010",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the MSSQL settings policy.
<a href="#">client_tls_security_settings</a>	JSON object	Configures TLS security settings on the client side.
name	string	Name of the MSSQL settings policy. Cannot contain whitespace.
<a href="#">server_tls_security_settings</a>	JSON object	Configures TLS security settings on the server side.
timeout	int	Idle timeout, in seconds. Note that the SPS web UI displays the same value in seconds.

Elements of client_ tls_security_settings and server_tls_ security_settings	Type	Description
cipher_ strength	JSON object	Specifies the cipher string OpenSSL will use.
custom_ cipher	string	The list of ciphers you want to permit SPS to use in the connection. For more details on customizing this list, check the 'openssl-ciphers' manual page on your SPS appliance.
selection	string	<p>Specifies the cipher string OpenSSL will use. The following settings options are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>recommended: this setting only uses ciphers with adequate security level.</li> <li>custom: this setting allows you to specify the list of ciphers you want to permit SPS to use in the connection. This setting is only recommended to ensure compatibility with older systems. For more details on customizing this list, check the 'openssl-ciphers' manual page on your SPS appliance.</li> </ul> <p>For example: ALL : !aNULL :@STRENGTH</p>
minimum_ tls_ version	string	<p>Specifies the minimal TLS version SPS will offer during negotiation. The following settings options are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TLSv1_2: this setting only offers TLS version 1.2 during the negotiation. This is the recommended setting.</li> <li>TLSv1_1: this setting offers TLS version 1.1 and later versions during the negotiation.</li> <li>TLSv1_0: this setting offers TLS version 1.0 and later versions during the negotiation.</li> </ul>

## Add MSSQL settings policies

To add a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object for the new policy.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "3848c708-2e1d-4463-b232-0c8c5875ff55",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/3848c708-2e1d-4463-b232-0c8c5875ff55",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify MSSQL settings policies

To modify a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/mssql/settings_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## RDP connections

### RDP connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of RDP connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for RDP connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "domain_membership",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/domain_membership"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/options"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "settings_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/private_keys",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Item	Description
channel_policies	List of the <a href="#">default</a> and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of connection policies.
<a href="#">domain_membership</a>	Domain membership configuration. Prerequisite for configuring Credential Security Service Provider / Network Layer Authentication.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global RDP options that affect all connections.
<a href="#">settings_policies</a>	List of protocol-level settings (timeout, display, protocol version, and authentication). You can create multiple variations, and choose the appropriate one for each connection policy.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# RDP connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists RDP connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/<connection-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing RDP connection policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "12932832285a830b4d2f5d7",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/rdp/connections/12932832285a830b4d2f5d7"
      }
    },
    {
      "meta": {
        "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
```

```

    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/rdp/domain_membership",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific RDP connection policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access_control": [
      {
        "authorizer": "reporting",
        "permission": "audit_and_authorize",
        "require_different_ip": true,
        "require_different_username": true,
        "subject": {
          "selection": "everybody"
        }
      }
    ],
    "active": true,
    "channel_database_cleanup": {
      "days": 550,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "indexing": {
      "enabled": true,
      "policy": {
        "key": "-50000",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000"
        }
      }
    },
    "priority": 3
  },
  "log_audit_trail_downloads": true,
  "name": "rdp_demo",
  "network": {
    "clients": [
      "0.0.0.0/0"
    ],
    "ports": [
      3389
    ]
  }
}

```

```

    ],
    "targets": [
        "10.30.255.28/24"
    ]
},
"policies": {
    "aa_plugin": null,
    "analytics_policy": null,
    "archive_cleanup_policy": {
        "key": "1854671967571b9063c4c82",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_
policies/1854671967571b9063c4c82"
        }
    },
    "audit_policy": {
        "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d"
        }
    },
    "backup_policy": {
        "key": "512524636571b903540804",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/backup_
policies/512524636571b903540804"
        }
    },
    "channel_policy": {
        "key": "-20200",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/-20200"
        }
    },
    "credential_store": {
        "key": "505008562571b936560254",
        "meta": {
            "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/505008562571b936560254"
        }
    },
    "ldap_server": {
        "key": "250588254571b931066482",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_
servers/250588254571b931066482"
        }
    }
}

```

```

    },
    "settings": {
      "key": "-301",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/-301"
      }
    },
    "usermapping_policy": null
  },
  "rate_limit": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "remote_desktop_gateway": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "server_address": {
    "address": "10.30.255.70",
    "port": 3389,
    "selection": "fix"
  },
  "server_certificate_check": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "source_address": {
    "selection": "box_address"
  },
  "transport_security": {
    "certificate": {
      "selection": "self_signed"
    },
    "legacy_fallback": false,
    "selection": "tls"
  },
  "web_gateway_authentication": {
    "enabled": false
  }
},
"key": "12932832285a830b4d2f5d7",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections/12932832285a830b4d2f5d7",
  "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections/12932832285a830b4d2f5d7",
  "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections/12932832285a830b4d2f5d7",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections",
  "previous": null,
  "remaining_seconds": 600,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}

```

```
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the connection policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the connection policy.
access_control	Top level list	Collection of access policies. Access policies define who can authorize and audit a connection.
active	boolean	Set to false to suspend the connection policy. Connection settings are preserved.
channel_database_cleanup	Top level item	Configures cleanup of the connection metadata on the connection policy's level.
days	int	Retention time, in days. Must not exceed the retention time of the archive_cleanup_policy, and the retention time configured in the global settings of the protocol.  The global settings of the SSH protocol are available at the <a href="#">api/configuration/ssh/options</a> endpoint.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable periodical cleanup of the connection metadata.
indexing	Top level item	Configures indexing for the connection policy.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable indexing the connections.
policy	string	References the identifier of the indexing policy. You can configure indexing policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/indexing/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add an indexing policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).

Element		Type	Description
	priority	int	<p>Specifies the indexing priority for the connection. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 Very low priority.</li> <li>• 4 Low priority.</li> <li>• 3 Normal (default) priority.</li> <li>• 2 High priority.</li> <li>• 1 Very high priority.</li> <li>• 0 Near real-time priority.</li> </ul>
log_audit_trail_downloads		boolean	Set to true to log audit trail downloads.
name		string	The name of the connection policy.
network			
	clients	list, string	List of client ("from") IP addresses.
	ports	list, integer-s	List of target ports.
	targets	list, string	List of target IP addresses.
override_log_level		Top level item	<p>Specifies the verbosity level of sessions handled by this connection policy. The log level of other connection policies is not affected. If disabled, the log level set at the <code>/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/options</code> endpoint is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To use the default log level, disable this option:</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": false },</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use a custom log level for the connection policy, enable this option and set the log level to use:</li> </ul> <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": true,   "log_level": 5 },</pre>
policies	Top level item	List of policies referenced by the connection policy.
aa_plugin	string	<p>References the identifier of the AA plug-in. You can configure AA plug-ins at the <a href="/api/configuration/plugins/aa/">/api/configuration/plugins/aa/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an AA plug-in, use the value of the returned key as the value of the aa_plugin element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
analytics_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the analytics policy. You can configure analytics policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/analytics/">/api/configuration/analytics/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To add or modify an analytics policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the analytics element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
archive_cleanup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the archive/cleanup policy. You can configure archive and cleanup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an archive/cleanup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the archive_cleanup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>

Element	Type	Description
audit_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the audit policy. You can configure audit policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an audit policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the audit_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
backup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the backup policy. You can configure backup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a backup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the backup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
channel_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the channel policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the channel_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure RDP channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/">/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
credential_store	string	<p>References the identifier of the credential store.</p> <p>You can configure credential stores at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/credential_stores/">/api/configuration/policies/credential_stores/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a credential store, use the value of the returned key as the value of the credential_store element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
ldap_server	string	<p>References the identifier of the LDAP server. You can configure LDAP servers at</p>



Element	Type	Description
		<p>the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an LDAP server, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>ldap_server</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>settings</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of the settings policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a settings policy for this protocol, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>settings</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure RDP settings policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
<code>usermapping_policy</code>	string	<p>References the identifier of a Usermapping Policy. You can configure Usermapping Policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a Usermapping Policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>usermapping_policies</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
<code>rate_limit</code>	Top level element	Connection rate limit.
<code>enabled</code>	boolean	Set to true to provide a connection rate limit.
<code>value</code>	int	The number of connections (per minute) that are allowed in the connection policy.
<a href="#">remote_desktop_gateway</a>	Top level element	<p>Configure SPS to act as a Remote Desktop Gateway. Otherwise, simply disable this option:</p> <pre>"remote_desktop_gateway": {</pre>

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>"enabled": false },</pre>
<a href="#">server_address</a>	Top level item	Defines the address where the clients connect to.
<a href="#">server_certificate_check</a>	Top level item	<p>By default, SPS accepts any certificate shown by the server.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {   "enabled": false },</pre> <p>To verify the certificate of the destination server, configure and reference a <a href="#">Trusted CA list</a>.</p> <pre>"server_certificate_check": {   "enabled": true,   "trusted_ca":     "9106862955a844051d7bf6" },</pre>
<a href="#">source_address</a>	Top level element	Allows you to configure Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) on the server side of SPS. SNAT determines the IP address SPS uses in the server-side connection. The target server will see the connection coming from this address.
	selection	<p>string</p> <p>Configures Source Network Address Translation. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>box_address</code> Default. Uses the network address of the logical interface of SPS.</li> <li>• <code>original</code> Uses the IP address of the client, as seen by SPS.</li> <li>• <code>fix</code> Uses a fixed address when connecting to the remote server. Must be used with the address</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		element.
address	string	Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to fix.  The IP address to use as the source address in server-side connections.
transport_security	Top level element	Configures the encryption used in the sessions.
certificate	JSON object	Selects the certificate to show to the peers. You have the following options:

- **Use a self-signed certificate:**


Select this option if you want to enable TLS-encryption, but you do not have a certificate that is generated by an external CA, or a signing CA.

```
"certificate": {
  "selection": "self_signed"
}
```

- **Use the same certificate for each client:**

Select this option if you want to use the same certificate for every peer. Note that you must reference a certificate that includes its private key that you have already uploaded to SPS. For details, see [Certificates stored on SPS](#) on page 287.

```
"certificate": {
  "selection": "fix",
  "x509_identity": "893b7eb7-8c6f-403a-ba3a-1d09dc4b4c7a"
}
```

Element	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Generate a certificate for each client:</b></li> </ul> <p>Select this option if you want to generate a certificate for each client. Note that you must reference a Signing CA that you have already configured on SPS. For details, see <a href="#">Signing CA policies</a> on page 406.</p> <pre>"certificate": {   "selection": "generate",   "signing_ca":     "1904188625a843f11d30a5" },</pre>
legacy_fallback	boolean	<p>Set to true to permit the clients to disable TLS encryption and use only the Legacy RDP Security Layer (also known as: Standard RDP Security). You might want to do this if you are experiencing compatibility issues. For example, when you attempt to connect to a very old Windows machine (for example, Windows Server 2003 or older).</p> <div>  <b>CAUTION:</b>  <b>Security Hazard!</b>  <b>Selecting this option can significantly reduce the strength of the encryption used!</b> </div>
selection	legacy   tls	<p>Configures the encryption used in the sessions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• legacy: Disables TLS encryption for RDP connections completely, and uses only the Legacy RDP Security Layer (also known as: Standard RDP Security). You might want to do this if you are experiencing compatibility issues. For example, when you attempt to connect to a very old Windows machine (for example, Windows Server 2003 or older).</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p><b>⚠ CAUTION:</b></p> <p><b>Security Hazard!</b></p> <p>Selecting this option can significantly reduce the strength of the encryption used!</p> <pre>"transport_security": {   "selection": "legacy" },</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>tls</code>: Enables TLS-encryption. Note that you must also set the <code>certificate</code> and <code>legacy_fallback</code> options.</li> </ul> <pre>"transport_security": {   "certificate": {     "selection": "self_signed"   },   "legacy_fallback": false,   "selection": "tls" }</pre>
<code>web_gateway_authentication</code>	Top level item	When gateway authentication is required for a connection, the user must authenticate on SPS as well. This additional authentication can be performed out-of-band on the SPS web interface for every protocol.
<code>enabled</code>	boolean	Set to true to enable additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface.
<code>groups</code>	list, string	By default, any user can perform gateway authentication for the connections. You can restrict authentication to members of specific usergroups. Define the usergroups at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint, and list the name of each group here.
<code>require_same_ip</code>	boolean	Set to true to only accept web gateway authentication from the same host that initiated the connection.

## Elements of access\_control

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
authorizer	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) who can authorize or audit the connection.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
permission	string	<p>Defines the permissions of the authorizer usergroup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• audit The usergroup with the audit permission can monitor ongoing connections, and download the audit trails of a closed and indexed connection.</li><li>• authorize The usergroup with the authorize permission can authorize connection requests.</li><li>• audit_and_authorize The usergroup with the audit_and_authorize permission can authorize connection requests, monitor connections, and download the audit trail of closed and indexed connections.</li></ul>
require_different_ip	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different IP addresses.
require_different_username	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different usernames.
subject	Top level item	Defines the subjects of the access control policy.
group	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) that is subject to the access control policy.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>everybody Every user is subject to the access control policy.</li> <li>only Requires the group element. Members of the usergroup specified in the group element are subject to the access control policy.</li> </ul>

Elements of remote_desktop_gateway	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	Set to true and configure the other options as needed for your environment to use SPS as a Remote Desktop Gateway. For details and prerequisites, see <a href="#">"Using One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) as a Remote Desktop Gateway" in the Administration Guide.</a>
host_certification_method	JSON object	<p>To act as a Remote Desktop Gateway, SPS needs to display a certificate to the clients.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display always the same certificate, set "selection": "single", and reference a X.509 certificate and the matching private key. For example:</li> </ul>

```
"host_certification_
method": {
  "selection":
"single",
  "signing",
  "value": {
    "signing_ca":
"53449998258a4ceba80fdc"
  },
  "common_name":
"examplecn"
}
```

Elements of remote_desktop_gateway		Type	Description
			<p>For details on uploading certificates, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a> on page 287.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To automatically create new certificates on SPS for every client, set "selection": "signing", and reference the Certificate Authority (CA) to sign the generated certificates. For example:</li> </ul> <pre>"host_certification_ method": {   "selection":   "single",   "value":   "1904188625a843f11d30a5" },</pre> <p>For details on creating a signing CA, see <a href="#">Signing CA policies</a> on page 406.</p>
	selection	single   signing	Determines if SPS displays the same certificate to every client (single), or generates a separate certificate (signing) for every client.
	value	JSON object or string	<p>Contains the options and parameters related to the option set in selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If selection is set to signing, this is a JSON object.</li> <li>If selection is set to single, this is a string containing the reference ID of the certificate that SPS displays to the clients.</li> </ul>
	common_name	string	Available only if selection is set to signing. You can specify the Common Name of the generated certificates in this parameter. For



Elements of remote_desktop_gateway	Type	Description
		<p>example:</p> <pre>"common_name": "examplecn"</pre> <p>If set to null, the Common Name of the certificates will be SPS-hostname.domainname</p>
signing_ca	string	<p>Available only if selection is set to signing. Contains the reference key of the signing CA used to sign the certificates that SPS shows to the clients. For example:</p> <pre>"signing_ca": "1904188625a843f11d30a5"</pre> <p>If set to null, the Common Name of the certificates will be SPS-hostname.domainname</p>
local_authentication	JSON object	<p>Determines how SPS authenticates the clients: either using Active Directory (SPS must be member of a domain), or using a <a href="#">Local User Database</a>.</p>
selection	active_directory   local_user_database	<p>Determines how SPS authenticates the clients:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>using Active Directory (SPS must be member of a domain)</li> </ul> <pre>"local_authentication": {   "selection": "local_user_database",   "value": {     "domain": "example",     "local_user_database": "15646962145a843f758501-d"</pre>

Elements of remote_desktop_gateway	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>using a <a href="#">Local User Database</a>.</li> </ul> <pre> "local_authentication": {   "selection": "active_directory",   "value": null } </pre>
value	JSON object	<p>Set to null if selection is set to active_directory.</p> <p>If selection is set to local_user_database, value contains a JSON object with the domain and local_user_database keys.</p>
domain	string	Available only if selection is set to local_user_database.
local_user_database	string	Available only if selection is set to local_user_database. Contains the reference ID of a <a href="#">Local User Database</a> that SPS will use to authenticate the clients.

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
custom_dns	string	<p>Configures a DNS server that is used to reverse-resolve the hostname if the Channel Policy contains the address of the target as a hostname instead of an IP address. By default, this is disabled and SPS uses the DNS server set in the <a href="#">/api/configuration/network/dns</a> endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default DNS, disable this option: <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": false   },   ... }, </pre> </li> <li>To use a custom DNS, enable this</li> </ul>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<p>option and set the IP address of the domain name server to use:</p> <pre>"server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": true,     "server":       "192.168.1.1"   },   ... },</pre>
selection	string	<p>Configures the address where the clients connect to. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>original           <p>Connect to the same address specified by the client.</p> </li> <li>nat           <p>Perform a network address translation on the target address.</p> <p>Must be used with the network element.</p> </li> <li>fix           <p>Must be used with the address and port elements.</p> </li> <li>inband           <p>Extract the address of the server from the username.</p> <p>Must be used with the domains element.</p> <p>Optional elements: exception_domains, dns_server, and dns_suffixes.</p> </li> </ul>
network	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to nat.</p> <p>The target address in IP/prefix format. Example: "10.20.30.40/24".</p>
address	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to fix.</p> <p>The IP address of the target server.</p>

Elements of server_address		Type	Description
port		int	Must be used if selection is set to fix. The port of the target server.
domains		Top level list	Must be used if selection is set to inband.
	domain	Top level item	Lists the address ranges that are included in the connection policy.
	selection	string	Specifies if the target address range is provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the target address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the target address is a domain.</li> </ul>
	value	string	The address range of the target server (s). Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.
	port	int	The port of the target server(s).
exception_domains		Top level list	Can only be used if selection is set to inband. Lists the address ranges that are excluded from the connection policy.
	domain	Top level item	Contains the excluded address range.
	selection	string	Specifies if the excluded address(es) are provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the excluded address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain</li> </ul>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		The value of the excluded address is a domain.
value	string	The excluded address(es). Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.
port	int	The excluded port.
dns_server	string	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.  IP address or the hostname of the domain name server used to resolve the address of the target server.
dns_suffixes	list, string	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.  If the clients do not include the domain name when addressing the server (for example they use username@server instead of username@server.example.com), SPS can automatically add domain information (for example example.com).  You can add multiple domain names. SPS attempts to resolve the target address by appending the domain names in the provided order, and uses the first successfully resolved address to establish the connection.

## Examples

For practical purposes, the following examples show only the relevant parts of a connection policy JSON object. To modify or add a connection policy, always submit the full JSON object.

Access control list: configuring the "security" usergroup to only audit connections made by the "root\_only" usergroup.

```
"access_control": [
  {
    "authorizer": "security",
    "permission": "audit",
    "require_different_ip": true,
    "require_different_username": true,
```

```

"subject": {
  "group": "root_only",
  "selection": "only"
}
}

```

Access control list: configuring the "security" usergroup to only audit connections made by the "root\_only" usergroup.

```

"access_control": [
  {
    "authorizer": "security",
    "permission": "audit",
    "require_different_ip": true,
    "require_different_username": true,
    "subject": {
      "group": "root_only",
      "selection": "only"
    }
  }
]

```

Target server: use the address specified by the client.

```

"server_address": {
  "selection": "original"
}

```

Target server: use a fix address.

```

"server_address": {
  "address": "<fix-IP>",
  "port": 22,
  "selection": "fix"
}

```

Target server: configure inband destination selection, where the client can specify the target address in the username. The target can be either an IP range, or a domain.

```

"server_address": {
  "dns_server": "<ip-of-dns-server>",
  "dns_suffixes": null,
  "domains": [
    {
      "domain": {
        "selection": "address",
        "value": "<IP-range>"
      }
    }
  ],
  "port": 22
}

```

```

    },
    {
      "domain": {
        "selection": "domain",
        "value": "/*.example"
      },
      "port": 22
    }
  ],
  "selection": "inband"
}

```

Source address: use the same fix IP when connecting to the remote server.

```

"source_address": {
  "address": "<ip-address>",
  "selection": "fix"
}

```

Web gateway authentication: require the admin usergroup to perform an additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface. They must authenticate from the same host which initiated the connection.

```

"web_gateway_authentication": {
  "enabled": true,
  "groups": [
    "admin"
  ],
  "require_same_ip": true
}

```

Policies: configure only the required policies.

```

"policies": {
  "aa_plugin": null,
  "analytics_policy": null,
  "archive_cleanup_policy": null,
  "audit_policy": "<key-of-audit-policy>",
  "backup_policy": null,
  "channel_policy": "<key-of-channel-policy>",
  "credential_store": null,
  "ldap_server": null,
  "settings": "<key-of-settings-policy>",
  "usermapping_policy": null
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a connection policy

To add an RDP connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new RDP connection policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new connection policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections/a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/connections",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```



### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an RDP connection policy

To modify an RDP connection policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the connection policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/connections/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## RDP channels

The available RDP channel types and their functionalities are described below. For details on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#).

Channel	Special options	Description
#drawing	Yes	<p><b>Drawing:</b> Enables access to the server's graphical desktop (screen). This channel must be enabled for RDP to work.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>content_policy reference: The ID of the Content policy to apply to the connection.</li></ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"actions": {   "audit": true,   "content_policy": {     "key": "433849548566ab327522e6"   },   "four_eyes": false,</pre>

Channel	Special options	Description
		<pre>"ids": false }</pre>
clipdr	None	<b>Clipboard:</b> Enable access to the server's clipboard: the clipboard of the remote desktop can be pasted into local applications (and vice-versa). Note that SPS can audit the clipboard channel, but cannot search or display its contents.
rdpdr	Yes	<b>Redirects:</b> Enables access to every device redirections available in RDP, like file-sharing, printer sharing, device (for example CD-ROM) sharing, and so on. To enable only a specific type of redirection, use the specific channels instead (for example, rdpdr-serial for serial device redirection). Channel-specific actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>log_transfer_to_db (true false): Make the list of file operations available in the <b>Search &gt; File operations</b> column of the SPS web interface</li> <li>log_transfer_to_syslog (true false): Send the file operations into the system log</li> </ul> Channel-specific access control rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>
rdpsnd	None	<b>Sound:</b> Enable access to the sound device of the server.
customs	Yes	<b>Custom:</b> Applications can open custom channels to the clients connecting remotely to the server. Enabling the <b>Custom</b> channel allows the clients to access all of these custom channels. To permit only specific channels, list the unique names of the channels into the customs field. For example, to monitor RemoteApp connections, you need to configure custom channels. For more information, see <a href="#">"Configuring RemoteApps" in the Administration Guide</a> . Channel-specific access control rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>customs (list): To permit only specific custom channels, list the unique name of the channels in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every custom channel available.</li> </ul>
seamrdp	None	<b>Seamless:</b> Enable seamless channels that run a single application on the RDP server, instead of accessing the entire desktop.

Channel	Special options	Description
drdynvc	Yes	<p><b>Dynamic virtual channel:</b> Enable the server to open channels back to the client dynamically. Enabling this channel allows access to all of such dynamic channels. To restrict which dynamic channels are permitted, list the unique names of the channels into the drdynvcs field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>drdynvcs (list): To restrict which dynamic channels are permitted, list the unique names of the channels in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every dynamic channel available.</li> </ul>
rdpdr-serial	Yes	<p><b>Serial redirect:</b> Enables access to serial-port redirections. To restrict access to specific redirections, list the unique names of the channels in the devices field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>
rdpdr-parallel	Yes	<p><b>Parallel redirect:</b> Enables access to parallel-port redirections. To restrict access to specific redirections, list the unique names of the channels in the devices field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>
rdpdr-printer	Yes	<p><b>Printer redirect:</b> Enables access to printer-port redirections. To restrict access to specific redirections, list the unique names of the channels in the devices field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>
rdpdr-disk	Yes	<p><b>Disk redirect:</b> Enables access to shared disk drives. To restrict access to specific redirections, list the unique names of the channels in the devices field, for example:</p> <pre>"devices": [   "C:"</pre>

Channel	Special options	Description
		<p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>log_transfer_to_db (true false): Make the list of file operations available in the <b>Search &gt; File operations</b> column of the SPS web interface</li> <li>log_transfer_to_syslog (true false): Send the file operations into the system log</li> </ul> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>
rdpdr-scard	Yes	<p><b>SCard redirect:</b> Enables access to shared SCard devices. To restrict access to specific redirections, list the unique names of the channels in the devices field, for example:</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>devices (list): To permit only specific redirections, list the unique name of the redirection in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every redirection available.</li> </ul>

## Configuring domain membership

You can use Credential Security Service Provider (CredSSP, also called Network Level Authentication or NLA) when One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) is member of the domain.

### Prerequisites

- The target servers and SPS must be in the same domain, or you must establish trust between the domains that contain the target servers and SPS. For details on the type of trust required, see ["Using One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions \(SPS\) across multiple domains" in the Administration Guide](#).

The SPS configuration API allows you to view, disable, or modify the domain membership configuration. To join the configured domain, you have to use the web interface of SPS.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/rdp/domain_membership
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options for domain membership.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/rdp/domain_membership
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the domain membership configuration.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "domain": "testdomain",
    "enabled": true,
    "realm": "testdomain.api.test"
  },
  "key": "domain_membership",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/domain_membership",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/rdp/options",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the domain membership configuration.
domain	string	The name of the domain. Must be used if enabled is set to true.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to configure domain membership.
realm	string	Name of the realm. Must be used if enabled is set to true.

### Examples:

Configure domain membership for the "test" domain on the "config.api" realm:

```
{
  "domain": "test",
  "enabled": true,
  "realm": "test.config.api"
}
```

Disable domain membership.

```
{
  "enabled": false
}
```

### Modify domain membership settings

To modify domain membership settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the domain membership configuration.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/rdp/domain_membership/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Global RDP options

List of options that affect all RDP connections.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/options
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19. <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists global RDP options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global RDP options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/options",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/domain_membership",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```



Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global RDP options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable RDP connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable RDP connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of RDP connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for RDP connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of RDP connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for RDP connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of RDP connection metadata, set this element to true.
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for RDP connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set local to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set remote to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
server_url	string	Required for remote timestamping.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
		The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
oid	Top level item	The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
enabled	boolean	Required for remote timestamping. Set to true to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
policy_oid	string	Required if the oid is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
signing_interval	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

### Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
```

```

    "oid": {
      "enabled": true,
      "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
    },
    "selection": "remote",
    "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
    "signing_interval": 30
  }
},
"service": {
  "enabled": true,
  "log_level": 4
}
}

```

## Modify global RDP settings

To modify global RDP settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global RDP settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

Code	Description	Notes
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## RDP settings policies

RDP settings policies define protocol-level settings (timeout, display, protocol version, and authentication). You can create multiple policies, and choose the appropriate one for each RDP connection.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists RDP settings policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing RDP settings policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-301",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/-301"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "-303",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/-303"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "13298899495727c51f725cf",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/13298899495727c51f725cf"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/options",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "autologon_domain_suffix": "-AUTO",
    "name": "API_test",
    "timeout": 600,
  }
}
```

```

"inactivity_timeout": {
  "enabled": true
  "value": 13000
},
"permit_unreliable_usernames": true,
"preconnect_channel_check": true,
"protocol_features": {
  "nla": {
    "enabled": true,
    "require_domain_membership": true
  },
  "rdp4_auth_enabled": true,
  "rdp4_enabled": true,
  "rdp5_enabled": true
},
"screen": {
  "maximum_bpp": 32,
  "maximum_height": 2000,
  "maximum_width": 2000
},
"timeout": 600,
"userauth_banner": "Click 'OK' to log in."
},
"key": "13298899495727c51f725cf",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/-301",
  "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/13298899495727c51f725cf",
  "last": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/13298899495727c51f725cf",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/-303",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the RDP settings policy.
autologon_domain_suffix	string	Enter the suffix that the client will append to the domain when using autologon in conjunction with Network Level Authentication (CredSSP).

Element	Type	Description
name	string	Name of the RDP settings policy. Cannot contain whitespace.
permit_unreliable_usernames	boolean	Set to true to automatically terminate RDP connections if SPS cannot reliably extract the username.
preconnect_channel_check	boolean	<p>Before establishing the server-side connection, SPS can evaluate the connection and channel policies to determine if the connection might be permitted at all. The server-side connection is established only if the evaluated policies permit the client to access the server.</p> <p>To enable this function, set the parameter to true.</p>
protocol_features	Top level item	Settings for RDP protocol versions, and Network Layer Authentication.
screen	Top level item	Display size and depth settings.
timeout	int	Connection timeout, in seconds.
inactivity_timeout	Top level element	
	enabled	boolean <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true: If no user activity is detected, it terminates the session after the configured time has passed since the last user activity.</li> <li>false: No user inactivity timeout.</li> </ul>
	value	int <p>Only if enabled is true</p> <p>The value of user activity timeout. Must be greater than or equal to the value of timeout</p>
userauth_banner	string	You can display a banner message to the clients before authentication.

Elements of protocol	Type	Description
nla	Top level item	Settings for Network Level Authentication.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable Network Level Authentication.



Elements of protocol	Type	Description
		If set to true, the require_domain_membership element is required in the JSON.
require_domain_membership	boolean	Set to true to require domain membership. Must be in the JSON if NLA is enabled.
rdp4_auth_enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable RDP4 authentication within the RDP5 protocol. This might be needed for compatibility reasons with certain client applications.
rdp4_enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable the version 4 of the Remote Desktop Protocol.
rdp5_enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable the version 5 of the Remote Desktop Protocol.  To also configure SSL-encryption for RDP5, enable the nla element, or configure a Signing CA in your connection policies.

Elements of screen	Type	Description
maximum_bpp	int	The maximum allowed color depth of the remote desktop, in bits. The following values are valid: 8, 15, 16, 24.
maximum_height	int	The maximum allowed height of the remote desktop, in pixels.
maximum_width	int	The maximum allowed width of the remote desktop, in pixels.

## Examples:

Turn off NLA.

```
{
  "autologon_domain_suffix": "-AUTO",
  "name": "API_test",
  "permit_unreliable_usernames": true,
  "preconnect_channel_check": true,
  "protocol_features": {
    "nla": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "rdp4_auth_enabled": true,
    "rdp4_enabled": true,
    "rdp5_enabled": true
  }
}
```

```

    },
    "screen": {
      "maximum_bpp": 24,
      "maximum_height": 2000,
      "maximum_width": 2000
    },
    "timeout": 600
  }
}

```

Configure NLA.

```

{
  "autologon_domain_suffix": "-AUTO",
  "name": "API_test",
  "permit_unreliable_usernames": true,
  "preconnect_channel_check": true,
  "protocol_features": {
    "nla": {
      "enabled": true,
      "require_domain_membership": false
    },
    "rdp4_auth_enabled": true,
    "rdp4_enabled": true,
    "rdp5_enabled": true
  },
  "screen": {
    "maximum_bpp": 24,
    "maximum_height": 2000,
    "maximum_width": 2000
  },
  "timeout": 600
}

```

## Add RDP settings policies

To add a settings policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in the [table of RDP settings policy parameters](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "9c3a0419-53e6-43a4-902c-2b3b0ce7a7a7",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/9c3a0419-53e6-43a4-902c-2b3b0ce7a7a7",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify RDP settings policies

To modify a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/rdp/settings_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in the [table of RDP settings policy parameters](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	Bad Request "message": "RDP Settings	You have set <code>require_domain_membership</code> to true, but SPS is not the member of a domain.

Code	Description	Notes
	Policy 'API_test': SPS must be a domain member to allow enabling Network Level Authentication."	
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## SSH connections

### SSH connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of SSH connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for SSH connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "authentication_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/options"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "settings_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/telnet",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Item	Description
<a href="#">authentication_policies</a>	List of the default and custom authentication policies.
<a href="#">channel_policies</a>	List of the <a href="#">default</a> and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of connection policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global SSH options that affect all connections.
<a href="#">settings_policies</a>	List of protocol-level settings (algorithms, greetings and banners, timeout). You can create multiple variations, and choose the appropriate one for each connection policy.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# SSH connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/connections/
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists SSH connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/connections/<connection-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing SSH connection policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "8348340645707e2575e3c6",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/8348340645707e2575e3c6"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections",
  }
}
```



```

    "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ssh/options",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific SSH connection policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access_control": [
      {
        "authorizer": "reporting",
        "permission": "audit_and_authorize",
        "require_different_ip": true,
        "require_different_username": true,
        "subject": {
          "selection": "everybody"
        }
      }
    ],
    "active": true,
    "channel_database_cleanup": {
      "days": 550,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "client_side_hostkey": {
      "plain_hostkey": {
        "dsa_key": null,
        "enabled": true,
        "rsa_key": {
          "key": "e5a58682-6189-4477-9415-67c1c9b20b0d",
          "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/private_keys/e5a58682-6189-4477-9415-67c1c9b20b0d"
          }
        }
      }
    },
    "x509_hostkey": {
      "enabled": false
    }
  },
  "indexing": {
    "enabled": true,
    "policy": {

```

```

        "key": "-50000",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000"
        }
    },
    "priority": 2
},
"log_audit_trail_downloads": true,
"name": "API_test_SSH",
"network": {
    "clients": [
        "0.0.0.0/24"
    ],
    "ports": [
        22
    ],
    "targets": [
        "192.168.56.102/24"
    ]
},
"policies": {
    "aa_plugin": null,
    "analytics_policy": null,
    "archive_cleanup_policy": {
        "key": "1854671967571b9063c4c82",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_
policies/1854671967571b9063c4c82"
        }
    },
    "audit_policy": {
        "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d"
        }
    },
    "authentication_policy": {
        "key": "1895203635707e3340262f",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_
policies/1895203635707e3340262f"
        }
    },
    "backup_policy": {
        "key": "512524636571b903540804",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/backup_

```

```

policies/512524636571b903540804"
    }
  },
  "channel_policy": {
    "key": "-10000",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/-10000"
    }
  },
  "credential_store": {
    "key": "505008562571b936560254",
    "meta": {
      "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/505008562571b936560254"
    }
  },
  "ldap_server": {
    "key": "250588254571b931066482",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_
servers/250588254571b931066482"
    }
  },
  "settings": {
    "key": "-300",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/-300"
    }
  },
  "usermapping_policy": {
    "key": "9328731525704545f5e3de",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_
policies/9328731525704545f5e3de"
    }
  },
  "rate_limit": {
    "enabled": true,
    "value": 200
  },
  "server_address": {
    "selection": "original"
  },
  "server_side_hostkey": {
    "plain_hostkey": {
      "enabled": true,
      "hostkey_check": "accept-first-time"
    }
  }
}

```

```

    },
    "x509_hostkey": {
      "enabled": false
    }
  },
  "source_address": {
    "custom_dns": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "selection": "box_address"
  },
  "web_gateway_authentication": {
    "enabled": true,
    "groups": [
      "reporting"
    ],
    "require_same_ip": true
  }
},
"key": "8348340645707e2575e3c6",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/8348340645707e2575e3c6",
  "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/8348340645707e2575e3c6",
  "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/8348340645707e2575e3c6",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections",
  "previous": null,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the connection policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the connection policy.
<a href="#">access_control</a>	Top level list	Collection of access policies. Access policies define who can authorize and audit a connection.
active	boolean	Set to false to suspend the connection policy. Connection settings are preserved.

Element		Type	Description
channel_ database_ cleanup		Top level item	Configures cleanup of the connection metadata on the connection policy's level.
	days	int	Retention time, in days. Must not exceed the retention time of the archive_cleanup_policy, and the retention time configured in the global settings of the protocol.  The global settings of the SSH protocol are available at the <a href="#">api/configuration/ssh/options</a> endpoint.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable periodical cleanup of the connection metadata.
indexing		Top level item	Configures indexing for the connection policy.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable indexing the connections.
	policy	string	References the identifier of the indexing policy. You can configure indexing policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/indexing/</a> endpoint.  To modify or add an indexing policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
	priority	int	Specifies the indexing priority for the connection. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5 Very low priority.</li> <li>4 Low priority.</li> <li>3 Normal (default) priority.</li> <li>2 High priority.</li> </ul>

Element		Type	Description
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1</li> </ul> <p>Very high priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0</li> </ul> <p>Near real-time priority.</p>
log_audit_trail_downloads		boolean	Set to true to log audit trail downloads.
name		string	The name of the connection policy.
network			
	clients	list, string	List of client ("from") IP addresses.
	ports	list, integers	List of target ports.
	targets	list, string	List of target IP addresses.
override_log_level		Top level item	<p>Specifies the verbosity level of sessions handled by this connection policy. The log level of other connection policies is not affected. If disabled, the log level set at the <code>/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/options</code> endpoint is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default log level, disable this option: <div> <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": false },</pre> </div> </li> <li>To use a custom log level for the connection policy, enable this option and set the log level to use: <div> <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": true,   "log_level": 5 },</pre> </div> </li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
policies	Top level item	List of policies referenced by the connection policy.
aa_plugin	string	<p>References the identifier of the AA plug-in. You can configure AA plug-ins at the <a href="/api/configuration/plugins/aa/">/api/configuration/plugins/aa/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an AA plug-in, use the value of the returned key as the value of the aa_plugin element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
analytics_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the analytics policy. You can configure analytics policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/analytics/">/api/configuration/analytics/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To add or modify an analytics policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the analytics element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
archive_cleanup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the archive/cleanup policy. You can configure archive and cleanup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an archive/cleanup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the archive_cleanup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
audit_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the audit policy. You can configure audit policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an audit policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the audit_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
authentication_policy	string	Cannot be null.

Element	Type	Description
		<p>References the identifier of the authentication policy. You can configure authentication policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/">/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an authentication policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the authentication_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
backup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the backup policy. You can configure backup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a backup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the backup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
channel_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the channel policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the channel_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure SSH channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/">/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
credential_store	string	<p>References the identifier of the credential store.</p> <p>You can configure credential stores at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/">/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a credential store, use the value of the returned key as the value of the credential_store element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
ldap_server	string	References the identifier of the LDAP



Element	Type	Description
		<p>server. You can configure LDAP servers at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an LDAP server, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>ldap_server</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
settings	string	<p>References the identifier of the settings policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a settings policy for this protocol, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>settings</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure SSH settings policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/">/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
usermapping_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of a Usermapping Policy. You can configure Usermapping Policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a Usermapping Policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>usermapping_policies</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
rate_limit	Top level element	Connection rate limit.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to provide a connection rate limit.
value	int	The number of connections (per minute) that are allowed in the connection policy.
<a href="#">server_address</a>	Top level item	Defines the address where the clients connect to.

Element	Type	Description
<code>server_side_hostkey</code>	Top level element	<p>Settings for verifying the server's identity using plain host keys and X.509 host certificates.</p> <p>At least one of the options (<code>plain_hostkey</code> or <code>x509_hostkey</code>) must be enabled.</p>
<code>source_address</code>	Top level element	<p>Allows you to configure Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) on the server side of SPS. SNAT determines the IP address SPS uses in the server-side connection. The target server will see the connection coming from this address.</p>
<code>selection</code>	string	<p>Configures Source Network Address Translation. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>box_address</code> Default. Uses the network address of the logical interface of SPS.</li> <li><code>original</code> Uses the IP address of the client, as seen by SPS.</li> <li><code>fix</code> Uses a fixed address when connecting to the remote server. Must be used with the <code>address</code> element.</li> </ul>
<code>address</code>	string	<p>Must be used if the value of the <code>selection</code> element is set to <code>fix</code>.</p> <p>The IP address to use as the source address in server-side connections.</p>
<code>web_gateway_authentication</code>	Top level item	<p>When gateway authentication is required for a connection, the user must authenticate on SPS as well. This additional authentication can be performed out-of-band on the SPS web interface for every protocol.</p>
<code>enabled</code>	boolean	<p>Set to true to enable additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface.</p>
<code>groups</code>	list,	<p>By default, any user can perform</p>

Element	Type	Description
	string	gateway authentication for the connections. You can restrict authentication to members of specific usergroups. Define the usergroups at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint, and list the name of each group here.
require_same_ip	boolean	Set to true to only accept web gateway authentication from the same host that initiated the connection.

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
authorizer	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) who can authorize or audit the connection.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
permission	string	<p>Defines the permissions of the authorizer usergroup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• audit <p>The usergroup with the audit permission can monitor ongoing connections, and download the audit trails of a closed and indexed connection.</p> </li> <li>• authorize <p>The usergroup with the authorize permission can authorize connection requests.</p> </li> <li>• audit_and_authorize <p>The usergroup with the audit_and_authorize permission can authorize connection requests, monitor connections, and download the audit trail of closed and indexed connections.</p> </li> </ul>
require_different_ip	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different IP addresses.
require_different_username	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different usernames.

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
username		
subject	Top level item	Defines the subjects of the access control policy.
group	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) that is subject to the access control policy.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>everybody <p>Every user is subject to the access control policy.</p> </li> <li>only <p>Requires the group element.</p> <p>Members of the usergroup specified in the group element are subject to the access control policy.</p> </li> </ul>

Elements of client_side_hostkey	Type	Description
plain_hostkey	Top level item	Configures the RSA key SPS shows to the clients.
rsa_key	string	<p>References the identifier of the RSA key. You can add RSA keys at the <a href="/api/configuration/private_keys/">/api/configuration/private_keys/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an RSA key, use the value of the returned key as the value of the rsa_key element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
x509_hostkey	Top level item	Configures the X.509 keys SPS shows to the clients.
enabled	boolean	<p>Set to true to allow presenting X.509 host keys to clients.</p> <p>You must enable either plain_hostkey or x509_hostkey (or both).</p>
x509	Top level	Parameters for X.509 hostkeys.

Elements of client_side_hostkey	Type	Description
	item	
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fix Presents the same certificate for every connection. Must be used with the x509_identity element.</li> <li>generate Generates a X.509 certificate for the connection policy. Must be used with the signing_CA element.</li> </ul>
signing_ca	string	<p>Must be used when generating the X.509 certificate.</p> <p>References the signing Certificate Authority (CA). You can configure signing CAs at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/">/api/configuration/policies/signing_cas/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a signing CA, use the value of the returned key as the value of the rsa_key element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
x509_identity	string	<p>Must be used when using the same X.509 host certificate across connection policies.</p> <p>References the identifier of the X.509 certificate stored on SPS. You can configure certificates at the <a href="/api/configuration/x509/">/api/configuration/x509/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an X.509 host certificate, use the value of the returned key as the value of the x509_identity element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
Elements of server_address	Type	Description
custom_dns	string	Configures a DNS server that is used to

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<p>reverse-resolve the hostname if the Channel Policy contains the address of the target as a hostname instead of an IP address. By default, this is disabled and SPS uses the DNS server set in the <a href="/api/configuration/network/dns">/api/configuration/network/dns</a> endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use the default DNS, disable this option: <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": false   },   ... }, </pre> </li> <li>To use a custom DNS, enable this option and set the IP address of the domain name server to use: <pre> "server_address": {   "custom_dns": {     "enabled": true,     "server":       "192.168.1.1"   },   ... }, </pre> </li> </ul>
selection	string	<p>Configures the address where the clients connect to. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>original</b> Connect to the same address specified by the client.</li> <li><b>nat</b> Perform a network address translation on the target address. Must be used with the network element.</li> <li><b>fix</b> Must be used with the address and</li> </ul>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<p>port elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>inband</li> </ul> <p>Extract the address of the server from the username.</p> <p>Must be used with the domains element.</p> <p>Optional elements: exception_domains, dns_server, and dns_suffixes.</p>
network	string	Must be used if selection is set to nat. The target address in IP/prefix format. Example: "10.20.30.40/24".
address	string	Must be used if selection is set to fix. The IP address of the target server.
port	int	Must be used if selection is set to fix. The port of the target server.
domains	Top level list	Must be used if selection is set to inband.
domain	Top level item	Lists the address ranges that are included in the connection policy.
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the target address range is provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address</li> </ul> <p>The value of the target address is an IP range.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>domain</li> </ul> <p>The value of the target address is a domain.</p>
value	string	<p>The address range of the target server (s).</p> <p>Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
port	int	The port of the target server(s).
exception_ domains	Top level list	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.  Lists the address ranges that are excluded from the connection policy.
domain	Top level item	Contains the excluded address range.
selection	string	Specifies if the excluded address(es) are provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the excluded address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the excluded address is a domain.</li> </ul>
value	string	The excluded address(es).  Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.
port	int	The excluded port.
dns_server	string	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.  IP address or the hostname of the domain name server used to resolve the address of the target server.
dns_ suffixes	list, string	Can only be used if selection is set to inband.  If the clients do not include the domain name when addressing the server (for example they use username@server instead of username@server.example.com), SPS can automatically add domain information (for example example.com).  You can add multiple domain names. SPS attempts to resolve the target address by appending the domain names in the



Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		provided order, and uses the first successfully resolved address to establish the connection.

Elements of server_side_hostkey	Type	Description
plain_hostkey	Top level element	Verifies the identity of the servers based on their hostkeys.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable plain host key checking.  If enabled, the hostkey_check element is mandatory.
hostkey_check	string	Defines the method for checking the host keys of the target server. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled Disables host key verification.</li> <li>accept-first-time Records the key shown for the first connection, and accepts only the same key for any subsequent connections.</li> <li>accept-known-keys Only accepts host keys that are already stored on SPS.  You can manage host keys at the <a href="#">/api/ssh-host-keys</a> endpoint.</li> </ul>
x509_hostkey	Top level element	Verifies the identity of the servers based on their X.509 certificates.
enabled	string	Set to true to enable X.509 host key verification.  If enabled, the x509_check element is mandatory.
x509_check	Top level item	Contains the configuration settings for verifying X.509 certificates.
selection	string	Configures the validation of X.509 certificates. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled</li> </ul>

Elements of server_side_ hostkey	Type	Description
		<p>Disables X.509 certificate verification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>accept-first-time</b> Records the X.509 certificate shown for the first connection, and accepts only the same certificate for any subsequent connections.</li> <li>• <b>accept-known-certificates</b> Only accepts X.509 certificates that are already stored on SPS. You can add X.509 certificates at the <a href="#">/api/ssh-host-keys</a> endpoint.</li> <li>• <b>accept-signed-by</b> Accepts all X.509 certificates that are signed by a trusted Certificate Authority. Must be used with the <code>trusted_ca</code> element.</li> </ul>
<code>trusted_ca</code>	string	<p>Must be used if the selection element is set to <code>accept-signed-by</code>.</p> <p>References the identifier of the trusted CA. You can add or modify the list of trusted CAs at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a trusted CA, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>trusted_ca</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>

## Examples

For practical purposes, the following examples show only the relevant parts of a connection policy JSON object. To modify or add a connection policy, always submit the full JSON object.

Access control list: configuring the "security" usergroup to only audit connections made by the "root\_only" usergroup.

```
"access_control": [
  {
    "authorizer": "security",
    "permission": "audit",
    "require_different_ip": true,
    "require_different_username": true,
    "subject": {
      "group": "root_only",
      "selection": "only"
    }
  }
]
```

Target server: use the address specified by the client.

```
"server_address": {
  "selection": "original"
}
```

Target server: use a fix address.

```
"server_address": {
  "address": "<fix-IP>",
  "port": 22,
  "selection": "fix"
}
```

Target server: configure inband destination selection, where the client can specify the target address in the username. The target can be either an IP range, or a domain.

```
"server_address": {
  "dns_server": "<ip-of-dns-server>",
  "dns_suffixes": null,
  "domains": [
    {
      "domain": {
        "selection": "address",
        "value": "<IP-range>"
      },
      "port": 22
    },
    {
      "domain": {
        "selection": "domain",
        "value": "/*.example"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    "port": 22
  },
  "selection": "inband"
}

```

Source address: use the same fix IP when connecting to the remote server.

```

"source_address": {
  "address": "<ip-address>",
  "selection": "fix"
}

```

Web gateway authentication: require the admin usergroup to perform an additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface. They must authenticate from the same host which initiated the connection.

```

"web_gateway_authentication": {
  "enabled": true,
  "groups": [
    "admin"
  ],
  "require_same_ip": true
}

```

Client-side hostkey: use plain host keys uploaded to SPS, and generate X.509 certificates for the connection.

```

"client_side_hostkey": {
  "plain_hostkey": {
    "dsa_key": "<id-of-dsa-key>",
    "enabled": true,
    "rsa_key": "<id-of-rsa-key>"
  },
  "x509_hostkey": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509": {
      "selection": "generate",
      "signing_ca": "<key-of-signing-ca>"
    }
  }
}

```

Policies: configure only the required policies.

```

"policies": {
  "aa_plugin": null,
  "analytics_policy": null,
  "archive_cleanup_policy": null,
  "audit_policy": "<key-of-audit-policy>",
  "authentication_policy": "<key-of-auth-policy>",
  "backup_policy": null,
  "channel_policy": "<key-of-channel-policy>",
  "credential_store": null,
  "ldap_server": null,
  "settings": "<key-of-settings-policy>",
  "usermapping_policy": null
}

```

Server-side hostkey: accept the host key or X.509 certificate presented at the first connection, and require the same host key or certificate for any subsequent connections.

```

"server_side_hostkey": {
  "plain_hostkey": {
    "enabled": true,
    "hostkey_check": "accept-first-time"
  },
  "x509_hostkey": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509_check": {
      "selection": "accept-first-time"
    }
  }
}

```

Server-side hostkey: only accept X.509 certificates that are verified by a trusted CA.

```

"server_side_hostkey": {
  "plain_hostkey": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "x509_hostkey": {
    "enabled": true,
    "x509_check": {
      "selection": "accept-signed-by",
      "trusted_ca": "<id-of-trusted-ca>"
    }
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add an SSH connection policy

To add an SSH connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new SSH connection policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/connections/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new SSH connection policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections/a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an SSH connection policy

To modify an SSH connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the SSH connection policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/connections/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## SSH channels

The available SSH channel types and their functionalities are described below. For details on configuring channel policies, see [Channel policy](#).

Channel	Special options	Description
auth-agent	None	<b>Agent:</b> Forwards the SSH authentication agent from the client to the server.
x11	Yes	<b>X11 Forward:</b> Forwards the graphical X-server session from the server to the client. List the address of the client in the <code>networks</code> field to permit X11-forwarding only to the specified clients. Specify IP addresses or networks (in IP address/Prefix format). For example:

```
"networks": [  
  {  
    "selection": "address",  
    "value": "192.168.1.1"  
  },  
  {  
    "selection": "address",  
    "value": "192.168.1.2"  
  }  
]
```

Channel	Special options	Description
		<p><b>NOTE:</b> Certain client applications send the Target address as a hostname, while others as an IP address. If you are using a mix of different client applications, you might have to duplicate the channel rules and create IP-address and hostname versions of the same rule.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>networks (list):</b> To X11-forwarding only to specific clients, list the IP addresses or networks of the clients in this field. Leave it empty to permit access to every client. For details, see <a href="#">Limiting addresses in port forwarding</a>.</li> </ul>

local-forwards	Yes	<p><b>Local Forward:</b> Forwards traffic arriving to a local port of the client to a remote host. To enable forwarding only between selected hosts, use the <code>local_forwards</code> field. If the <code>local_forwards</code> field is empty, local forwarding is enabled without restriction, the client may forward any traffic to the remote host.</p>
----------------	-----	--

For example:

```
"local_forwards": [
  {
    "host_address": {
      "selection": "address",
      "value": "192.168.100.1"
    },
    "host_port": 5555,
    "originator_address": {
      "selection": "address",
      "value": "192.168.1.1"
    }
  }
]
```

Channel-specific access control rules:

- **local\_forwards (list):** To permit local forwarding only to specific addresses, list the addresses in this field. Leave it empty to enable without restriction. In this case the client may forward any traffic to the remote host.

Enter the source of the forwarded traffic into the `originator_address` field, the target of the traffic into the `host_address` field. Specify IP addresses or networks (in IP address/Prefix format). These parameters are the end-



Channel	Special options	Description
		points of the forwarded traffic (that is, the local host that sends data to the remote host), and not the SSH server or the client. For example, to enable forwarding from the 192.168.20.20 host to the remote host 192.168.50.50, enter 192.168.20.20 into the <code>originator_address</code> , and 192.168.50.50 into the <code>host_address</code> field. For details, see <a href="#">Limiting addresses in port forwarding</a> .
remote-forwards	Yes	<b>Remote Forward:</b> Forwards traffic arriving a remote port of the server to the client. To enable forwarding only between selected hosts, enter their IP addresses into the <code>remote_forwards</code> field. If the <code>remote_forwards</code> field is empty, remote forwarding is enabled without restriction, the SSH server may forward any traffic to the client.

For example:

```
"remote_forwards": [
  {
    "connected_address": {
      "selection": "address",
      "value": "192.168.100.1"
    },
    "connected_port": 5555,
    "originator_address": {
      "selection": "address",
      "value": "192.168.1.1"
    }
  }
]
```

Channel-specific access control rules:

- `remote_forwards` (list): To permit only specific forwardins, list the permitted addresses in this field. Leave it empty to permit forwarding without restrictions.

Enter the source of the forwarded traffic into the `originator_address`, the target of the traffic into the `connected_address` field. Specify IP addresses or networks (in IP address/Prefix format). These parameters are the end-points of the forwarded traffic (that is, the remote host that sends data to the client), and not the SSH server. For example, to enable forwarding from the 192.168.20.20 remote host to the client 192.168.50.50, enter 192.168.20.20 into the `originator_address`, and 192.168.50.50 into the `connected_address` field. For

Channel	Special options	Description
		details, see <a href="#">Limiting addresses in port forwarding</a> .
session-exec	Yes	<p><b>Session Exec:</b> Execute a remote command (for example <code>rsync</code>) without opening a session shell. List the permitted command in the <code>execs</code> field. You can use regular expressions to specify the commands. This field can contain only letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9), and the following special characters (<code>{ } ( ) * ? \ \   [ ]</code>).</p> <p><b>CAUTION:</b> Restricting the commands available in Session Exec channels does not guarantee that no other commands can be executed. Commands can be renamed, or executed from shell scripts to circumvent such restrictions.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>execs (list)</code>: List the permitted command in the <code>execs</code> field. Regular expressions may be used to specify the commands.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"execs": [   "top",   "ls"</pre>
session-exec-scp	Yes	<p><b>Session Exec SCP:</b> Transfers files using the Secure Copy (SCP) protocol.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>log_transfer_to_db (list)</code>: (true false): Make the list of file operations available in the <b>Search &gt; File operations</b> column of the SPS web interface</li> <li><code>log_transfer_to_syslog (list)</code>: (true false): Send the file operations into the system log</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"actions": {   "audit": false,   "four_eyes": false,   "ids": false,</pre>

Channel	Special options	Description
		<pre>"log_transfer_to_db": true, "log_transfer_to_syslog": true }</pre>
session-subsystem	Yes	<p><b>Session Subsystem:</b> Use a subsystem. Enter the name of the permitted subsystem into the subsystems field.</p> <p>Channel-specific access control rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>subsystems (list): List the permitted subsystems in this field.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"execs": [   "top",   "ls"</pre>
session-exec-sftp	Yes	<p><b>Session SFTP:</b> Transfers files using the Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP).</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>log_transfer_to_db (list): (true false): Make the list of file operations available in the <b>Search &gt; File operations</b> column of the SPS web interface</li> <li>log_transfer_to_syslog (list): (true false): Send the file operations into the system log</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre>"actions": {   "audit": false,   "four_eyes": false,   "ids": false,   "log_transfer_to_db": true,   "log_transfer_to_syslog": true }</pre>
session-shell	Yes	<p><b>Session Shell:</b> The traditional remote terminal session.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>content_policy reference: The ID of the Content policy to apply to the connection.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p>

Channel	Special options	Description
		<pre>"actions": {   "audit": true,   "content_policy": {     "key": "433849548566ab327522e6"   },   "four_eyes": false,   "ids": false }</pre>

## Limiting addresses in port forwarding

The `connected_address`, `host_address`, `network`, and `originator_address` options that you can use in SSH channel policies that allow port-forwarding and X11 forwarding have the following parameters.

Element	Type	Description
<code>connected_address</code> , <code>host_address</code> , <code>network</code> , or <code>originator_address</code>	list of JSON objects	Container objects for limiting access to port-forwarding in SSH channel policies. For details, see <a href="#">SSH channels</a> on page 611.
	selection	address or network
	value	IPv4 address or network

## SSH authentication policies

Lists the configured authentication methods that can be used in a connection. Each connection policy uses an authentication policy to determine how the client can authenticate to the target server. Separate authentication methods can be used on the client and the server-side of the connection.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists SSH authentication policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing SSH authentication policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-200",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/-200"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "1895203635707e3340262f",
      "meta": {
```

```

        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_
policies/1895203635707e3340262f"
    }
}
],
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "backend": {
      "selection": "none"
    },
    "gateway_methods": {
      "kerberos": false,
      "password": false,
      "public_key": false
    },
    "relayed_methods": {
      "kerberos": false,
      "keyboard_interactive": true,
      "password": true,
      "public_key": {
        "selection": "agent"
      }
    }
  },
  "name": "base",
  "key": "-200",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/-200",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/-200",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_
policies/1895203635707e3340262f",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_
policies/1895203635707e3340262f",

```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Elements of authentication policies	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element	Contains the elements of the policy.
<a href="#">backend</a>	Top level item	The authentication database used on the client-side.
<a href="#">gateway_methods</a>	Top level item	Client-side gateway authentication settings. The value of selection defines which authentication method is used.
mode	Top level element	Obsolete node. Any settings submitted into this node is ignored. In a response, this node may contain inaccurate data.
name	string	The name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
<a href="#">relayed_methods</a>	Top level element	Server-side authentication settings.

Elements of backend	Type	Description
selection	string	<p>Defines the authentication method for client-side gateway authentication. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none Disables client-side gateway authentication.</li> <li>• ldap Uses the LDAP server selected for the connection policy. LDAP servers can be configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers</code> endpoint).</li> </ul> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the password and</p>

Elements of backend	Type	Description
		<p>public_key elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>local           <p>Uses the local user database configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</code> endpoint.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the password, public_key, and user_database elements.</p> </li> <li>radius           <p>Uses one or more Radius servers for authentication.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the authentication_protocol and servers elements.</p> </li> </ul>
enabled	boolean	Set it to true to enable public key-based client-side authentication.
user_database	string	<p>References the key of the local user database. You can configure local user databases at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/">/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a local user database, use the value of the returned key as the value of the user_database element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
servers	Top level list	<p>Defines the properties of the RADIUS servers used for client-side authentication.</p> <p>A valid list item consists of the address, port and shared_secret elements.</p>
address	Top level element	Defines the address of a RADIUS server.
selection	string	Required child of the address element. Possible values are:



Elements of backend	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ip</li> </ul> <p>The value element contains the IP of the RADIUS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn</li> </ul> <p>The value element contains the FQDN of the RADIUS server.</p>
value	string	The IP or the FQDN address of the RADIUS server.
port	int	The port number of the RADIUS server.
shared_secret	string	<p>References the key of the shared secret for the RADIUS server. You can configure shared secrets at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a shared secret, use the value of the returned key as the value of the shared_secret element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>Alternatively, you can include the new password as plain text.</p> <pre>"shared_secret": {   "plain": "&lt;new-password&gt;" }</pre>
authentication_protocol	Top level item	RADIUS setting. Set to pap to use the Password Authentication Protocol. To use the Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol, set it to chap.

Elements of gateway_methods	Type	Description
kerberos	boolean	<p>Authentication based using Kerberos.</p> <p>Set it to true to enable Kerberos-based client-side authentication. If required, you can select other gateway authentication methods in addition to Kerberos, and also authentication backends and related to the selected gateway authentication methods.</p>

Elements of gateway_methods	Type	Description
		To use Kerberos authentication on the target server, you must use Kerberos authentication both on the SPS gateway and on the target server (in relayed_methods).
password	boolean	Authentication based on username and password. Set it to true to enable password-based client-side authentication.
public_key	Top level item	Authentication based on public-private encryption keypairs.

Elements of relayed_methods	Type	Description
kerberos	boolean	Authentication based using Kerberos.  Set it to true to enable Kerberos-based client-side authentication. If required, you can select other gateway authentication methods in addition to Kerberos, and also authentication backends and related to the selected gateway authentication methods.  To use Kerberos authentication on the target server, you must use Kerberos authentication both on the SPS gateway and on the target server (in relayed_methods).
keyboard_interactive	boolean	Authentication based on exchanging messages between the user and the server. This method includes authentication schemes like S/Key or TIS authentication. Depending on the configuration of the SSH server, might have to be used together with password-based authentication.  Set to true to enable interactive authentication on the remote server.
password	boolean	Authentication based on username and password.  Set to true to enable password-based authentication on the remote server.
public_key	Top level item	Authentication based on public-private encryption keypairs.  Use the selection child element to disable or

Elements of relayed_ methods	Type	Description
		configure authentication using public-private keypairs on the remote server.
selection	string	<p>Configures authenticaton on the remote server using public-private keypairs. The following values are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disabled Disables the authentication method.</li> <li>publish_to_ldap SPS generates a keypair, and uses this keypair in the server-side connection. The public key of this keypair is also uploaded to the LDAP database set in the LDAP Server of the connection policy. That way the server can authenticate the client to the generated public key stored under the user's username in the LDAP database. You can configure LDAP servers using the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers</a> endpoint, and connection policies using the <a href="#">/api/configuration/ssh/connections</a> endpoint.</li> <li>fix Uses a private key in the server-side connection. You have to use the <code>private_key</code> element to reference the private key.</li> <li>agent Allow the client to use agent-forwarding, and use its own keypair on the server-side.  If this option is used, SPS requests the client to use its SSH agent to authenticate on the target server. Therefore, you must configure your clients to enable agent forwarding, otherwise authentication will fail. For details on enabling agent forwarding in your SSH application, see the documentation of the application.</li> </ul>

Elements of relayed_methods	Type	Description
private_key	string	<p>References the key of the private key used for authenticating with a public-private keypair on the remote server. You can configure private keys at the <a href="/api/configuration/private_keys/">/api/configuration/private_keys/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a private key, use the value of the returned key as the value of the private_key element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>

### Examples:

Password authentication against LDAP on the client side, and using a username and password on the remote server:

```
{
  "backend": {
    "selection": "ldap"
  },
  "gateway_methods": {
    "kerberos": false,
    "password": true,
    "public_key": false
  },
  "name": "password_ldap",
  "relayed_methods": {
    "kerberos": false,
    "keyboard_interactive": false,
    "password": true,
    "public_key": {
      "selection": "disabled"
    }
  }
}
```

Password authentication against a local user database on SPS, and using a username and password on the remote server. You can find the key of the local user database is available at the [/api/configuration/policies/user\\_databases/](/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/) endpoint.

```
{
  "backend": {
    "selection": "local",
    "user_database": "<key-of-the-local-user-database>"
  },
}
```

```

    "gateway_methods": {
      "kerberos": false,
      "password": true,
      "public_key": true
    },
    "relayed_methods": {
      "kerberos": false,
      "keyboard_interactive": false,
      "password": true,
      "public_key": {
        "selection": "disabled"
      }
    },
    "name": "passwords",
  }
}

```

Authenticating against an RADIUS server on the client side, and using a username and password on the remote server. You can configure the key of the shared secret at the </api/configuration/passwords/> endpoint. The IP of the RADIUS server is used.

```

{
  "backend": {
    "authentication_protocol": "pap",
    "selection": "radius",
    "servers": [
      {
        "address": {
          "selection": "ip",
          "value": "192.168.1.1"
        },
        "port": 1812,
        "shared_secret": <key-of-shared-secret>,
      }
    ]
  },
  "gateway_methods": {
    "kerberos": false,
    "password": true,
    "public_key": false
  },
  "relayed_methods": {
    "kerberos": false,
    "keyboard_interactive": true,
    "password": true,
    "public_key": {

```

```

        "selection": "agent"
    },
    "name": "RADIUS"
}

```

Using Kerberos authentication both on the client side and on the remote server.

```

{
    "backend": {
        "selection": "none"
    },
    "gateway_methods": {
        "kerberos": true,
        "password": false,
        "public_key": false
    },
    "name": "kerberos_only",
    "relayed_methods": {
        "kerberos": true,
        "keyboard_interactive": false,
        "password": true,
        "public_key": {
            "selection": "disabled"
        }
    }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

Code	Description	Notes
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add an SSH authentication policy

To add an SSH authentication policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Elements of authentication policies](#). The elements of `gateway_methods` are listed in [Elements of gateway\\_methods](#). The elements of `relayed_methods` are listed in [Elements of relayed\\_methods](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "6f924f39-e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/6f924f39-e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an SSH authentication policy

To modify an SSH authentication policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Elements of authentication policies](#). The elements of `gateway_methods` are listed in [Elements of gateway\\_methods](#). The elements of `relayed_methods` are listed in [Elements of relayed\\_methods](#).

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# Global SSH options

List of options that affect all SSH connections.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/options
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists global SSH options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/options
```



## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global SSH options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "channel_database_cleanup_days": 600,
        "enabled": true
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "gssapi": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/options",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ssh/connections",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global SSH options.
<a href="#">audit</a>	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level	Global setting to enable SSH connections, and

Element	Type	Description
	item	specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable SSH connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of SSH connections.
gssapi	Top level item	Deprecated setting.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for SSH connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of SSH connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for SSH connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of SSH connection metadata, set this element to true.
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for SSH connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set local to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set remote to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
server_url	string	Required for remote timestamping. The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
oid	Top level	The Object Identifier of the policy

Elements of audit	Type	Description
	item	used for timestamping.
enabled	boolean	Required for remote timestamping. Set to true to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
policy_oid	string	Required if the oid is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
signing_interval	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

### Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "gssapi": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
  },
}
```

```

    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "gssapi": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "gssapi": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {

```

```

    "oid": {
      "enabled": true,
      "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
    },
    "selection": "remote",
    "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
    "signing_interval": 30
  }
},
"gssapi": {
  "enabled": false
},
"service": {
  "enabled": true,
  "log_level": 4
}
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Modify global SSH settings

To modify global SSH settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Modify the JSON object of the global SSH settings endpoint.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# SSH settings policies

SSH settings policies define protocol-level settings (algorithms, greetings and banners, timeout). You can create multiple policies, and choose the appropriate one for each SSH connection.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists SSH settings policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing SSH settings policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-300",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/-300"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "236283841571912b948b88",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/236283841571912b948b88"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/ssh/options",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "default",
    "timeout": 600,
    "inactivity_timeout": {
      "enabled": true
    }
  }
}
```

```

    "value": 13000
  },
  "preconnect_channel_check": false,
  "greeting": "",
  "userauth_banner": "",
  "software_version": "SSH",
  "strict_mode": true,
  "client_side_algorithms": {
    "kex": ["diffie-hellman-group14-sha1", "diffie-hellman-group1-sha1"],
    "cipher": ["aes128-ctr", "aes192-ctr", "aes256-ctr", "aes128-cbc",
"blowfish-cbc", "cast128-cbc", "aes192-cbc", "aes256-cbc", "3des-cbc",
"arcfour"],
    "mac": ["hmac-sha1", "hmac-md5"],
    "compression": ["none"]
  },
  "server_side_algorithms": {
    "kex": ["diffie-hellman-group14-sha1", "diffie-hellman-group1-sha1"],
    "cipher": ["aes128-ctr", "aes192-ctr", "aes256-ctr", "aes128-cbc",
"blowfish-cbc", "cast128-cbc", "aes192-cbc", "aes256-cbc", "3des-cbc",
"arcfour"],
    "mac": ["hmac-sha1", "hmac-md5"],
    "compression": ["none"]
  }
},
"key": "236283841571912b948b88",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/-300",
  "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/236283841571912b948b88",
  "last": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/236283841571912b948b88",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/-300",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the SSH settings policy.
client_side_algorithms	Top level element (list)	Lists the permitted client-side encryption parameters.



Element	Type	Description
cipher	list	Lists the permitted client-side cipher algorithms.
compression	list	Lists the permitted client-side compression algorithms.
kex	list	Lists the permitted client-side KEX algorithms.
mac	list	Lists the permitted client-side MAC algorithms.
greeting	string	Greeting message for the connection.
name	string	Name of the SSH settings policy.
preconnect_channel_check	boolean	<p>Before establishing the server-side connection, SPS can evaluate the connection and channel policies to determine if the connection might be permitted at all. The server-side connection is established only if the evaluated policies permit the client to access the server.</p> <p>To enable this function, set the parameter to true.</p>
server_side_algorithms	Top level element (list)	Lists the permitted server-side encryption parameters.
cipher	list	Lists the permitted server-side cipher algorithms.
compression	list	Lists the permitted server-side compression algorithms.
kex	list	Lists the permitted server-side KEX algorithms.
mac	list	Lists the permitted server-side MAC algorithms.
software_version	string	Specifies additional text to append to the SSH protocol banner sent by the server upon connection.
strict_mode	boolean	When this option is enabled, SPS rejects connections that use unrealistic parameters (for example,

Element	Type	Description
		<p>terminals of thousand by thousand characters) and port-forwarding connections where the address in the port-forwarding request and the channel-opening request does not match. Note that this can interfere with certain client or server applications.</p> <p>Strict mode is allowed by default. To turn it off, set the parameter to false.</p>
timeout	int	Connection timeout, in seconds.
inactivity_timeout	Top level element	
enabled	boolean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: If no user activity is detected, it terminates the session after the configured time has passed since the last user activity.</li> <li>• false: No user inactivity timeout.</li> </ul>
value	int	<p>Only if enabled is true</p> <p>The value of user activity timeout. Must be greater than or equal to the value of timeout</p>
userauth_banner	string	<p>You can display a banner message to the clients before authentication (as specified in RFC 4252 â The Secure Shell (SSH) Authentication Protocol). You can use this banner to inform the users that the connection is audited.</p>

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add SSH settings policies

To add a settings policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "59790911-415c-4ed3-a0d2-1164637472ca",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/59790911-415c-4ed3-a0d2-1164637472ca",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify SSH settings policies

To modify a settings policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/ssh/settings_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## SSH host keys and certificates

SPS stores the host keys and X.509 certificates of the trusted servers. When a client tries to connect to a server, SPS verifies the host key or the certificate of the server, and allows connections only to the servers that have their keys available on SPS (unless the SSH Connection Policy is configured differently).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the SSH host keys and certificates of the servers that the users can connect to using SSH.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific key.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing SSH host keys and certificates from the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys/` endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

The key of these objects is in the following format: `<type-of-the-key>-<host-address>:<host-port>`.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys",
    "parent": "/api"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "ssh-dss-10.110.0.1:22",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-dss-10.110.0.1:22"}
    },
    {
      "key": "ssh-dss-10.110.0.2:2222",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-dss-10.110.0.2:2222"}
    },
    {
      "key": "ssh-rsa-10.110.0.1:22",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-rsa-10.110.0.1:22"}
    },
    {
      "key": "x509v3-sign-rsa-d00::2222:dead:2222",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/x509v3-sign-rsa-d00::2222:dead:2222"}
    }
  ]
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific host key, the response is the following.

```
{
  "key": "ssh-rsa-10.10.100.1:22",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-rsa-10.10.100.1:22",
    "parent": "/api/ssh-host-keys"
  },
  "ssh-rsa-10.10.100.1:22": {
    "address": "10.10.100.1",
    "port": 22,
    "type": {
      "selection": "ssh-rsa",
      "value": "AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAQEAxrtNxBZieXhBI2gJoAdsJKNq...=="
    }
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the host key or certificate in the following format: <type-of-the-key>-<host-address>:<host-port>
<id-of-the-host-key>	Top level element (string)	The ID of the host key or certificate in the following format: <type-of-the-key>-<host-address>:<host-port>.
address	string	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the host that the key belongs to. Note that for IPv6 addresses, this is always the canonical format of the address.
port	number	The port number where the host uses the key or certificate.
type	JSON object	The ID of the host key or certificate in the following format: <type-of-the-key>-<host-address>:<host-port>.
selection	string	Specifies the type of the host key. Possible values: ssh-rsa, ssh-dss, x509v3-sign-rsa, x509v3-sign-dss
value	string	The host key or certificate as a string in PEM format.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Search and filter host keys

To list only specific host keys, you can use the following filters.

- List every host key and certificate:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys
```

- List host keys of a specific type:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys?type=<type-to-list>
```

Possible values: `ssh-rsa`, `ssh-dss`, `x509v3-sign-rsa`, `x509v3-sign-dss`. For example:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys?type=ssh-rsa
```

- List host keys for a specific port number:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys?port=<port-number-to-list>
```

- List host keys for a specific host address (IPv4 or IPv6):

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys?address=<host-address>
```

- For a complex filter, separate the parameters with an ampersand (&) character, for example:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys?port=<port-number-to-list>&type=<type-to-list>
```

The response to such requests is a JSON object, where the items list includes the IDs of the selected host keys (or an empty list). For example, filtering for ssh-dss keys could return a similar list:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys",
    "parent": "/api"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "ssh-dss-10.110.0.1:22",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-dss-10.110.0.1:22"}
    },
    {
      "key": "ssh-dss-10.110.0.2:2222",
      "meta": {"href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-dss-10.110.0.2:2222"}
    }
  ]
}
```

## Add new host key

To upload a new host key or certificate, you have to POST the host key and other data as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys` endpoint. For details, see [Create a new object](#) on page 45. The body of the POST request must contain a JSON object with the parameters listed in [Element](#) . If the POST request is successful, the response includes an ID for the host key in the following format: `<type-of-the-key>-<host-address>:<host-port>`. For example:

```
{
  "address": "10.110.0.1",
  "port": 22,
  "type": {
    "selection": "ssh-rsa",
    "value": "AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAAD...zvMwgc=="
  }
}
```

Note that for IPv6 addresses, SPS will automatically convert the address to its canonical format.

## Delete host key

To delete a host key or certificate, you have to DELETE `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/ssh-host-keys/<ID-of-the-host-key>` endpoint. For details, see [Delete an object](#) on page 43. If the DELETE request is successful, the response includes only the meta object, for example:



```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/ssh-host-keys/ssh-rsa-10.10.20.35:22",
    "parent": "/api/ssh-host-keys"
  }
}
```

You must commit your changes to actually delete the object from SPS.

## Telnet connections

### Telnet connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of Telnet connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for Telnet connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "authentication_policies",
      "meta": { "href":
"/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies" }
    },
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_
policies" }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections" }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/options" }
    },
    {
      "key": "pattern_sets",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets"
    }
  ]
},
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
  "href": "/api/configuration/telnet",
  "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
  "next": "/api/configuration/troubleshooting",
  "parent": "/api/configuration",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/ssh",
  "remaining_seconds": 600,
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}
```

Item	Description
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of Telnet connection policies.
<a href="#">channel_policies</a>	List of available Telnet channel types.

Item	Description
<a href="#">authentication_policies</a>	List of the configured authentication methods that can be used in a connection.
<a href="#">pattern_sets</a>	List of the default and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global Telnet options that affect all connections.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Telnet connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/connections/
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists Telnet connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/connections/<connection-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing Telnet connection policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "8348340645707e2575e3c6",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections/8348340645707e2575e3c6"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies",
```

```

    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections",
    "last": "/api/configuration/telnet/options",
    "next": "/api/configuration/telnet/options",
    "order": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections/@order",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific Telnet Connection Policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access_control": [],
    "active": true,
    "channel_database_cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "client_side_transport_security": {
      "selection": "disabled"
    },
    "indexing": {
      "enabled": true,
      "policy": {
        "key": "-50000",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000"
        }
      }
    },
    "priority": 3
  },
  "log_audit_trail_downloads": true,
  "name": "demo_telnet",
  "network": {
    "clients": [
      "0.0.0.0/0"
    ],
    "ports": [
      23
    ],
    "targets": [
      "10.30.255.0/24"
    ]
  },
  "override_log_level": {

```

```

        "enabled": true,
        "log_level": 3
    },
    "policies": {
        "aa_plugin": null,
        "analytics_policy": {
            "key": "20509709385cd578654cdab",
            "meta": {
                "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/20509709385cd578654cdab"
            }
        },
        "archive_cleanup_policy": null,
        "audit_policy": {
            "key": "78101850949e47437dd91d",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_
policies/78101850949e47437dd91d"
            }
        },
        "authentication_policy": {
            "key": "-400",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/telnet#authentication_policies/-
400"
            }
        },
        "backup_policy": null,
        "channel_policy": {
            "key": "-30200",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies/-30200"
            }
        },
        "credential_store": null,
        "ldap_server": null,
        "settings": {
            "key": "-302",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/telnet#settings_policies/-302"
            }
        },
        "usermapping_policy": null
    },
    "rate_limit": {
        "enabled": false
    },
    "server_address": {

```

```

        "custom_dns": {
            "enabled": false
        },
        "selection": "original"
    },
    "server_side_transport_security": {
        "selection": "disabled"
    },
    "source_address": {
        "selection": "box_address"
    },
    "web_gateway_authentication": {
        "enabled": false
    }
},
"key": "18762920615d68fa3d858d0",
"meta": {
    "first":
"/api/configuration/telnet/connections/18762920615d68fa3d858d0",
    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections/18762920615d68fa3d858d0",
    "last": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections/18762920615d68fa3d858d0",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the connection policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the connection policy.
access_control	Top level list	Collection of access policies. Access policies define who can authorize and audit a connection.
active	boolean	Set to false to suspend the connection policy. Connection settings are preserved.
channel_	Top	Configures cleanup of the connection



Element		Type	Description
database_cleanup		level item	metadata on the connection policy's level.
client_side_transport_security		Top level item	<p>Defines the Transport Layer Security (TLS) settings for the connection between SPS and the client. For example:</p> <pre>"client_side_transport_security": {   "selection": "disabled" },</pre>
	days	int	<p>Retention time, in days. Must not exceed the retention time of the archive_cleanup_policy, and the retention time configured in the global settings of the protocol.</p> <p>The global settings of the Telnet protocol are available at the <a href="#">api/configuration/telnet/options</a> endpoint.</p>
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable periodical cleanup of the connection metadata.
indexing		Top level item	Configures indexing for the connection policy.
	enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable indexing the connections.
	policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the indexing policy. You can configure indexing policies at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/policies/indexing/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an indexing policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
	priority	int	<p>Specifies the indexing priority for the connection. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5 Very low priority.</li> <li>4</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>Low priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3</li> </ul> <p>Normal (default) priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2</li> </ul> <p>High priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1</li> </ul> <p>Very high priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0</li> </ul> <p>Near real-time priority.</p>
log_audit_trail_downloads	boolean	Set to true to log audit trail downloads.
name	string	The name of the connection policy.
network		
	clients	list, string List of client ("from") IP addresses.
	ports	list, integer-s List of target ports.
	targets	list, string List of target IP addresses.
override_log_level	Top level item	<p>Specifies the verbosity level of sessions handled by this connection policy. The log level of other connection policies is not affected. If disabled, the log level set at the <code>/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/options</code> endpoint is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To use the default log level, disable this option:</li> </ul> <pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": false },</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To use a custom log level for the connection policy, enable this option and set the log level to use:</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>"override_log_level": {   "enabled": true,   "log_level": 5 },</pre>
policies	Top level item	List of policies referenced by the connection policy.
aa_plugin	string	<p>References the identifier of the AA plug-in. You can configure AA plug-ins at the <a href="/api/configuration/plugins/aa/">/api/configuration/plugins/aa/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an AA plug-in, use the value of the returned key as the value of the aa_plugin element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
analytics_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the analytics policy. You can configure analytics policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/analytics/">/api/configuration/analytics/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To add or modify an analytics policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the analytics element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
archive_cleanup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the archive/cleanup policy. You can configure archive and cleanup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/archive_cleanup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an archive/cleanup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the archive_cleanup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
audit_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the audit policy. You can configure audit policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an audit policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of</p>

Element	Type	Description
		the audit_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
authentication_policy	string	<p>Cannot be null.</p> <p>References the identifier of the authentication policy. Note that currently you cannot create or modify Telnet Authentication Policies using the REST API. Use the web UI instead.</p> <p>To modify or add an authentication policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the authentication_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
backup_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the backup policy. You can configure backup policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/backup_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a backup policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the backup_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
channel_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of the channel policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the channel_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>You can configure Telnet channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies/">/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies/</a> endpoint.</p>
credential_store	string	<p>References the identifier of the credential store.</p> <p>You can configure credential stores at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/">/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a credential store, use the value of the returned key as the value of the credential_store element, and</p>

Element	Type	Description
		remove any child elements (including the key).
ldap_server	string	<p>References the identifier of the LDAP server. You can configure LDAP servers at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/">/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add an LDAP server, use the value of the returned key as the value of the ldap_server element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
settings	string	<p>References the identifier of the settings policy. The value of this option cannot be null.</p> <p>To modify or add a settings policy for this protocol, use the value of the returned key as the value of the settings element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
usermapping_policy	string	<p>References the identifier of a Usermapping Policy. You can configure Usermapping Policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/">/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a Usermapping Policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the usermapping_policies element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
rate_limit	Top level element	Connection rate limit.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to provide a connection rate limit.
value	int	The number of connections (per minute) that are allowed in the connection policy.
<a href="#">server_address</a>	Top level item	Defines the address where the clients connect to.
<a href="#">server_side_</a>	Top	Defines the Transport Layer Security

Element	Type	Description
transport_security	level item	<p>(TLS) settings for the connection between SPS and the server. For example:</p> <pre>"server_side_transport_security": {   "selection": "disabled" },</pre>
source_address	Top level element	Allows you to configure Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) on the server side of SPS. SNAT determines the IP address SPS uses in the server-side connection. The target server will see the connection coming from this address.
selection	string	<p>Configures Source Network Address Translation. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>box_address Default. Uses the network address of the logical interface of SPS.</li> <li>original Uses the IP address of the client, as seen by SPS.</li> <li>fix Uses a fixed address when connecting to the remote server. Must be used with the address element.</li> </ul>
address	string	<p>Must be used if the value of the selection element is set to fix.</p> <p>The IP address to use as the source address in server-side connections.</p>
web_gateway_authentication	Top level item	When gateway authentication is required for a connection, the user must authenticate on SPS as well. This additional authentication can be performed out-of-band on the SPS web interface for every protocol.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable additional gateway authentication on the SPS web interface.
groups	list,	By default, any user can perform

Element	Type	Description
	string	gateway authentication for the connections. You can restrict authentication to members of specific usergroups. Define the usergroups at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint, and list the name of each group here.
require_same_ip	boolean	Set to true to only accept web gateway authentication from the same host that initiated the connection.

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
authorizer	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) who can authorize or audit the connection.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
permission	string	<p>Defines the permissions of the authorizer usergroup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>audit <p>The usergroup with the audit permission can monitor ongoing connections, and download the audit trails of a closed and indexed connection.</p> </li> <li>authorize <p>The usergroup with the authorize permission can authorize connection requests.</p> </li> <li>audit_and_authorize <p>The usergroup with the audit_and_authorize permission can authorize connection requests, monitor connections, and download the audit trail of closed and indexed connections.</p> </li> </ul>
require_different_ip	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its subject to have different IP addresses.
require_	boolean	Set to true to require the authorizing user and its

Elements of access_control	Type	Description
different_username		subject to have different usernames.
subject	Top level item	Defines the subjects of the access control policy.
group	string	<p>The usergroup (local or LDAP) that is subject to the access control policy.</p> <p>Local usergroups can be added or modified at the <a href="/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/">/api/configuration/aaa/local_database/groups/</a> endpoint.</p>
selection	string	<p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>everybody <p>Every user is subject to the access control policy.</p> </li> <li>only <p>Requires the group element.</p> <p>Members of the usergroup specified in the group element are subject to the access control policy.</p> </li> </ul>

## Elements of client\_side\_transport\_security

Elements of client_side_transport_security	Type	Description
peer_certificate_check	Top level item	<p>Sets how SPS authenticates the peers. To permit connections from peers without requesting a certificate, set "enabled": false, for example:</p> <pre>"peer_certificate_check": {   "enabled": false }</pre> <p>To validate the certificate of the peer, set "enabled": true, and reference a <a href="#">trusted certificate authority list</a>, for example:</p>



## Elements of client\_ side\_transport\_ security

### Type

### Description

		<pre>"peer_certificate_check": {   "enabled": true,   "trusted_ca": "cfc815e5-dadb-4eb9-a628- 12ae0c12d358" }</pre>
selection	string	<p>Sets the encryption settings used between SPS and the client. When the connection is encrypted, SPS has to show a certificate to the client, so you must configure the <code>sps_certificate</code> option as well. The possible values of selection are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>starttls</code> Enable encrypted connections that use the STARTTLS method. Note that the peer must use the STARTTLS method. Unencrypted connections will be terminated after a brief period.</li><li>• <code>tls</code> Require encryption.</li></ul>
sps_ certificate	JSON object	<p>Sets the certificate that SPS shows to the peer when the communication is encrypted. SPS can either use the same certificate for every session, or generate a separate certificate for each session.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To use the same certificate for every session, set selection: <code>"fix"</code> and reference the certificate to use in the <code>x509_identity</code> option, for example:</li></ul> <pre>"sps_certificate": {   "selection": "fix",   "x509_identity": "&lt;'key' of an uploaded certificate&gt;" },</pre> <p>For details on uploading certificates to SPS, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To generate a certificate for every session, set selection: <code>"generate"</code> and reference the certificate authority to sign the generated certificates in the <code>signing_ca</code> option, for example:</li></ul>

Elements of client_ side_transport_ security	Type	Description
--	------	-------------

```
"sps_certificate": {
  "selection": "generate",
  "signing_ca": "2221b768-0722-4298-
9e16-ce67eb3723ad"
},
```

For details on using signing certificates, see [Signing CA policies](#).

## Elements of server\_address

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
----------------------------	------	-------------

custom_dns	string	Configures a DNS server that is used to reverse-resolve the hostname if the Channel Policy contains the address of the target as a hostname instead of an IP address. By default, this is disabled and SPS uses the DNS server set in the <a href="#">/api/configuration/network/dns</a> endpoint.
------------	--------	--

- To use the default DNS, disable this option:

```
"server_address": {
  "custom_dns": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  ...
},
```

- To use a custom DNS, enable this option and set the IP address of the domain name server to use:

```
"server_address": {
  "custom_dns": {
    "enabled": true,
    "server":
"192.168.1.1"
  }
},
```

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		<pre> }, ... }, </pre>
selection	string	<p>Configures the address where the clients connect to. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>original Connect to the same address specified by the client.</li> <li>nat Perform a network address translation on the target address. Must be used with the network element.</li> <li>fix Must be used with the address and port elements.</li> <li>inband Extract the address of the server from the username. Must be used with the domains element. Optional elements: exception_domains, dns_server, and dns_suffixes.</li> </ul>
network	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to nat. The target address in IP/prefix format. Example: "10.20.30.40/24".</p>
address	string	<p>Must be used if selection is set to fix. The IP address of the target server.</p>
port	int	<p>Must be used if selection is set to fix. The port of the target server.</p>
domains	Top level list	<p>Must be used if selection is set to inband.</p>
domain	Top level item	<p>Lists the address ranges that are included in the connection policy.</p>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the target address range is provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the target address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the target address is a domain.</li> </ul>
value	string	<p>The address range of the target server (s).</p> <p>Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>
port	int	The port of the target server(s).
exception_domains	Top level list	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>Lists the address ranges that are excluded from the connection policy.</p>
domain	Top level item	Contains the excluded address range.
selection	string	<p>Specifies if the excluded address(es) are provided as a domain or as an IP range. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>address The value of the excluded address is an IP range.</li> <li>domain The value of the excluded address is a domain.</li> </ul>
value	string	<p>The excluded address(es).</p> <p>Use the selection element to specify if the address is an IP range, or a domain.</p>
port	int	The excluded port.
dns_server	string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>IP address or the hostname of the</p>

Elements of server_address	Type	Description
		domain name server used to resolve the address of the target server.
dns_ suffixes	list, string	<p>Can only be used if selection is set to inband.</p> <p>If the clients do not include the domain name when addressing the server (for example they use username@server instead of username@server.example.com), SPS can automatically add domain information (for example example.com).</p> <p>You can add multiple domain names. SPS attempts to resolve the target address by appending the domain names in the provided order, and uses the first successfully resolved address to establish the connection.</p>

## Elements of server\_side\_transport\_security

Elements of server_ side_transport_ security	Type	Description
peer_ certificate_ check	Top level item	<p>Sets how SPS authenticates the peers. To permit connections from peers without requesting a certificate, set "enabled": false, for example:</p> <pre>"peer_certificate_check": {   "enabled": false }</pre> <p>To validate the certificate of the peer, set "enabled": true, and reference a <a href="#">trusted certificate authority list</a>, for example:</p> <pre>"peer_certificate_check": {   "enabled": true,   "trusted_ca": "cfc815e5-dadb-4eb9-a628-12ae0c12d358" }</pre>

Elements of server_side_transport_security	Type	Description
selection	string	<p>Sets the encryption settings used between SPS and the server. If SPS has to show a certificate to the peer, so you must configure the sps_certificate option as well. The possible values of selection are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none Do not use encryption.</li> <li>• starttls Enable encrypted connections that use the STARTTLS method. Note that the peer must use the STARTTLS method. Unencrypted connections will be terminated after a brief period.</li> <li>• tls Require encryption.</li> </ul>
sps_certificate	JSON object	<p>Sets the certificate that SPS shows to the peer when the communication is encrypted. SPS can either use the same certificate for every session, or generate a separate certificate for each session.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the server does not require a certificate from SPS, set selection: "none".</li> <li>• To use the same certificate for every session, set selection: "fix" and reference the certificate to use in the x509_identity option, for example:</li> </ul> <pre>"sps_certificate": {   "selection": "fix",   "x509_identity": "&lt;'key' of an uploaded certificate&gt;" },</pre> <p>For details on uploading certificates to SPS, see <a href="#">Certificates stored on SPS</a>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To generate a certificate for every session, set selection: "generate" and reference the certificate authority to sign the generated certificates in the signing_ca option, for example:</li> </ul>

Elements of server_ side_transport_ security	Type	Description
--	------	-------------

```
"sps_certificate": {  
  "selection": "generate",  
  "signing_ca": "2221b768-0722-4298-  
9e16-ce67eb3723ad"  
},
```

For details on using signing certificates, see [Signing CA policies](#).

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a Telnet connection policy

To add a Telnet connection policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object for the new Telnet connection policy.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/connections/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new Telnet connection policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections/a99be49b-b0a2-4cf9-b70d-fea1f9ea188f",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet/connections",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a Telnet connection policy

To modify a Telnet connection policy, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the connection policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/connections/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# Telnet channels

The available Telnet channel types and their functionalities are described below.



Channel	Special options	Description
telnet	Yes	<p><b>telnet:</b> Enables access to the server's terminal. This channel must be enabled for Telnet to work.</p> <p>Channel-specific actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>content_policy reference: The ID of the Content policy to apply to the connection.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <pre> "actions": {   "audit": true,   "four_eyes": true,   "content_policy": {     "key": "433849548566ab327522e6"     "meta": {       "href": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies/44287216854f482e7f2b24"     }   }, }</pre>

## Telnet authentication policies

Lists the configured authentication methods that can be used in a connection. Each connection policy uses an authentication policy to determine how the client can authenticate on the SPS gateway.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists Telnet authentication policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing Telnet authentication policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-200",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/-200"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "-304002001",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/-304002001" }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies",
```

```

    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/telnet/settings_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific policy, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "active_pattern_sets": [],
    "backend": {
      "selection": "ldap"
    },
    "name": "telnet_auth_policy_with_ldap"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element	Contains the elements of the policy.
name	string	The name of the object. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
active_pattern_sets	JSON list	The list of patterns to use to extract the username from the sessions. For details, see . For example: <div> <pre>"active_pattern_sets": ["-8000", "-8001", "-8002"]</pre> </div>
backend	Top level item	Client-side gateway authentication settings. The value of selection defines which authentication method is used.
selection	string	Defines the authentication method for client-side gateway authentication. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• none</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>Disables client-side gateway authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ldap</code></li> </ul> <p>Uses the LDAP server selected for the connection policy. LDAP servers can be configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers</code> endpoint).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>local</code></li> </ul> <p>Uses the local user database configured in the <code>/api/configuration/policies/user_databases/</code> endpoint.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the <code>user_database</code> element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>radius</code></li> </ul> <p>Uses one or more Radius servers for authentication.</p> <p>To use this option, you must also configure the <code>authentication_protocol</code> and <code>servers</code> elements.</p>

Elements of servers	Type	Description
<code>address</code>	Top level element	Defines the address of a RADIUS server.
<code>selection</code>	string	<p>Required child of the address element. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ip</code></li> </ul> <p>The value element contains the IP of the RADIUS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>fqdn</code></li> </ul> <p>The value element contains the FQDN of the RADIUS server.</p>
<code>value</code>	string	The IP or the FQDN address of the RADIUS server.
<code>port</code>	int	The port number of the RADIUS server.
<code>shared_secret</code>	string	References the key of the shared secret for the RADIUS server. You can configure shared secrets at the <a href="/api/configuration/passwords/">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint.

Elements of servers	Type	Description
		<p>To modify or add a shared secret, use the value of the returned key as the value of the <code>shared_secret</code> element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>Alternatively, you can include the new password as plain text.</p> <pre>"shared_secret": {   "plain": "&lt;new-password&gt;" }</pre>

## Examples:

Querying base authentication policy without gateway authentication:

```
{
  "key": "-304002001",
  "body": {
    "name": "base",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "none"
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with LDAP backend:

```
{
  "key": "telnet-auth-pol-2",
  "body": {
    "name": "telnet_ldap",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "ldap",
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with local backend:

```
{
  "key": "telnet-auth-pol-3",
  "body": {
    "name": "telnet_local",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "local",
      "user_database": {
        "key": "local-user-database-1",
        "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/policies/user_
databases/local-user-database-1" }
      },
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

Querying authentication policy with RADIUS backend:

```
{
  "key": "telnet-auth-pol-4",
  "body": {
    "name": "telnet_radius",
    "backend": {
      "selection": "radius",
      "servers": [
        {
          "address": {
            "selection": "ip",
            "value": "1.2.3.4"
          },
          "port": 1812,
          "shared_secret": {
            "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
            "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/passwords#XXXXXXXX-
XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX" }
          }
        }
      ],
      "authentication_protocol": "pap",
      "timeout": 3600,
      "keepalive": true
    }
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a Telnet authentication policy

To add a Telnet authentication policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Telnet authentication policies](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "6f924f39-e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/6f924f39-
```

```
e4c9-4b0f-8018-8842e2115ebd",
  "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## **Modify a Telnet authentication policy**

To modify a Telnet authentication policy, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Modify the JSON object of the policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Telnet authentication policies](#).

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# **Global Telnet options**

List of options that affect all Telnet connections.

## **URL**

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/options
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists global Telnet options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global Telnet options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
```

```

"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies",
  "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/options",
  "last": "/api/configuration/telnet/options",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet",
  "previous": "/api/configuration/telnet/channel_policies",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global Telnet options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable Telnet connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable Telnet connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of Telnet connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for Telnet connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of Telnet connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for Telnet connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of Telnet connection metadata, set

Elements of audit	Type	Description
		this element to true.
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for Telnet connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote timestamping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <code>local</code> to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>Set <code>remote</code> to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
server_url	string	Required for remote timestamping. The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.
oid	Top level item	The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
enabled	boolean	Required for remote timestamping. Set to <code>true</code> to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.
policy_oid	string	Required if the <code>oid</code> is enabled. The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.
signing_interval	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

## Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  }
}
```

```

    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  }
}

```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": true,
        "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

## Modify global Telnet settings

To modify global Telnet settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global Telnet settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Telnet pattern sets

List of Telnet pattern sets that help to extract the username from Telnet connections.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the available Telnet pattern sets.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the available Telnet pattern sets. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "body": { "name": "Cisco devices",
                "description": "Cisco devices that require authentication"
      },
      "key": "-8000",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets/-8000" }
    },
    {
      "body": { "name": "Cisco devices without authentication",
                "description": "Cisco devices that do not require authentication"
      },
      "key": "-8001",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets/-8001" }
    },
    {
      "body": { "name": "General Telnet",
                "description": "General Telnet servers (for example, Linux telnetd)"
      },
      "key": "-8002",
      "meta": { "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets/-8002" }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/telnet/authentication_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets",
    "last": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet",
  }
}
```

```

    "previous": "/api/configuration/telnet/options",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Contains the ID of the pattern set. The pattern set IDs can be used for specifying the <a href="#">active_pattern_sets</a> JSON list at the configuration of Telnet authentication policies..
body	string	Contains the descriptive name of the pattern set.
name	string	Descriptive name of the pattern set.

### **To upload a telnet pattern set:**

1. Open a transaction.  
For more information, see [Open a transaction](#).
2. Upload the telnet pattern set file.

POST the `valid_pattern_set.tps` file to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/pattern_set` endpoint, for example:

```

curl -X POST --cookie cookies --insecure https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/pattern_set --data-binary @<path-to-pattern_set.tps>

```

The following is a sample response received:

For details of the `meta` object, see [Message format](#).

```

{
  "body": {
    "description": "Test Pattern Set description",
    "name": "Test Pattern Set"
  },
  "key": "XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets/XXXXXXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXXXXXXXXXX",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/telnet/pattern_sets"
  }
}

```



## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	PatternSetValidationFailed	The validation of the telnet pattern set file failed.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#).

Note the following points:

- Built-in telnet pattern sets cannot be deleted. The ID of built-in pattern sets begins with "-".
- Existing pattern sets cannot be re-loaded, only if you delete them beforehand.

## Operations with the /pattern\_sets endpoint

- /api/configuration/telnet/pattern\_sets: GET
- /api/configuratation/telnet/pattern\_sets/<id>: GET, DELETE
- /api/upload/pattern\_set: POST

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
405	DeleteNotAllowedOnBuiltInPatternSet	The deletion of built-in telnet pattern sets is not allowed.

## VNC connections

### VNC connections

List of endpoints for configuring the policies, options and connection rules of VNC connections.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc
```

#### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

#### Sample request

The following command lists the available settings for configuring for VNC connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the configuration settings. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "channel_policies",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/vnc/channel_policies"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "connections",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/vnc/connections"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "options",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/vnc/options"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/vnc",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/troubleshooting",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Item	Description
channel_policies	List of the default and custom channel policies.
<a href="#">connections</a>	List of the VNC connection policies.
<a href="#">options</a>	List of global VNC options that affect all connections.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## VNC connection policies

Connection policies determine if a server can be accessed from a particular client. Connection policies reference other resources (policies, usergroups, keys) that must be configured and available before creating a connection policy.

### CAUTION:

The connection policies of this protocol are available in **READ-ONLY** mode on the REST API. Also, the returned data is incomplete, it does not include any protocol-specific settings, only the parameters that are common to every supported protocol.

To modify the connection policies of this protocol, you must use the SPS web interface.

Using the REST API, you can modify the connection policies of the RDP and SSH protocols.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/connections/
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p>For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists VNC connection policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/connections/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/connections/<connection-key>
```

# Global VNC options

List of options that affect all VNC connections.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/options
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page</p>

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			19.
			<b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists global VNC options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/options
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing global VNC options.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "audit": {
      "cleanup": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "timestamping": {
        "selection": "local",
        "signing_interval": 30
      }
    },
    "service": {
      "enabled": true,
      "log_level": 4
    }
  },
  "key": "options",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/vnc/channel_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/vnc/options",
    "last": "/api/configuration/vnc/options",
    "next": null,
  }
}
```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/vnc",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/vnc/channel_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	Top level item	Contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level item	Contains the elements of the global VNC options.
audit	Top level item	Contains settings for timestamping and cleanup.
service	Top level item	Global setting to enable VNC connections, and specify the logging detail.
enabled	boolean	Set to true to enable VNC connections.
log_level	int	Defines the logging detail of VNC connections.

Elements of audit	Type	Description
cleanup	Top level item	Global retention settings for VNC connection metadata. To configure retention time for a specific connection policy, use the archive_cleanup_policy element at the endpoint of the policy instead.
channel_database_cleanup_days	int	Global retention time for the metadata of VNC connections, in days. Must exceed the retention time of the archiving policy (or policies) used for VNC connections, and the connection-specific database cleanup times (if configured).
enabled	boolean	To enable the global cleanup of VNC connection metadata, set this element to true.
timestamping	Top level item	Global timestamping settings for VNC connections.
selection	string	Configures local or remote

Elements of audit	Type	Description
		<p>timestamping.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set <code>local</code> to use SPS for timestamping.</li> <li>• Set <code>remote</code> to configure a remote timestamping server.</li> </ul>
<code>server_url</code>	string	<p>Required for remote timestamping.</p> <p>The URL of the timestamping server. Note that HTTPS and password-protected connections are not supported.</p>
<code>oid</code>	Top level item	The Object Identifier of the policy used for timestamping.
<code>enabled</code>	boolean	<p>Required for remote timestamping.</p> <p>Set to <code>true</code> to configure the Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the timestamping remote server.</p>
<code>policy_oid</code>	string	<p>Required if the <code>oid</code> is enabled.</p> <p>The Object Identifier of the timestamping policy on the remote timestamping server.</p>
<code>signing_interval</code>	int	Time interval for timestamping open connections, in seconds.

## Examples:

Set SPS as the timestamping server:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "enabled": false
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
}
```



```

"service": {
  "enabled": true,
  "log_level": 4
}
}

```

Enable cleanup, and set it to occur every 10 days:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "selection": "local",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, without specifying a timestamping policy:

```

{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": false
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}

```

Change timestamping to a remote server, and specify the 1.2.3 timestamping policy:

```
{
  "audit": {
    "cleanup": {
      "channel_database_cleanup_days": 10,
      "enabled": true
    },
    "timestamping": {
      "oid": {
        "enabled": true,
        "policy_oid": "1.2.3"
      },
      "selection": "remote",
      "server_url": "<url-of-timestamping-server>",
      "signing_interval": 30
    }
  },
  "service": {
    "enabled": true,
    "log_level": 4
  }
}
```

## Modify global VNC settings

To modify global VNC settings, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the global VNC settings endpoint.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/vnc/options` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#). The elements of the audit item are described in [Elements of audit](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Search, download, and index sessions

## Audited sessions

The `api/audit/sessions` endpoint lists the recorded sessions (active and closed).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command lists the connections.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific connection.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing connections.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "2",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/audit/sessions/2"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "1",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "fields": [],
    "first": "/api/audit/sessions?limit=500&offset=0&fields=",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "last": "/api/audit/sessions?limit=500&offset=0&fields=",
    "limit": 500,
    "match_count": 39,
    "next": null,
    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit",
    "previous": null
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific connection, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "active": false,
    "alerts": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/alerts"
    },
    "analytics": {
```

```

    "interesting_events": [],
    "scripted": false,
    "scripted_results": {},
    "similar_sessions": [],
    "tags": []
  },
  "channels": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/channels"
  },
  "client": {
    "ip": "10.20.30.40",
    "name": "10.20.30.40",
    "port": 59125
  },
  "creation_time": "2018-11-14T12:26:59.244Z",
  "duration": 57,
  "end_time": "2018-09-15T14:22:00+05:00",
  "events": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/events"
  },
  "hidden": false,
  "indexing": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/indexing"
  },
  "node_id": "6fed7872-065e-41d2-9cfa-ba75e8cad901",
  "origin": "RECORDING",
  "phantom": false,
  "protocol": "SSH",
  "recording": {
    "archived": false,
    "audit_trail": {
      "archive": null,
      "download": {
        "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/audit_trail"
      }
    }
  },
  "auth_method": "password",
  "channel_policy": "shell-only",
  "command_extracted": false,
  "connection_policy": "myconnectionpolicy",
  "connection_policy_id": "15682863055beac3c8d23bf",
  "content_reference_id": 30,
  "has_accepted_channel": true,
  "index_status": "INDEXED",
  "server_local": {
    "ip": "10.20.30.40",
    "name": "10.20.30.40",
    "port": 55386
  }
}

```

```

    },
    "session_id": "svc/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/abcde:29",
    "target": {
      "ip": "10.20.30.40",
      "name": "10.20.30.40",
      "port": 221
    },
    },
    "verdict": "Accepted",
    "window_title_extracted": false
  },
  "revision": 15,
  "server": {
    "ip": "10.20.30.40",
    "name": "10.20.30.40",
    "port": 22
  },
  "start_time": "2018-09-15T15:53:00+05:00",
  "user": {
    "id": "myid",
    "name": "myname",
    "server_username": "myserver"
  },
  },
  "verdict": "ACCEPT"
},
"key": "rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq",
"meta": {
  "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq",
  "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
  "remaining_seconds": 594
}
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the key of the connection or audit trail.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the connection.
active	boolean	If the returned value is true, the connection is ongoing.
alerts	Top level	Contains a link to the details of the alerts. For details, see <a href="#">Session alerts</a> on page 750.

Element	Type	Description
	item	<p>An event is listed as alert only if the <b>Actions &gt; Store in Connection Database</b> option is selected in the <b>Content Policy</b> used to handle the session.</p> <pre>"alerts": {   "href": "/api/audit/ses- sions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff/alert- s" },</pre>
analytics	Top level item	Contains analytics details of the connection.
channels	Top level list	<p>Contains a link to the details of the channel.</p> <pre>"channels": {   "href": "/api/audit/sessions/svc- rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq-kecske-29/channels" },</pre>
client	Top level item	The IP address and port number of the client.
creation_time	date	The time this document was created. In optimal cases this is near equal to the session's original start_time. However, it can be later than start_time.
duration	int	The duration of the session in seconds. Computed value.
end_time	ISO 8601 date	<p>The timestamp of the end of the connection. For ongoing connection, the value is null.</p> <p>Starting with SPS 5 LTS, the timestamp is in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2018-10-11T09:23:38.000+02:00. In earlier versions, it was in UNIX timestamp format.</p>
events	Top level item	<p>Contains a link to the details of the events. For details, see <a href="#">Session events</a> on page 754.</p> <pre>"events": {   "href": "/api/audit/ses- sions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff/event- s" },</pre>



Element	Type	Description
		<pre>},</pre>
hidden	boolean	True if this is a session that has not been displayed on the SPS GUI yet (due to fragmented data about the session).
<a href="#">indexer</a>	Top level item	Contains the details of indexing. For details on configuring indexing, see <a href="#">Local services: configuring the indexer</a> on page 764. <pre>"indexer": {   "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq/indexer" },</pre>
node_id	string	The node ID of the SPS machine where this session has been recorded.
origin	string	How SPA received this session. The following values are possible: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PSM for sessions based on an audit trail recorded by SPS.</li> <li>LOG for sessions built from log data.</li> </ul>
protocol	string	The protocol of the connection.
recording	Top level item	Contains the properties of the audit trail.
archived	boolean	If the audit trail has been archived, this value is true, otherwise it is false. For details about the archiving, see the <a href="#">archive object of the psm.audit_trail</a> field.
<a href="#">audit_trail</a>	Top level item	The path to the audit trail file on SPS. If the session does not have an audit trail, this element is not used. To download the audit trail, see <a href="#">Download audit trails</a> on page 716.
auth_method	Top level item	<b>Authentication method:</b> The authentication method used in the connection. For example, password
channel_policy	string	References the name of the channel policy. You can find the list of channel policies for each protocol at

Element	Type	Description
		the /api/configuration/<protocol>/channel_policies/ endpoint.
command_ extracted	boolean	If commands have been extracted from this terminal session, this value is true, otherwise it is false. The extracted commands are available in the <a href="#">events object</a> field.
connection_ policy	string	The name of the Connection Policy that handled the session, for example, ssh_gateway_auth. This is the name displayed on the <b>Control &gt; Connections</b> page of the SPS web interface, and in the name field of the Connection Policy object. You can find the list of connection policies for each protocol at the /api/configuration/<protocol>/connections/ endpoint.
connection_ policy_id	string	The key of the Connection Policy that handled the session, for example, 54906683158e768e727100. You can find the list of connection policies for each protocol at the /api/configuration/<protocol>/connections/ endpoint.
content_ reference_ id	long	The unique ID of the TCP connection.
has_ accepted_ channel	boolean	True, if at least the connection has been built successfully, the authentication was successful, and there was actual traffic.
index_ status	string	<b>Channel's indexing status:</b> Shows if the channel has been indexed. The following values are possible: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CHANNEL_OPEN (0): The connection of the channel is still open (indexer is waiting for the connection to close).</li> <li>NOT_INDEXED (1): All channels of the connection have been closed which belong to the connection. The channel is ready for indexing, unless the audit trail was placed in the skipped_connections queue.</li> <li>INDEXING_IN_PROGRESS (2): The channel is being indexed (indexing in progress). Note that SPS will return search results for the parts of the channel are already indexed.</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>INDEXED (3): Indexing the channel is complete.</li> <li>INDEXING_NOT_REQUIRED (4): Indexing not required (indexing is not enabled for the connection).</li> <li>INDEXING_FAILED (5): Indexing failed. The indexer service writes the corresponding error message in the error_message column of the indexer_jobs table. Note that SPS will return search results for the parts of the channel that were successfully indexed before the error occurred. For example, if the error occurred at the end of a long audit trail, you can still search for content from the first part of the audit trail.</li> <li>NO_TRAIL (6): Auditing is not enabled for the channel.</li> </ul>
network_id	string	The ID of the Linux network namespace where the session originated from.
server_local	Top level item	The IP address and port number of SPS.
session_id	string	The identifier of the session.
target	Top level item	The IP address and port number the client targeted for connection.
verdict	string	<p>The connection verdict. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>accept The connection attempt was successful.</li> <li>accept-terminated The connection violated a content policy, and was terminated by SPS.</li> <li>auth-fail Authentication failure.</li> <li>deny The connection was denied.</li> <li>fail</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
		<p>The connection attempt failed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>gw-auth-fail</li> </ul> <p>Gateway authentication failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>key-error</li> </ul> <p>The connection attempt failed due to a host key mismatch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>user-mapping-fail</li> </ul> <p>The connection attempt failed due to a user mapping failure.</p>
	window_title_extracted	boolean If window titles have been extracted from this graphical session, this value is true, otherwise it is false. The extracted window titles are available in the <a href="#">events object</a> field.
revision	int	The revision number of the document. A newer document has a larger revision number than an older one. This helps you to determine which session version is newer.
<a href="#">server</a>	Top level item	The IP address and port number of the remote server.
<a href="#">trail_downloads</a>	Top level item	<p>Contains a link to the details of the audit-trail downloads in this session (if any).</p> <pre>"trail_downloads": {   "href": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDwYp9DEpq/trail_downloads" },</pre>
start_time	ISO 8601 date	<p>The timestamp of the start of the connection.</p> <p>Starting with SPS 5 LTS, the timestamp is in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2018-10-11T09:23:38.000+02:00. In earlier versions, it was in UNIX timestamp format.</p>
user	Top level item	The details of the user authenticating on the remote server.
id	string	The ID of the user.
name	string	The username used for authenticating against the gateway.

Element	Type	Description
server_username	string	The username used for authenticating on the remote server.
verdict	string	Indicates what SPS decided about the session. A session verdict that originates from log events or other external events.

Analytics elements	Type	Description
analytics	Top level element	<p>Contains analytics details of the connection. For example:</p> <pre>"analytics": {   "interesting_events": [],   "scripted": false,   "scripted_results": {},   "similar_sessions": [],   "tags": [] },</pre>
interesting_events	string	A list of commands and window titles from the session that could be interesting from a security point of view.
score.aggregated	int	The risk score that SPA assigned to the session. Values range from 0 to 100, with 100 representing the highest risk.
score.details	object	This is an object where the keys are algorithm names and values are algorithm-specific details about the score result.
scripted	boolean	True if the SPA module marked the session as scripted because of non-human activity.
scripted_results	object	<p>A key-value pair, where key=&lt;algorithm-name&gt;, value=&lt;reason-of-the-decision&gt;. The algorithm can be clockmaster or gapminder.</p> <p>Result: True/False. Reason: Either the reason behind the result, or if no result is available, an error message (for example, the baseline has not been built yet).</p>
similar_sessions	string	Collection of similar sessions from different sources.

Analytics elements	Type	Description
tags	string	The Analytics tags section in Search > Details.

Audit trail elements	Type	Description
archive	Top level element	<p>Indicates whether the audit trail has been archived or not. If the audit trail has not been archived yet, the value of the element is null. For example:</p> <pre> "audit_trail": {   "archive": {     "date": "2018-11-25T12:00:05.000Z",     "path": "2018-11-23/",     "policy": "8106930065bf7eb4c3cf59",     "server": "\\10.20.30.40\\archive\\-abc123 (user: myuser)"   },   "download": {     "href": "/api/audit/sessions/10/audit_trail"   } }, </pre>
date	ISO 8601 date	The date when the audit trail was archived in ISO 8601 date.
server	hostname or IP address	The address of the remote server where the audit trail was archived.
path	string	The path on the remote server where the audit trail was archived.
policy	string	The ID of the archiving policy that was used to archive the audit trail.
download	string	The download element allows downloading the audit trail.

Channel elements	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the channel.
items	Top level element (string)	The properties of the channel.

Channel elements	Type	Description
active	boolean	If the returned value is true, the session has not ended yet and the channel is active.
audit_stream_id	string	The identifier of the channel's audit stream. If the session does not have an audit trail, this element is not used.
channel_id	long	The unique ID of the channel.
client_x509_subject	string	The client's certificate in Telnet or VNC sessions. Available only if the <b>&lt;Protocol name&gt; Control &gt; Connections &gt; Client-side transport security settings &gt; Peer certificate validation</b> is enabled in SPS.
duration	int	The duration of the connection. Computed value.
end_time	ISO 8601 date	The ISO 8601 date of the end of the connection. For ongoing connections, the value is null.
rule_num	string	The number of the line in the Channel policy applied to the channel.
start_time	ISO 8601 date	The ISO 8601 date of the start of the connection.
type	string	The type of the channel. Additional elements might be used with certain ICA, SSH and RDP channel types.
verdict	string	<p>The channel's connection verdict. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>accept The connection attempt was successful.</li> <li>deny The connection attempt was denied.</li> <li>four-eyes-deferred Four-eyes authorization is unable to progress as it is waiting for a remote username.</li> <li>four-eyes-error An internal error occurred during four-eyes authorization.</li> <li>four-eyes-reject</li> </ul>

Channel elements	Type	Description
		<p>The connection attempt was rejected by a four-eyes agent on SPS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>four-eyes-timeout</li> </ul> <p>Four-eyes authorization timed out.</p>
command	string	Used with the session exec SSH channel type. The executed command.
scp_path	string	Used with the session exec scp SSH channel type. The folder used for Secure Copy.
subsystem_name	string	Used with the session subsystem sftp SSH channel type. The name of the used subsystem.
originator.ip	string	Used with the local forward and remote forward SSH channel types. The source address of the forwarded traffic.
originator.name	string	The source host name of the forwarded traffic. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
originator.port	int	Used with the local forward and remote forward SSH channel types. The source port of the forwarded traffic.
connected.ip	string	Used with the local forward and remote forward SSH channel types. The target address of the forwarded traffic.
connected.name	string	The target host name of the forwarded traffic. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
connected.port	int	Used with the local forward and remote forward SSH channel types. The target port of the forwarded traffic.
dynamic_channel	string	Used with the dynamic virtual RDP channel type. The name of the dynamic channel.
device_name	string	Used with the serial redirect, parallel redirect, printer redirect, disk redirect,



Channel elements	Type	Description
		and scard redirect RDP channel types. The name of the device.
application	string	Used with ICA connections. The name of the application accessed in a seamless Citrix ICA connection.
four_eyes_authorizer	string	The username of the user who authorized the session.  Available only if four-eyes authorization is required for the channel.
four_eyes_description	string	The description of the session submitted by the authorizer of the session.  Available only if four-eyes authorization is required for the channel.

Client elements	Type	Description
client	Top level element	The IP address and port number of the client. For example: <pre>"client": {   "ip": "10.20.30.40",   "port": 59125 },</pre>
ip	string	The IP address of the client.
name	string	The host name of the client. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
port	int	The port number of the client.

Server elements	Type	Description
server	Top level element	The IP address and port number of the remote server. For example: <pre>"server": {   "ip": "10.20.30.40",   "port": 55386 },</pre>
ip	string	The IP address of the remote server.

Server elements	Type	Description
name	string	The host name of the remote server. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
port	int	The port number of the remote server.

Server_local elements	Type	Description
server_local	Top level element	The IP address and port number of SPS. For example: <pre> "server_local": {   "ip": "10.20.30.40",   "port": 55386 }, </pre>
ip	string	The IP address of SPS.
name	string	The host name of SPS. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
port	int	The port number of SPS.

Target elements	Type	Description
target	Top level element	The IP address and port number the client targeted for connection. For example: <pre> "target": {   "ip": "10.20.30.40",   "port": 221 }, </pre>
ip	string	The IP address the client targeted for connection.
name	string	The host name of the client targeted for connection. If this information is not available, the value is the IP address instead.
port	int	The port number the client targeted for connection.

## Examples:

All possible SSH channel types:

```

"channels": [
  {
    "key": "1",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/1"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "session shell",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451901988,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 157
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "2",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/2"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "session exec",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902141,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 4,
      "command": "ls"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "3",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/3"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "session exec scp",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902141,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 4,
      "scp_path": "<path-to-folder>"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "4",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/4"
    },
    "body": {

```

```

        "type": "session subsystem sftp",
        "verdict": "accept",
        "start_time": 1451902142,
        "end_time": 1451902145,
        "duration": 3,
        "subsystem_name": "sftp"
    },
    {
        "key": "5",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/5"
        },
        "body": {
            "type": "local forward",
            "verdict": "accept",
            "start_time": 1451902145,
            "end_time": 1451902146,
            "duration": 1,
            "originator.address": ":::1",
            "originator.port": 59578,
            "connected.address": "<server>",
            "connected.port": 22
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "6",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/6"
        },
        "body": {
            "type": "remote forward",
            "verdict": "accept",
            "start_time": 1451902145,
            "end_time": 1451902146,
            "duration": 1,
            "originator.address": ":::1",
            "originator.port": 42212,
            "connected.address": "localhost",
            "connected.port": 9898
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "7",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/7"
        },
        "body": {

```

```

    "type": "x11 forward",
    "verdict": "deny",
    "start_time": 1451902149,
    "end_time": 1451902149,
    "duration": 0
  }
}
]

```

All possible RDP channel types:

```

"channels": [
  {
    "key": "1",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/1"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "drawing",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451901988,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 157
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "2",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/2"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "sound",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902141,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 4
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "3",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/3"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "clipboard",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902141,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 4
    }
  }
]

```

```

    }
  },
  {
    "key": "4",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/4"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "seamless",
      "verdict": "deny",
      "start_time": 1451902142,
      "end_time": 1451902142,
      "duration": 0
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "5",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/5"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "dynamic virtual",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902145,
      "end_time": 1451902146,
      "duration": 1,
      "dynamic_channel": "Microsoft::Windows::RDS::Geometry::v08.01"
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "6",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/6"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "custom",
      "verdict": "deny",
      "start_time": 1451902145,
      "end_time": 1451902145,
      "duration": 0
    }
  },
  {
    "key": "7",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/7"
    },
    "body": {

```

```

        "type": "serial redirect",
        "verdict": "accept",
        "start_time": 1451902149,
        "end_time": 1451902150,
        "duration": 1,
        "device_name": "COM1"
    },
    {
        "key": "8",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/8"
        },
        "body": {
            "type": "parallel redirect",
            "verdict": "accept",
            "start_time": 1451902149,
            "end_time": 1451902150,
            "duration": 1,
            "device_name": "LPT1"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "9",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/9"
        },
        "body": {
            "type": "printer redirect",
            "verdict": "accept",
            "start_time": 1451902149,
            "end_time": 1451902150,
            "duration": 1,
            "device_name": "PRN22"
        }
    },
    {
        "key": "10",
        "meta": {
            "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/10"
        },
        "body": {
            "type": "disk redirect",
            "verdict": "accept",
            "start_time": 1451902149,
            "end_time": 1451902150,
            "duration": 1,
            "device_name": "J:"
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }
  },
  {
    "key": "11",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/audit/sessions/1/channels/11"
    },
    "body": {
      "type": "scard redirect",
      "verdict": "accept",
      "start_time": 1451902149,
      "end_time": 1451902150,
      "duration": 1,
      "device_name": "SCARD"
    }
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Download audit trails

You can download the audit trail of a session from the `/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/audit_trail` endpoint. To find a specific audit trail, see [Searching in the session database](#) on page 717. You can download audit trails that are available on SPS, and also audit trails that have been archived (if SPS can access the archived audit trail).



```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/audit_trail"
```

To actually create a file, you must save the downloaded data into a file (use the .zat file extension), for example:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/audit_trail" > my-downloaded-trail.zat
```

You can replay the downloaded audit trails with the Safeguard Desktop Player application. For details, see [Safeguard Desktop Player User Guide](#).

If you want to replay an ongoing session in follow mode, you have to download the audit trail in .srs format. Use the ?format=srs option:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/audit_trail?format=srs" > my-downloaded-trail.srs
```

For details, see ["Replay audit files in follow mode" in the Safeguard Desktop Player User Guide](#).

## Searching in the session database

You can list, search, and filter the SPS session database at the /api/audit/sessions endpoint. You can use the following actions:

- [?start](#)  
Display sessions that started after the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T10:00.
- [?q](#)  
Filter the list using one or more property (element) of the sessions.
- [?content](#)  
Search in the content of indexed sessions.
- [?end](#)  
Display sessions that ended before the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T10:00.
- [?fields](#)  
Display the selected properties (elements and values) of the listed sessions.
- [?limit](#)  
Configure the pagination of the displayed results using the [?offset](#) and [?limit](#) parameters.

The `?limit` parameter allows you to configure the maximum number of results to display on a page at once.

The default value of `?limit` is 500.

**NOTE:** The default value of 500 is the maximum permitted value you can set for `?limit`. If you set the `?limit` parameter to a value bigger than 500, only the first 500 results will be displayed.

- `?offset`

Configure the pagination of the displayed results using the `?offset` and `?limit` parameters.

The `?offset` parameter allows you to configure the offset from the first result that is displayed. This can be useful if the number of items returned exceeds the number of items displayed on the first page, and you want to navigate to any of the subsequent items displayed on other pages.

The default value of `?offset` is null.

**NOTE:** The maximum number of search results in One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions is 10000. As a result, any `?offset` values set to larger than 10000 will be ignored and the results exceeding the value of 10000 will not be displayed.

- `?sort`

Sort the results based on the values of the fields.

- `?format`

Configure the format of the displayed results.

The default value of `?format` is json. If you do not configure the `?format` parameter, the results will be displayed in JSON format.

To display search results in a CSV format, enter csv as a value.

To combine multiple expressions, use the & (ampersand) character, for example:

Display the target server and port of each active session:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?fields=psm.target.address,psm.target.port&q=active:true"
```

Display 10 sessions at once, and navigate to 31-40:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?limit=10&offset=31"
```

Search in metadata and session content at the same time:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?q=protocol:ssh&content=sudo"
```

**NOTE:** If you use curl, use quotation marks for the URL to avoid problems with the & (ampersand) character.

## Response

The response to search or filtering action contains a list of the matching sessions, as well as some additional meta fields. For example:

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "body": {
        "duration": 0,
        "name": "myname",
        "start_time": "2017-01-25T11:11:52.000+01:00"
      },
      "key": "2",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/audit/sessions/2"
      }
    },
    {
      "body": {
        "duration": 34,
        "name": "myname",
        "start_time": "2017-01-25T11:11:11.000+01:00"
      },
      "key": "10",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/audit/sessions/10"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "fields": [
      "start_time",
      "name",
      "duration"
    ],
    "first": "/api/audit/sessions?limit=500&offset=0&fields=start_time,name,duration&q=name%3Amyname&=duration",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "last": "/api/audit/sessions?limit=500&offset=0&fields=start_time,name,duration&q=name%3Amyname&sort=duration",
    "limit": 500,
    "match_count": 2,
    "next": null,
    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit",
    "previous": null
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	Top level element, a list containing the details of the matching sessions.
body	JSON object	<p>Contains the information returned about a session, that is, the fields selected with the <code>?fields</code> expression. For example, if you used the <code>fields=start_time,psm.gateway_username,duration</code> expression in your query, then the body element contains these fields for each returned session:</p> <pre>"body": {     "duration": 0,     "name": null,     "start_time": "2017-01-25T11:11:52.000+01:00" },</pre>
key	string	<p>A globally unique string that identifies the session. This session ID has the following format: <code>svc/&lt;unique-random-hash&gt;/&lt;name-of-the-connection-policy&gt;:&lt;session-number-since-service-started&gt;/&lt;protocol&gt;</code>, for example, <code>svc/5tmEaM7xdNi1oscgVWpbZx/ssh_console:1/ssh</code>.</p> <p>Log messages related to the session also contain this ID. For example:</p> <pre>2015-03-20T14:29:15+01:00 demo.example zorp/scb_ssh[5594]: scb.audit(4): (svc/5tmEaM7xdNi1oscgVWpbZx/ssh_console:0/ssh): Closing connection; connection='ssh_console', protocol='ssh', connection_ id='409829754550c1c7a27e7d', src_ip='10.40.0.28', src_port='39183', server_ip='10.10.20.35', server_port='22', gateway_username='', remote_username='example- username', verdict='ZV_ACCEPT'</pre> <p>Note that when using the session ID in a REST call, you must replace the special characters in the ID with the hyphen (-) character. For example, if the session ID in the log message is <code>svc/fNLgRmAyF5EtycgUYnKc1B/ssh_demo2:2</code>, use the <code>svc-fNLgRmAyF5EtycgUYnKc1B-ssh_demo2-2</code> ID in REST calls.</p>

In addition to the usual meta elements of other endpoints, search results can contain the following additional elements.

Element	Type	Description
meta	JSON object	Top level element, a list containing meta information about the response.
fields	list	Contains the list of data fields returned about each session, that is, the fields selected with the <code>?fields</code> expression. For example, if you used the <code>fields=start_time,psm.gateway_username,duration</code> expression in your query, then the body element contains these fields for each returned session: <div> <pre>"fields": [   "start_time",   "name",   "duration" ],</pre> </div>
limit	integer	The maximum number of sessions returned in a the response (by default, 500).
match_count	integer	The number of results matching the query.
next	string	A query to retrieve the next set of search results, if <code>match_count</code> is higher than <code>limit</code> .
offset	integer	Indicates the position of the results in this response, relative to the total number of results ( <code>match_count</code> ). Otherwise, its value is <code>null</code> .
previous	string	A query to retrieve the previous set of search results, if <code>match_count</code> is higher than <code>limit</code> , and <code>offset</code> is higher than 0. Otherwise, its value is <code>null</code> .

## Filtering

You can use the `?q` option to filter the list using one or more property (element) of the sessions.

```
?q=protocol:ssh
```

You can escape special characters using the backslash character.

```
?q=server_username:\"Windows User\"
```

To add multiple elements to the filter, you can use the `AND`, `AND NOT`, and `OR` operators.

```
?q=protocol:ssh AND verdict:accept AND NOT name:admin
```

You can create groups using `()` (parentheses).

```
?q=(client.address:10.20.30.40 OR target.address:10.20.30.40) AND verdict:accept
```

You can also use `()` (parentheses) to add multiple possible values for a property.

```
?q=protocol:(ssh rdp)
```

You can use the `*` (asterisk) and `?` (question mark) wildcards for string-type values.

```
?q=name:?dmi*
```

You can define ranges using `[]` (brackets) or `{}` (braces) and the `TO` operator. This only works for numeric (int) values.

- `[` means equal or higher than the following value
- `]` means equal or lower than the preceding value
- `{` means higher than the following value
- `}` means lower than the preceding value

For example, the following range resolves to 22:

```
?q=port:{21 TO 23}
```

You can also use the `*` (asterisk) wildcard in the range.

```
?q=start_time:[* TO 1461654799]
```

Note that not all connection data can be used for filtering. The available elements are:

- `active`  
Boolean, `true` means the session is ongoing (it is still active).
- `auth_method`  
String, the authentication method used.
- `channel_policy`  
String, the key of the channel policy.
- `client.address`  
String, the IP address of the client.
- `client.port`  
Integer, the port of the client.
- `psm.connection_policy`  
String, the key of the connection policy.
- `end_time`

The date of the end of the session in ISO 8601 format.

- `name`  
String, the username used for authenticating against the gateway.
- `protocol`  
String, the protocol of the session.
- `server.address`  
String, the IP of the remote server.
- `psm.server_local.address`  
String, the IP of SPS.
- `psm.server_local.port`  
String, the port of SPS.
- `server.port`  
String, the port of the remote server.
- `server_username`  
String, the username used for authenticating on the remote server.
- `session_id`  
String, the identifier of the session.
- `start_time`  
The date of the start of the session in ISO 8601 format.
- `target.address`  
String, the IP the client targeted in the session.
- `target.port`  
Integer, the port the client targeted in the session.
- `verdict`  
String, the connection verdict. Possible values are:
  - `accept`  
The connection attempt was successful.
  - `accept-terminated`  
The connection violated a content policy, and was terminated by SPS.
  - `auth-fail`  
Authentication failure.
  - `deny`  
The connection was denied.
  - `fail`  
The connection attempt failed.

- `gw-auth-fail`  
Gateway authentication failure.
- `key-error`  
The connection attempt failed due to a host key mismatch.
- `user-mapping-fail`  
The connection attempt failed due to a user mapping failure.

## Content search in indexed audit trails

You can use the `?content` option to search for keywords that appear in the content of the audit trails. Such content is any text that appeared on the screen in terminal or graphical sessions, or commands that the user typed in terminal sessions. Note that content search works only if:

- Indexing was enabled in the connection policy related to the audit trail during the session, and
- the audit trail has already been indexed.

```
?content="my-search-expression"
```

You can use the [Apache Lucene query syntax](#) to create the search expression, but note the following points.

- You must format the search expression as an URL, and escape special characters accordingly. For example, if your search expression is `man iptables`, you must escape the whitespace: `man%20iptables`  
For a list of special (reserved) URL characters, see [RFC3986](#).
- Do not begin the expression with the `*` wildcard.

### Examples:

Search for the word `example`

```
?content=example
```

Search for the words `example`, `examples`, and so on:

```
?content=example%3F
```

Search for the words `example`, `examine`, and so on:

```
?content=exam%2A
```



Search in metadata and session content at the same time:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?q=protocol:ssh&content=sudo"
```

For further details and examples, see ["Searching in the contents of audit trails" in the Administration Guide](#).

## Displaying session data

You can use the `?fields` option to display the selected data (body elements) of each session.

```
?fields=protocol
```

To list multiple elements, use the `,` (comma) character. Note that the response includes the selected fields in alphabetic order, not in the order they were specified.

```
?fields=protocol,name
```

To list all possible elements, use the `fields=*` expression.

```
?fields=*
```

Note that not all connection data can be displayed in the generated list. The available elements are:

- `active`  
Boolean, `true` means the connection is ongoing.
- `archived`  
Boolean, `true` means the session has been archived.
- `auth_method`  
String, the authentication method used.
- `channel_policy`  
String, the key of the channel policy.
- `client.address`  
String, the IP address of the client.
- `client.port`  
Integer, the port of the client.
- `connection_policy`

String, the key of the connection policy.

- `duration`

Integer, the duration of the session. Computed value.

- `end_time`

The date of the end of the session in ISO 8601 format.

- `name`

String, the username used for authenticating against the gateway.

- `protocol`

String, the protocol of the session.

- `server.address`

String, the IP of the remote server.

- `server_local.address`

String, the IP of SPS.

- `server_local.port`

Integer, the port of SPS.

- `server.port`

Integer, the port of the remote server.

- `server_username`

String, the username used for authenticating on the remote server.

- `session_id`

String, the identifier of the session.

- `start_time`

The date of the start of the session in ISO 8601 format.

- `target.address`

String, the IP the client targeted in the session.

- `target.port`

Integer, the port the client targeted in the session.

## Date-specific search

To display search results only for specific date intervals, you can use the `?start` and `?end` options.

- The `?start` option selects the sessions that started after the specified date (based on the value of the `start_time` field).
- The `?end` option selects the sessions that ended before the specified date (based on the value of the `end_time` field).
- Both options accept the date in ISO 8601 format.

```
?start=2017-01-25T11:11:52.000+01:00
?end=2017-01-25T11:41:52.000+01:00
?start=2017-01-24&end=2017-01-25
```

### Examples:

Select sessions that started on January 20, 2017, or later:

```
?start=2017-01-20
```

Select sessions that started on 11:00 January 20, 2017, or later:

```
?start=2017-01-20T11:00
```

Select sessions that ended on January 20, 2017:

```
?end=2017-01-20
```

Select sessions started and ended on January 20, 2017:

```
?start=2017-01-20&end=2017-01-20
```

Select sessions started after 11:00, January 20, 2017, and ended before 09:00, January 21, 2017:

```
?start=2017-01-20T11:00&end=2017-01-21T09:00
```

## Changing the display limit

You can use the `?limit` option to change the number of items displayed at once. The default limit is 500.

```
?limit=1000
```

To navigate beyond the displayed set, use the `offset` option.

## Navigating large datasets

You can use the `?offset` option to navigate data sets that extend beyond the display limit. The default value of the offset is 0, this is the initially displayed set. To move to other items beyond the initial set, increase the value to a number that corresponds to the item where you want to start displaying results from.

Example: the display limit is the default 500, and the number of sessions is 1012. The initial 500 sessions are listed at:

```
?offset=0
```

To view sessions from 501 to 1000, change the offset to 501:

```
?offset=501
```

To display the remaining 12 sessions, change the offset to 1001:

```
?offset=1001
```

## Sort the results

You can sort the search results using the sort expression, for example, based on the length of the sessions:

```
?sort=duration
```

You can use any field to sort the results. By default, sorting returns the results in ascending order, if you use `?sort=duration`, then the shortest session is at the beginning of the list. To sort the results in descending order, add the minus sign (-) before the field name. For example, the response to the following expression starts with the longest session:

```
?sort=-duration
```

You can specify multiple fields to order the list. In this case, the list is first ordered using the first field, then the second, and so on. For example, to order the list first by duration, then by start time, use the following expression.

```
?sort=duration,start_time
```

The following example sorts the results by duration, and displays the start time, gateway username, and duration fields.

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?sort=duration&fields=start_time,psm.gateway_username,duration"
```

## Configure the format of the displayed results

The default value of `?format` is `json`. If you do not configure the `?format` parameter, the results will be displayed in JSON format.

```
?format=json
```

To display search results in a CSV format, enter `csv` as a value.

```
?format=csv
```

### Example: querying sessions in CSV result format

Given that the following sessions were recorded:

```
{
  "1": {
    "channel": [
      {"channel_id": 1},
      {"channel_id": 2}
    ],
    "recording": {
      "session_id": 1,
      "archived": false,
      "channel_policy": "policy1",
      "content_reference_id": 1,
      "connection_policy": "connection1",
      "auth_method": "password",
      "target": {
        "port": 2222,
        "ip": "1.1.1.1",
        "name": "1.1.1.1"
      },
      "server_local": {
        "port": 46,
        "ip": "1.1.1.1",
        "name": "1.1.1.1"
      }
    },
    "user": {
      "server_username": "user1",
      "gateway_username": "user1"
    },
    "client": {
      "port": 48679,
      "ip": "2.2.2.2",
      "name": "2.2.2.2"
    },
    "active": false,
    "start_time": 1,
    "duration": 4,
    "server": {
      "port": 22,
      "ip": "2.2.2.2",
      "name": "2.2.2.2"
    },
    "end_time": 5,
```

```

    "protocol": "ssh"
  },
  "2": {
    "channel": [
      {"channel_id": 3},
      {"channel_id": 4}
    ],
    "recording": {
      "session_id": 2,
      "archived": false,
      "channel_policy": "policy2",
      "content_reference_id": 2,
      "connection_policy": "connection2",
      "auth_method": "password",
      "target": {
        "port": 2222,
        "ip": "1.1.1.1",
        "name": "1.1.1.1"
      },
      "server_local": {
        "port": 46,
        "ip": "1.1.1.1",
        "name": "1.1.1.1"
      }
    },
    "user": {
      "server_username": "user2",
      "gateway_username": "user2"
    },
    "client": {
      "port": 48680,
      "ip": "3.3.3.3",
      "name": "3.3.3.3"
    },
    "active": false,
    "start_time": 1,
    "duration": 4,
    "server": {
      "port": 24,
      "ip": "2.2.2.2",
      "name": "2.2.2.2"
    },
    "end_time": 7,
    "protocol": "ssh"
  }
}

```

```
}
```

When the query is the following:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?format=csv&fields=protocol,end_time,user.gateway_username,server.ip,client.ip,client.port"
```

The response is the following:

```
"Key","Protocol","End time","Gateway username","Server IP","Client IP","Client port"
"2","ssh","7","user2","2.2.2.2","3.3.3.3","48680"
"1","ssh","5","user1","2.2.2.2","2.2.2.2","48679"
```

### Example: querying sessions in CSV result format with interesting events

Given that the following sessions were recorded:

```
{
  "1":{
    "origin": "RECORDING",
    "protocol": "SSH",
    "analytics": {
      "interesting_events": ["ssh", "sudo"],
      "similar_sessions": []
    },
    "recording": {
      "session_id": "1",
      "verdict": "ACCEPT",
      "audit_trail": "/var/lib/zorp/audit/532078660569910c6542b2/01/audit-scb_ssh-1451900800-1.zat",
      "connection_policy": "ssh1",
      "content_reference_id": 1
    }
  },
  "2":{
    "origin": "RECORDING",
    "protocol": "SSH",
```

```

    "analytics": {
      "interesting_events": ["sudo", "systemctl"],
      "similar_sessions": []
    },
    "recording": {
      "session_id": "2",
      "verdict": "ACCEPT",
      "connection_policy": "ssh2",
      "content_reference_id": 2
    }
  }
}

```

When the query is the following:

```

curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?sort=recording.session_id&format=csv&fields=recording.session_id,analytics.interesting_events,analytics.similar_sessions"

```

The response is the following:

```

"Key","Recording Session ID","Analytics Interesting events","Similar Sessions"
"1","1","ssh",""
"1","1","sudo",""
"2","2","sudo",""
"2","2","systemctl",""

```

### Example: querying sessions in CSV result format with audit trail link

Given that the following sessions were recorded:

```

{
  "svc-paKzcMJwXghEFJ9UvsdqFU-sid-1": {
    "origin": "RECORDING",
    "protocol": "SSH",
    "recording": {
      "session_id": "1",
      "verdict": "ACCEPT",

```



```

    "audit_trail": "/var/lib/zorp/audit/532078660569910c6542b2/01/audit-
scb_ssh-1451900800-1.zat",
    "connection_policy": "ssh1",
    "content_reference_id": 1
  }
},
"svc-paKzcMJwXghEFJ9UvsdqFU-sid-2": {
  "origin": "RECORDING",
  "protocol": "SSH",
  "recording": {
    "session_id": "2",
    "verdict": "ACCEPT",
    "connection_policy": "ssh2",
    "content_reference_id": 2
  }
}
}
}

```

When the query is the following:

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions?format=csv&fields=trail_download_link"
```

The response is the following:

```

"Key","Audit trail download link"
"svc-paKzcMJwXghEFJ9UvsdqFU-sid-2",""
"svc-paKzcMJwXghEFJ9UvsdqFU-sid-1",
"https://127.0.0.1/api/audit/sessions/svc-paKzcMJwXghEFJ9UvsdqFU-sid-1/audit_trail"

```

## Searching in connection content

You can search in the contents of individual connections at the `api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/content/?q=<my-search-expression>` endpoint.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/content/?q=<my-search-expression>
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command retrieves those events in the contents of a specific connection that match the search expression(s).

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/content/?q=<my-search-expression>
```

**NOTE:** Make sure that you use the ?q option and that when you use it, you do not leave it empty. Not using the ?q option or an empty ?q will result in an empty "items" list returned in the response.

You can use the [Apache Lucene query syntax](#) to create the search expression, but note the following points.

- You must format the search expression as a URL, and escape special characters accordingly. For example, if your search expression is `man iptables`, you must escape the whitespace: `man%20iptables`
- Do not begin the expression with the \* wildcard.

## Response

The response contains a list of those events in the contents of the connection that match the search expression(s). The response also contains some meta fields.

If you specified a search expression using the ?q option and the response returns an empty "items" list, that can indicate that:

- The search returned no results.
- There is no content recorded for the connection.

The following is an example response:

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "channel.id": 5,
      "end_time": "2017-08-14T10:35:43.957000",
      "rank": 2.4756217002868652,
      "record_id": {
        "begin": 158,
        "end": 160,
        "for_screenshot": 158
      },
      "start_time": "2017-08-14T10:35:19.098000",
      "trail_id": "12"
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "href":
"/api/audit/sessions/2a620c1cf39c537a5e80280283d741/content",
    "parent":
"/api/audit/sessions/2a620c1cf39c537a5e80280283d741",
    "remaining_seconds": 599
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	Top-level element, a list containing the details of the matching session.
channel.id	integer	A reference to the ID of the channel in the session where the event occurred.
end_time	string	The timestamp of when the content disappeared from the screen.  Starting with SPS 5 LTS, the timestamp is in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2018-10-11T09:23:38.000+02:00. In earlier versions, it was in UNIX timestamp format.
rank	float	Indicates the relevance of the match.  If there are several results, the order of them is based on their relevance.
record_id	integer	The content element's exact position in the audit trail file.
begin	integer	The identifier of the screenshot in the

Element		Type	Description
			audit trail file where the content element first appeared.
	end	integer	The identifier of the screenshot in the audit trail file where the content element last appeared.
	for_ screenshot	integer	The identifier of the most relevant screenshot in the audit trail file. This is the screenshot on which the event in question is the most clearly visible. For details on how to generate and retrieve the screenshot, see <a href="#">Generate and retrieve screenshot for content search</a> .
	start_time	string	The timestamp of when the content first appeared on the screen and recording started.  Starting with SPS 5 LTS, the timestamp is in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2018-10-11T09:23:38.000+02:00. In earlier versions, it was in UNIX timestamp format.
	trail_id	integer	The unique identifier of the trail that contains the event.

In addition, search results can contain the usual meta elements of other endpoints:

Element	Type	Description
meta	JSON object	Top-level element, a list containing meta information about the response.  For details about the type of information returned, see <a href="#">Message format</a> on page 10.

## Generate and retrieve screenshot for content search

To generate and download screenshots for a specific content search result, complete the following steps. For details on searching in the content of a session, see [Searching in connection content](#).

### 1. Perform a content search in a session.

Use a GET request on the endpoint of a specific session, for example:

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/content/?q=<my-search-expression>
```

For details, see [Searching in connection content](#). If there are search results for the search keywords in the session, the response includes a `record_id` block, for example:

```
"record_id": {  
  "begin": 158,  
  "end": 160,  
  "for_screenshot": 158  
},
```

### 2. Generate a screenshot for the search result.

Note the value of the `for_screenshot` key in the search response, and use it to generate a screenshot for that particular `record_id`. POST the value of the `for_screenshot` key to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/_generate?record_ids=<value-of-for_screenshot>` endpoint.

### 3. Download the screenshot.

To download the screenshot in PNG format, GET the value of the `for_screenshot` key to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/screenshots/<value-of-for_screenshot>` endpoint.

## Session statistics

The `api/audit/sessions/stats` endpoint provides statistics about recorded sessions (active and closed).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=<field-name>
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command retrieves statistical data about sessions.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=<field-name>
```

## Request parameters

Use the following parameters to fine-tune your request for statistics:

- **?q:** Narrow down the scope of statistics using one or more properties (elements) of the sessions.
- **?field:** Request statistics for the selected properties (elements and values) of sessions (for example, protocol).  
Using this parameter is mandatory.
- **?sub\_fields:** Request sub statistics for the selected properties (elements and values) of sessions (for example, protocol).  
This parameter only accepts a single parameter. If more than one parameter is listed, only the first will be considered.
- **?size:** Limit the range of values displayed in the statistics for a given field. Statistics will be shown only for the top size number of most frequently occurring values (that is, values with the highest number of counts).

Take the following example. If you query `/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=protocol&size=2`, and the following sessions were recorded:

```

...
{
  "Alpha": {
    "protocol": "http"
  },
  "Bravo": {
    "protocol": "ssh"
  },
  "Charlie": {
    "protocol": "rdp"
  },
  "Delta": {
    "protocol": "rdp"
  },
  "Echo": {
    "protocol": "rdp"
  },
  "Foxtrot": {
    "protocol": "http"
  },
  "Golf": {
    "protocol": "http"
  }
}
...

```

The response contains:

```

...
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/stats",
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "others": 1,
    "field": "protocol",
    "size": 2
  }
}
...

```

And the response items look like the snippet below. That is, in this example, there will be no statistics for "protocol": "ssh". The top 2 values are "rdp" and "http", with a count of 3 each. "ssh" occurred only once, so it did not make it to the top 2 most frequent values.

```
...
[
  {"count": 3, "value": "http"},
  {"count": 3, "value": "rdp"}
]
...
```

- **?start:** Statistics are returned for sessions that started after the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T10:00.
- **?end:** Statistics are returned for sessions that ended before the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T11:00.
- **?content:** Statistics are returned for indexed sessions that contain the type of content specified.

**NOTE:** When performing a content query, the maximum number of results returned is 3000. When this limit is exceeded, the scope of statistics is limited to the first 3000 sessions (even if there are more than 3000 sessions that match your criteria).

## Response

The following snippet is a sample response received when retrieving statistics about the protocol field.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

Those fields of the meta object that are specific to statistics are collected in table [Element](#).

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "count": 7,
      "value": "ssh"
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "field": "protocol",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/stats",
    "others": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "size": 10
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
body, or items when a	Top-level element (string)	Contains the properties that are in the scope of the requested statistics.



Element	Type	Description
list is returned		
count	integer	Indicates the number of sessions included in the scope of statistics.
value	string	Contains the value of the field that you requested statistics about.
meta	Top-level element	Contains links to different parts of the REST service.
field	string	Contains the name of the field that you requested statistics about.
sub_fields	string	Contains the name of the sub field that you requested statistics about.
others	integer	Some values of the field that you specified in your query are not included in the scope of statistics. This happens when a specific value occurs fewer times in the examined sessions than the aggregation <a href="#">size</a> .  The others field indicates the number of those distinct values that are not included in the statistics.  For a detailed explanation with an example, see <a href="#">?size</a> .
size	integer	The size that you specified in your query.

### Example 1:

If you query `"/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=protocol"`, and the following sessions were recorded:

```
...
{
  "Alpha": {
    "protocol": "ssh"
  },
  "Bravo": {
    "protocol": "ssh"
  },
  "Charlie": {
    "protocol": "rdp"
  },
}
```

```

"Delta": {
  "protocol": "rdp"
},
"Echo": {
  "protocol": "rdp"
},
"Foxtrot": {
  "protocol": "ssh"
},
"Golf": {
  "protocol": "ssh"
}
}
...

```

The response contains:

```

...
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/stats",
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "others": 0,
    "field": "protocol"
  }
}
...

```

The response items contain:

```

...
[
  {"count": 4, "value": "ssh"},
  {"count": 3, "value": "rdp"}
]
...

```

## Example 2:

If you query

`/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=protocol&content=login&start=2017-01-`

02&end=2017-01-03&q=psm.content\_reference\_id%3A%5B3%20T0%206%5D", and the following sessions were recorded:

```
{
  "Alpha": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "start_time": "2017-01-01",
    "end_time": "2017-01-02",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 1
    }
  },
  "Bravo": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "start_time": "2017-01-01",
    "end_time": "2017-01-02",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 2
    }
  },
  "Charlie": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "start_time": "2017-01-01",
    "end_time": "2017-01-02",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 3
    }
  },
  "Delta": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "start_time": "2017-01-03",
    "end_time": "2017-01-04",
    "psm": {
      "content_reference_id": 4
    }
  },
  "Echo": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "start_time": "2017-01-03",
    "end_time": "2017-01-04",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 5
    }
  },
  "Foxtrot": {
```

```

    "protocol": "ssh",
    "start_time": "2017-01-04",
    "end_time": "2017-01-06",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 6
    }
  },
  "Golf": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "start_time": "2017-01-02",
    "end_time": "2017-01-10",
    "recording": {
      "content_reference_id": 7
    }
  }
}

```

And the following sessions match when running the content query:

trail_id	rank	hits_count
1	1.555	1
2	1.555	1
3	1.555	1
4	1.555	1
6	1.555	1

The response contains:

```

...
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/stats",
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "others": 0,
    "field": "protocol"
  }
}
...

```

The response items contain:

```

...
[
  {"count": 2, "value": "rdp"}
]
...

```

### Example 3:

If you query `/api/audit/sessions/stats?field=user.gateway_username&?sub_fields=protocol&?size=1`, and the following sessions were recorded:

```
...
{
  "Alpha": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Alpha"
    }
  },
  "Bravo": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Bravo"
    }
  },
  "Charlie": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Charlie"
    }
  },
  "Delta": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Alpha"
    }
  },
  "Echo": {
    "protocol": "rdp",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Alpha"
    }
  },
  "Foxtrot": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Alpha"
    }
  },
  "Golf": {
```

```

    "protocol": "ssh",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Alpha"
    }
  },
  "Hotel": {
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "user": {
      "gateway_username": "user-Delta"
    }
  }
}
...

```

The response contains:

```

...
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/stats",
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
    "others": 3
  }
}
...

```

The response items contain:

```

...
[
  {
    "buckets": [
      {
        "count": 3,
        "value": "ssh"
      }
    ],
    "count": 5,
    "others": 2,
    "value": "user-Alpha"
  }
]
...

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	The query was well-formed and statistics have been successfully retrieved.
400	InvalidQueryValue	The query is invalid, for example, it has an invalid value.
500	SearchUnavailable	The search backend is inaccessible.

## Session histogram

The `api/audit/sessions/histogram` endpoint provides a histogram about the recorded sessions.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/histogram
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command retrieves statistical data about sessions.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/histogram
```

## Request parameters

Use the following query parameters to fine-tune your request for statistics:

- `?q`: Narrow down the scope of the histogram using one or more properties (elements) of the sessions.
- `?field`: Create a histogram for the selected properties (elements and values) of sessions (for example, protocol).

Using this parameter is mandatory.

- `?bin-size`: Determines the size of the unit for the histogram, for example, hour. SPS splits the queried period to intervals of this unit, and returns the number of sessions to each interval. For example, if you query an histogram from 2018-02-12:14:40 to 2018-02-16:14:40, and you set the bin-size to day, then SPS will return five datasets (one for each day). If you set the bin-size to week, then SPS will return only one dataset.
- `?start`: Create a histogram from the sessions that started after the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T10:00. By default, this is the one month before the date of the request.
- `?end`: Create a histogram from the sessions that ended before the specified date. Use the ISO 8601 format for the date, for example, 2017-01-25T11:00. By default, this is the date of the request.
- `?size`: Limit the range of values displayed in the histogram for a given field. The histogram will only be created for the top size number of most frequently occurring values (that is, values with the highest number of counts).

## Response

The following snippet is a sample response received when retrieving a histogram about the audited sessions.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

Those fields of the meta object that are specific to histograms are described in table [Element](#) .

```
{
  "body": {
    "buckets": [
      { "active_count": 61, "id": "2018-01-15T12:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
61 },
      { "active_count": 99, "id": "2018-01-15T13:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
89 },
      { "active_count": 39, "id": "2018-01-15T14:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
24 },
      { "active_count": 62, "id": "2018-01-15T15:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
```



```

62 },
    { "active_count": 92, "id": "2018-01-15T16:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
81 },
    { "active_count": 27, "id": "2018-01-15T17:00:00.000Z", "start_count":
19 }
  ]
},

"key": "histogram",
"meta":
{
  "bin_size": "month",
  "field": "recording.connection_policy",
  "href": "/api/audit/sessions/histogram",
  "parent": "/api/audit/sessions",
  "remaining_seconds": 599,
  "time_zone": "Etc/UTC",
  "size": "10"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
body	Top-level element (string)	Contains the properties that are in the scope of the requested histogram.
buckets	list	Contains the details of the histogram.
active_count	integer	The number of sessions that were active in this interval.
id	date	The starting date of the interval in ISO 8601 format.
start_count	integer	The number of sessions that were started in this interval.
meta	Top-level element (JSON object)	Contains metadata about the endpoint and the histogram.
bin_size	string	The size of the intervals used to create the histogram. You can change this using the <code>?bin_size</code> parameter of the request. Default value: <code>month</code> . Possible values: <code>second</code> , <code>minute</code> , <code>hour</code> , <code>day</code> , <code>week</code> , <code>month</code> , <code>year</code>
field	string	Contains the name of the field that you requested statistics about.

Element	Type	Description
end	date	The date set in the ?end parameter of the request. By default, this is the date of the request.
start	date	The date set in the ?start parameter of the request. By default, this is one month before the date of the request.
time_ zone	string	The time zone to use when calculating the intervals of the histogram, for example, Etc/UTC. By default, SPS uses UTC+0 (Zulu Time Zone). For the list of available time zones, see <a href="#">Element</a> .
size	integer	The size that you specified in your query.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	The query was well-formed and the histogram has been successfully retrieved.
400	TooMuchBucketsInResult	Using the requested bin_size would result in too many intervals for the queried period.
400	NotSupportedContentOption	This endpoint does not support filtering in the content of sessions.

## Session alerts

The `api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/alerts` endpoint lists the alerts triggered in a session (if any). For details on configuring alerts, see [Real-time content monitoring with Content Policies](#).

An event is listed as alert only if the **Actions > Store in Connection Database** option is selected in the **Content Policy** used to handle the session.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/alerts
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the alerts of a session.

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/alerts"
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the alerts of a session.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "alert_type": "adp.event.command",
      "channel_id": "0",
      "matched_action": "ls",
      "matched_content": "[myuser@examplehost ~]$ ls",
      "matched_regexp": "ls",
      "record_id": 94,
      "rule_name": "PatternMatcherRule",
      "time": "2017-04-25T13:26:39.144356"
    },
    {
      "alert_type": "adp.event.command",
      "channel_id": "0",
      "matched_action": "man man",
      "matched_content": "[myuser@examplehost ~]$ man man",

```

```

        "matched_regexp": "man",
        "record_id": 197,
        "rule_name": "PatternMatcherRule",
        "time": "2017-04-25T13:34:15.265411"
    }
],
"meta": {
    "first":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/alerts?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/alerts",
    "last":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/alerts?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "limit": 500,
    "match_count": 3,
    "next": null,
    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	Top level element, a list containing the alerts of the session.
alert_type	string	The type of the event that triggered the alert. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adp.event.command: A command entered in SSH or Telnet.</li> <li>adp.event.screen.content: Alert triggered by the screen content.</li> <li>adp.event.screen.creditcard: Credit card numbers detected. Displayed only as an alert, not visible in the events.</li> <li>adp.event.screen.windowtitle: The title of the window in graphic protocols.</li> </ul>
channel_id	string	The regular expression that matched the command line without prompt.
matched_action	integer	A reference to the ID of the channel in the session where the event occurred.

Element	Type	Description
matched_content	text	The content that occurred in the session and triggered the alert. Note that this value contains the context of the match as well. For example, if a Content Policy triggers an alert if a user types the sudo command, then the psm.alerts.matched_content value contains the entire command line, including the command prompt, for example, myuser@examplehost:~\$ man sudo
matched_regex	text	The regular expression (match field) of the Content Policy that matched a part of the content and triggered the alert. For details, see <a href="#">Real-time content monitoring with Content Policies</a> .
record_id	integer	The ID number of the alert within the session.
rule_name	string	The name of the content policy rule that triggered the alert. Note that this is not the name of the Content Policy.
time	string	The timestamp when the alert was triggered, for example, 2017-04-25T13:26:39.144356.

## Changing the display limit

You can use the ?limit option to change the number of items displayed at once. The default limit is 500.

```
?limit=1000
```

To navigate beyond the displayed set, use the offset option.

## Navigating large datasets

You can use the ?offset option to navigate data sets that extend beyond the display limit. The default value of the offset is 0, this is the initially displayed set. To move to other items beyond the initial set, increase the value to a number that corresponds to the item where you want to start displaying results from.

Example: the display limit is the default 500, and the number of sessions is 1012. The initial 500 sessions are listed at:

```
?offset=0
```

To view sessions from 501 to 1000, change the offset to 501:

```
?offset=501
```

To display the remaining 12 sessions, change the offset to 1001:

```
?offset=1001
```

## Sorting and filtering

Sorting and filtering alerts is currently not supported. The items are automatically sorted by the record ID. The response includes every available field.

# Session events

The `api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/events` endpoint lists the events extracted from a session (if any). Events are available only if the session is indexed. For details on configuring indexing, see [Local services: configuring the indexer](#) on page 764.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/events
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the events of a session.

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/events"
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the events of a session.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "action": "ls",
      "channels_id": "0",
      "content": "myuser@examplehost:~$ ls",
      "record_id": 46,
      "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:10.832",
      "type": "command"
    },
    {
      "action": "cd",
      "channels_id": "0",
      "content": "myuser@examplehost:~$ cd /cd",
      "record_id": 64,
      "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:15.488",
      "type": "command"
    },
    {
      "action": "cat 24hrs.txt",
      "channels_id": "0",
      "content": "myuser@examplehost:/var$ cat 24hrs.txt",
      "record_id": 78,
      "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:18.017",
      "type": "command"
    },
    {
      "action": "ls -la",
      "channels_id": "0",
      "content": "myuser@examplehost:/var$ ls -la",
      "record_id": 95,
      "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:21.04",
      "type": "command"
    },
    {
      "action": "echo example.txt",
      "channels_id": "0",
      "content": "myuser@examplehost:/var$ echo example.txt",
      "record_id": 113,
      "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:23.353",
      "type": "command"
    },
    {
      "action": "ls",
```

```

        "channels_id": "0",
        "content": "myuser@examplehost:/var$ man sudo",
        "record_id": 148,
        "time": "2017-04-11T09:21:27.017",
        "type": "command"
    }
],
"meta": {
    "first":
"/api/audit/sessions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff/events?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff/events",
    "last":
"/api/audit/sessions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff/events?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "limit": 500,
    "next": null,
    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions/7930f4308efe8aecd710202d815b76ff",
    "previous": null
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	Top level element, a list containing the alerts of the session.
action	string	The command line without prompt in commands.
channels_id	integer	A reference to the ID of the channel in the session where the event occurred.
content	text	The event that occurred in the session. Note that this value contains the context of the event as well. For example, for command events in terminal sessions, the value contains the entire command line, including the command prompt. For example, <code>myuser@examplehost:~\$ man sudo</code>
record_id	integer	The ID number of the event within the session.
type	string	The type of the event. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>command: A command entered in SSH or Telnet.</li> <li>file_transfer: A file transfer event.</li> <li>http_request: An HTTP request initiated during the session.</li> <li>window_title: The title of the window in graphic</li> </ul>



Element	Type	Description
		protocols.
time	string	The timestamp when the event occurred, for example, 2017-04-25T13:26:39.144356.

## Changing the display limit

You can use the `?limit` option to change the number of items displayed at once. The default limit is 500.

```
?limit=1000
```

To navigate beyond the displayed set, use the `offset` option.

## Navigating large datasets

You can use the `?offset` option to navigate data sets that extend beyond the display limit. The default value of the offset is 0, this is the initially displayed set. To move to other items beyond the initial set, increase the value to a number that corresponds to the item where you want to start displaying results from.

Example: the display limit is the default 500, and the number of sessions is 1012. The initial 500 sessions are listed at:

```
?offset=0
```

To view sessions from 501 to 1000, change the offset to 501:

```
?offset=501
```

To display the remaining 12 sessions, change the offset to 1001:

```
?offset=1001
```

## Filtering

You can filter events at the `/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/events` endpoint. Use the `?q` option to filter the list using one or more properties (elements) of the sessions.

```
?q=content:sudo
```

You can escape special characters using the backslash character.

```
?q=content:\"Copying Files\"
```

To add multiple elements to the filter, you can use the AND, AND NOT, and OR operators.

```
content:ls AND content:cp AND NOT content:mv
```

You can create groups using `()` (parentheses).

```
?q=(content:rm OR content:mv) AND channels_id:5
```

You can also use `()` (parentheses) to add multiple possible values for a property.

```
?q=content:(sudo rm)
```

You can use the `*` (asterisk) and `?` (question mark) wildcards for string-type values.

```
?q=content:?dmi*
```

You can define ranges using `[]` (brackets) or `{}` (braces) and the `TO` operator. This only works for numeric (int) values.

- `[` means equal or higher than the following value
- `]` means equal or lower than the preceding value
- `{` means higher than the following value
- `}` means lower than the preceding value

For example, the following range resolves to 2:

```
?q=channels_id:{1 TO 3}
```

You can also use the `*` (asterisk) wildcard in the range.

```
?q=channels_id:[* TO 5]
```

Note that not all connection data can be used for filtering. The available elements are:

- `channels_id`: [integer] The channel in the session where the event occurred.
- `content`: [text] The event that occurred in the session.
- `record_id`: [integer] The identifier of the event in the session.
- `time`: [string] The timestamp when the event occurred.
- `type`: [string] The type of the event:
  - `command`: A command entered in SSH or Telnet.
  - `screen.content`: Screen content.
  - `screen.creditcard`: Credit card numbers detected. Displayed only as an alert, not visible in the events.
  - `screen.windowtitle`: The title of the window in graphic protocols.

# Indexing sessions

The `api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/indexing` endpoint lists the indexing-related details in this session (if any). For details on configuring indexing, see [Local services: configuring the indexer](#) on page 764.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/indexers
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the indexing-related details of a session.

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/indexing"
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the indexing-related details of a session.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```

{
  "items": [
    {
      "config": {
        "command": {
          "enabled": true
        },
        "keyboard": {
          "buffer_interval": 3,
          "enabled": false
        },
        "mouse": {
          "buffer_interval": 1,
          "enabled": false
        },
        "near_realtime": false,
        "ocr_languages": [],
        "screen": {
          "enabled": true,
          "omnipage_trade_off": "TO_ACCURATE"
        },
        "title": {
          "enabled": true
        }
      },
      "statistics": {
        "cpu_time": 5,
        "duration": 149,
        "start_time": 1542116524143
      },
      "status": "COMPLETED",
      "version": {
        "adp": "6.0.20",
        "worker": "4.0.26"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "href": "/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer",
    "last":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "limit": 500,
    "match_count": 1,
    "next": null,
  }
}

```

```

    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 599
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	<p>Top level element, a list containing the indexing-related details of the session.</p> <p>For details, see <code>indexer_info</code> section in <a href="#">"List of available search queries" in the Administration Guide</a>.</p>

## Changing the display limit

You can use the `?limit` option to change the number of items displayed at once. The default limit is 500.

```
?limit=1000
```

To navigate beyond the displayed set, use the `offset` option.

## Navigating large datasets

You can use the `?offset` option to navigate data sets that extend beyond the display limit. The default value of the offset is 0, this is the initially displayed set. To move to other items beyond the initial set, increase the value to a number that corresponds to the item where you want to start displaying results from.

Example: the display limit is the default 500, and the number of sessions is 1012. The initial 500 sessions are listed at:

```
?offset=0
```

To view sessions from 501 to 1000, change the offset to 501:

```
?offset=501
```

To display the remaining 12 sessions, change the offset to 1001:

```
?offset=1001
```

# Session audit trail downloads

The `api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/trail_downloads` endpoint lists the details of audit-trail downloads in this session (if any). For details on downloading audit trails, see [Local services: configuring the indexer](#) on page 764.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/trail_downloads
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the indexing-related details of a session.

```
curl --cookie cookies "https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/audit/sessions/<session-id>/trail_downloads"
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the indexing-related details of a session.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "from_api": false,
      "ip_address": "10.20.30.40",
      "time": "2018-11-20T11:10:19.000Z",
      "username": "admin"
    },
    {
      "from_api": false,
      "ip_address": "10.20.30.40",
      "time": "2018-11-20T11:10:38.000Z",
      "username": "admin"
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "href":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer",
    "last":
"/api/audit/sessions/c7e51cebad1a3e2ade480909f7687b16/indexer?limit=500&offset=
0",
    "limit": 5,
    "match_count": 2,
    "next": null,
    "offset": 0,
    "parent": "/api/audit/sessions/rUhhQZ3jYsY1NDWYp9DEpq",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 599
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
items	list	Top level element, a list containing the indexing-related details of the session.
from_api	boolean	True, if the audit trail was not downloaded from the GUI, but through SOAP or REST API.
ip_address	string	The IP address of the client that downloaded the audit trail.
time	boolean	The exact time when the user downloaded the audit trail file.
username	string	The user name of the user who downloaded the audit trail.

## Changing the display limit

You can use the `?limit` option to change the number of items displayed at once. The default limit is 500.

```
?limit=1000
```

To navigate beyond the displayed set, use the `offset` option.

## Navigating large datasets

You can use the `?offset` option to navigate data sets that extend beyond the display limit. The default value of the offset is 0, this is the initially displayed set. To move to other items beyond the initial set, increase the value to a number that corresponds to the item where you want to start displaying results from.

Example: the display limit is the default 500, and the number of sessions is 1012. The initial 500 sessions are listed at:

```
?offset=0
```

To view sessions from 501 to 1000, change the offset to 501:

```
?offset=501
```

To display the remaining 12 sessions, change the offset to 1001:

```
?offset=1001
```

# Local services: configuring the indexer

Indexing is a resource intensive (CPU and hard disk) operation, and depending on the number of processed audit trails and parallel connections passing SPS, may affect the performance of SPS. Test it thoroughly before enabling it in a production environment that is under heavy load. If your SPS appliance cannot handle the connections and the indexing, consider using external indexers (see ["Configuring external indexers" in the Administration Guide](#)) to decrease the load on SPS. For sizing recommendations, ask your One Identity partner or [contact our Support Team](#).

**NOTE:** Only those audit trails will be processed that were created after full-text indexing had been configured for the connection policy. It is not possible to process already existing audit trails.

**NOTE:** Using content policies significantly slows down connections (approximately 5 times slower), and can also cause performance problems when using the indexer service.



## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/indexer
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configuration options.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/indexer
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when external indexers are disabled.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "decryption_keys": [
      {
        "key": "e38d47bd-5374-4d7c-b683-e26ea77142e2",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/x509/e38d47bd-5374-4d7c-b683-
e26ea77142e2"
        }
      }
    ],
  }
}
```

```

        "number_of_workers": 1,
        "remote_access": {
            "enabled": false
        },
        "selection": "integrated"
    },
    "key": "indexer",
    "meta": {
        "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
        "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
        "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
        "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/postgresql",
        "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
        "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
        "remaining_seconds": 599,
        "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
}

```

A sample response when external indexers are enabled:

```

{
    "body": {
        "decryption_keys": [],
        "number_of_workers": 1,
        "number_of_workers": 0,
        "remote_access": {
            "access_restriction": {
                "allowed_from": [
                    "10.40.0.0/16"
                ],
                "enabled": true
            },
            "enabled": true,
            "listen": [
                {
                    "address": {
                        "key":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
                        "meta": {
                            "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/address
es/1"
                        }
                    },
                    "port": 12345
                }
            ],
            "ssl_config": {

```

```

        "ca": {
            "key": "52735ce4-4a43-458d-8803-c23c715640a5",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/x509/52735ce4-4a43-458d-
8803-c23c715640a5"
            }
        },
        "service": {
            "key": "60eacdba-d889-4cb4-bdb0-cbbd4054f01c",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/x509/60eacdba-d889-4cb4-
bdb0-cbbd4054f01c"
            }
        },
        "worker": {
            "key": "93198544-1e82-4661-90b7-e01b0b1e2ed9",
            "meta": {
                "href": "/api/configuration/x509/93198544-1e82-4661-
90b7-e01b0b1e2ed9"
            }
        }
    },
    "selection": "integrated"
},
"key": "indexer",
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
    "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
    "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
    "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/postgresql",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
    "remaining_seconds": 599,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the endpoint.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the indexer service.
decryption_keys	list	Indexing encrypted audit trails requires the

Element	Type	Description
		X.509 certificates and the matching private keys. The certificates must in PEM format, and use RSA keys. This parameter lists the reference IDs of the configured decryption keys. When configuring the indexer, you must first upload the keys before you can configure the decryption keys. For details, see <a href="#">Private keys stored on SPS</a> on page 267.
key	reference	The ID of the referenced decryption key. You can upload private keys at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/private_key</a> endpoint. For details, see <a href="#">Private keys stored on SPS</a> on page 267.
number_of_near_realtime_workers	integer	The number of indexer workers configured to perform near-realtime indexing. For details, see <a href="#">"Configuring the external indexer" in the Administration Guide</a> .
number_of_workers	integer	This option determines the maximum number of parallel indexing tasks that the SPS appliance performs. The default value is set to the number of detected CPU cores. Note that indexing audit trails requires about 50-100 Mbytes of memory for terminal sessions (SSH, Telnet, TN3270), and 150-300 Mbytes for graphical sessions (RDP, ICA, VNC, X11). Consider the memory usage of your SPS host before modifying this value.
<a href="#">remote_access</a>	JSON object	Enables external indexers to access the SPS host, and configures access restrictions and other parameters.
selection	string	The value of this option must be integrated.

Element	Type	Description
access_restriction	JSON object	Enables and configures limitations on the clients that can access the web interface, based on the IP address of the clients.
allowed_from	list	The list of IP networks from where the administrators are permitted to access this management interface. To specify the IP addresses or networks, use the IPv4-Address/prefix format, for example, 10.40.0.0/16.
enable	boolean	Set it to true to restrict access to the specified client

Element	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	<p>Enables the remote access for the external indexers. That way, indexer services running on external hosts can access the audit trails, index them, and upload the indexed data to SPS. If this option is set to <code>False</code>, SPS ignores every other option of this object. For details on installing and configuring external indexers, see <a href="#">"Configuring external indexers" in the Administration Guide</a>.</p> <p><b>CAUTION:</b></p> <p><b>Disabling an already configured remote indexer access causes SPS to delete every related certificate. If you re-enable remote indexer access, SPS generates new certificates, and you have to import them to the external indexer hosts.</b></p>
listen	list	Selects the network interface, IP address, and port where the clients can access the web interface.
addresses	JSON object	<p>A reference to a configured network interface and IP address where this local service accepts connections. For example, if querying the interface <code>/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/</code> returns the following response:</p>

```
{
  "body": {
    "interfaces": {
      "@order": [
        "ff7574025754b3df1647001"
      ],
      "ff7574025754b3df1647001": {
        "addresses": {
          "1": "10.40.255.171/24",
          "@order": [
            "1"
          ]
        },
        "name": "default",
        "vlan": 0
      }
    }
  },
}
```

Element	Type	Description
---------	------	-------------

```

        "name": "eth0",
        "speed": "auto"
    },
    "key": "nic1",
    "meta": {
        "first": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic1",
        "href":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic1",
        "last": "/api/-
configuration/network/nics/nic3",
        "next":
"/api/configuration/network/nics/nic2",
        "parent": "/api/configuration/network/nics",
        "previous": null,
        "transaction": "/api/transaction"
    }
}

```

Then the listening address of the local service is the following.

```
nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1
```

This is the format you have to use when configuring the address of the local service using REST:

```

"address": "nic1.in-
terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1"

```

When querying a local services endpoint, the response will contain a reference to the IP address of the interface in the following format:

```

"address": {
    "key": "nic1.in-
terfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
    "meta": {
        "href": "/api/-
config-
uration/net-
work/n-
ics/n-
ic1#interfaces/ff7574025754b3df1647001/addresses/1"
    }
}

```

Element	Type	Description	
		<pre>    },   }, }</pre>	
	port	integer	The port number where this local service accepts connections.
ssl_config		JSON object	Contains references to the certificates used to encrypt the communication between SPS and the external indexer hosts. SPS generates these certificates automatically when you enable the indexer service.
	ca	reference	The ID of the CA certificate used to sign the certificates used to communicate between SPS and the external indexers.
	service	reference	The ID of the certificate that SPS shows to the external indexer hosts.
	worker	reference	The ID of the certificate that the external indexer hosts must show to SPS.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Updating the indexer configuration

To update the configuration of the indexer, you have to PUT the updated configuration in JSON format to the endpoint, for example:

```
{
  "decryption_keys": ["216b33dd-a1cd-41b1-85c5-66290b7a043d"],
  "number_of_near_realtime_workers": 0,
  "number_of_workers": 2,
  "remote_access": {
    "access_restriction": {
      "allowed_from": [
        "10.40.0.0/16"
      ],
      "enabled": true
    },
    "enabled": true,
    "listen": [
      {
        "address":
"nic1.interfaces.ff7574025754b3df1647001.addresses.1",
        "port": 12354
      }
    ],
    "ssl_config": {
      "ca": "773ed50d-3066-44f1-84ec-cbef59111702",
      "service": "a8b6c791-c24a-466d-ac50-a425a5253d46",
      "worker": "c54c436f-63c5-4a2e-a59e-7ad904bbf0f2"
    }
  },
  "selection": "integrated"
}
```

## Indexer policies

Indexer policies allow you to configure the Optical Character Recognition (OCR) engine of SPS, and specify which languages it should use. Only graphical protocols (RDP, Citrix ICA, VNC) are affected.

**NOTE:** In the case of graphical protocols, the default Optical Character Recognition (OCR) configuration is automatic language detection. This means that the OCR engine will attempt to detect the languages of the indexed audit trails automatically. However, if you know in advance what language(s) will be used, create a new Indexer Policy.

If you specify the languages manually, note the following:

- Specifying only one language provides the best results in terms of performance and precision.
- The English language is always detected along with the non-English languages that you have configured. However, if you want the OCR to only recognize the English language, you have to select it from the list of languages.



- There are certain limitations in the OCR engine when recognizing languages with very different character sets. For this reason, consider the following:
  - When selecting Asian languages (Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Korean), avoid adding languages that use the Latin alphabet.
  - When selecting the Arabic language, avoid selecting any other languages.
  - The Thai language is currently not supported. If you are interested in using SPS to index Thai texts, [contact our Sales Team](#).

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/indexing
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the available indexer policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/indexing
```

The following command displays a specific indexer policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/indexing/<id-of-the-policy>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the /api/configuration/policies/indexing/ endpoint.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "-50000",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "13442970955825a89b55e46",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/indexing/13442970955825a89b55e46"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/ldap_servers",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores",
    "remaining_seconds": 599,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

A sample response when querying a specific indexer policy:

```
{
  "body": {
    "index": {
      "command": true,
      "keyboard": false,
      "mouse": false,
      "screen_content": false,
      "window_title": true
    },
    "name": "english-german-russian",
    "ocr": {
      "accuracy": "accurate"
      "custom_languages": {
        "enabled": true,
        "languages": [
          "eng",

```

```

        "deu",
        "rus"
    ]
}
},
"key": "-50000",
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/-50000",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 599,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the configuration options of the indexer policy.
index	Top level element	<p>Contains the indexed events of the indexer policy. Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>command: A command entered in SSH or Telnet.</li> <li>keyboard: Keyboard-related events, for example, pressing Enter.</li> <li>mouse: Mouse-related events, for example, mouse clicks.</li> <li>screen_content: Screen content elements, for example, commands, window titles, IP addresses, user names, and so on.</li> <li>window_title: The title of the window in graphic protocols.</li> </ul>
name	string	The name of the indexer policy.
ocr	JSON object	Configuration of the OCR engine.

Element	Type	Description
accuracy	string	<p>Accuracy level for Optical Character Recognition. Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fast: The fastest option with potentially less accurate results. Select this option if speed is more important to you than getting the most accurate results possible.</li> <li>balanced: Fairly accurate option with less than optimum speed. Select this option if you want results to be fairly accurate but you have more than a few sessions to process and processing time is less of a concern.</li> <li>accurate: The most accurate option with less optimal speed. Select this option if you must have the most accurate results possible and speed is less important or you only have a few sessions to process.</li> </ul>
custom_languages	Top level element	Configures what languages to detect.

Custom languages elements	Type	Description
custom_languages	Top level element	Configures what languages to detect.
enabled	boolean	<p>If false, the OCR engine detects the language of the text automatically. This is the default behavior. To specify which languages to use, set the custom_languages element to true, and list the abbreviation of the languages in the languages element (for example, "eng", "ger").</p>
languages	list	<p>The list of languages the OCR engine should use to process graphical protocols. To specify which languages to use, set the custom_languages element to true, and list the abbreviation of the languages in the languages element (for example, "eng", "ger").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specifying only one language provides the best results in terms of performance and precision.</li> <li>The English language is always detected</li> </ul>

Custom languages elements	Type	Description
		<p>along with the non-English languages that you have configured. However, if you want the OCR to only recognize the English language, you have to select it from the list of languages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are certain limitations in the OCR engine when recognizing languages with very different character sets. For this reason, consider the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When selecting Asian languages (Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Korean), avoid adding languages that use the Latin alphabet.</li> <li>When selecting the Arabic language, avoid selecting any other languages.</li> <li>The Thai language is currently not supported. If you are interested in using SPS to index Thai texts, <a href="#">contact our Sales Team</a>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The following languages are supported: <i>English</i>: eng, <i>German</i>: deu, <i>French</i>: fra, <i>Dutch</i>: nld, <i>Norwegian</i>: nor, <i>Swedish</i>: swe, <i>Finnish</i>: fin, <i>Danish</i>: dan, <i>Icelandic</i>: isl, <i>Portuguese</i>: por, <i>Spanish</i>: spa, <i>Catalan</i>: cat, <i>Galician</i>: glg, <i>Italian</i>: ita, <i>Maltese</i>: mlt, <i>Greek</i>: ell, <i>Polish</i>: pol, <i>Czech</i>: ces, <i>Slovak</i>: slk, <i>Hungarian</i>: hun, <i>Slovenian</i>: slv, <i>Croatian</i>: hrv, <i>Romanian</i>: ron, <i>Albanian</i>: sqi, <i>Turkish</i>: tur, <i>Estonian</i>: est, <i>Latvian</i>: lav, <i>Lithuanian</i>: lit, <i>Esperanto</i>: epo, <i>Serbian(Latin)</i>: qsl, <i>Serbian</i>: srp, <i>Macedonian</i>: mkd, <i>Moldavian</i>: mol, <i>Bulgarian</i>: bul, <i>Byelorussian</i>: bel, <i>Ukrainian</i>: ukr, <i>Russian</i>: rus, <i>Chechen</i>: che, <i>Kabardian</i>: kbd, <i>Afrikaans</i>: afr, <i>Aymara</i>: aym, <i>Basque</i>: eus, <i>Bemba</i>: bem, <i>Blackfoot</i>: bla, <i>Breton</i>: bre, <i>Brazilian</i>: qbp, <i>Bugotu</i>: bgt, <i>Chamorro</i>: cha, <i>Tswana(Chuana)</i>: tsn, <i>Corsican</i>: cos, <i>Crow</i>: cro, <i>Eskimo</i>: qes, <i>Faroese</i>: fao, <i>Fijian</i>: fij, <i>Frisian</i>: fry, <i>Friulian</i>: fur, <i>Gaelic(Irish)</i>: gle, <i>Gaelic (Scottish)</i>: gla, <i>Ganda(Luganda)</i>: lug, <i>Guarani</i>: grn, <i>Hani</i>: hni, <i>Hawaiian</i>: haw, <i>Ido</i>: ido, <i>Indonesian</i>: ind, <i>Interlingua</i>: ina, <i>Kasub</i>: csb, <i>Kawa</i>: wbm, <i>Kikuyu</i>: kik, <i>Kongo</i>: kon, <i>Kpelle</i>: kpe,</p>

Custom languages elements	Type	Description
		<i>Kurdish: kur, Latin: lat, Luba: lua, Luxembourgish: ltz, Malagasy: mlg, Malay: msa, Malinke: mlq, Maori: mri, Mayan: MYN, Miao: hmn, Minangkabau: min, Mohawk: moh, Nahuatl: NAH, Nyanja: nya, Occidental: ile, Ojibway: oji, Papiamento: pap, PidginEnglish: tpi, Provencal: oci, Quechua: que, Rhaetic: roh, Romany: rom, Rwanda: kin, Rundi: run, Samoan: smo, Sardinian: srd, Shona: sna, Sioux: dak, Sami: SMI, Sami(Lule): smj, Sami(Northern): sme, Sami(Southern): sma, Somali: som, Sotho: sot, Sundanese: sun, Swahili: swa, Swazi: ssw, Tagalog: tgl, Tahitian: tah, Tinpo: qti, Tongan: ton, Tun: tug, Visayan: qis, Welsh: cym, Sorbian(Wend): WEN, Wolof: wol, Xhosa: xho, Zapotec: zap, Zulu: zul.</i>

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.
409	Conflict	No open Transaction is available. Open a transaction before using this request. For details, see <a href="#">Open a transaction</a> on page 29.

## Add an indexing policy

To add an indexing policy, you have to:

### 1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. **Create the JSON object for the new indexing policy.**

You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#) .

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/indexing` endpoint. If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new ticketing policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "aa423b72-0d0f-4275-be30-494e9a99ffad",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing/aa423b72-0d0f-4275-be30-494e9a99ffad",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Reporting

## Reporting

List of endpoints for configuring reporting, and accessing the generated reports.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command lists the available endpoints.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting
```



## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the available endpoints.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/ssh",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/rdp",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "content_subchapters",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "custom_subchapters",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "predefined_reports",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "reports",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "statistics_subchapters",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

Endpoint	Description
<a href="#">content_subchapters</a>	List of the reporting subchapters created from audit trail content (statistics of search keywords, and screenshots).
<a href="#">custom_subchapters</a>	List of the reporting subchapters created from custom queries to the SPS connection database.
<a href="#">predefined_reports</a>	List of the pre-defined reports available on SPS.
<a href="#">reports</a>	List of the configured reports.
<a href="#">statistics_subchapters</a>	List of the reporting subchapters created from connection statistics.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Reports

List of the configured reports.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the configured reports.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific report.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports/<key_value>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing reports.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "next": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
```

```

{
  "key": "7798770004e472c8576912",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/7798770004e472c8576912"
  }
},
{
  "key": "8292675195707f19d932af",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/8292675195707f19d932af"
  }
}
]
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific report, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access": [
      "report"
    ],
    "chapters": [
      {
        "name": "System health",
        "subchapters": [
          {
            "name": "system_health_network_connections",
            "selection": "builtin"
          },
          {
            "name": "system_health_load_average",
            "selection": "builtin"
          }
        ]
      },
      {
        "name": "All connections",
        "subchapters": [
          {
            "name": "connection_each_scb_top10_channel_types_each",
            "selection": "builtin"
          },
          {
            "name": "connection_each_scb_top10_portforward_targets_each",
            "selection": "builtin"
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  }
}

```

```

    },
    {
      "name": "Search statistics",
      "subchapters": [
        {
          "reference": "21111736175707f1df8bea1",
          "selection": "custom"
        }
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "Misc",
      "subchapters": [
        {
          "reference": "13869311625707e0a3e0892",
          "selection": "custom"
        }
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "Advanced statistics",
      "subchapters": [
        {
          "reference": "5983143445707eb740fee3",
          "selection": "custom"
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
  "email_recipients": {
    "recipients": [
      "admin@company.com"
    ],
    "selection": "other"
  },
  "frequency": {
    "day": false,
    "month": true,
    "week": false
  },
  "logo_id": "logoC890jH",
  "name": "all-options",
  "send_report_in_email": true
},
"key": "8292675195707f19d932af",
"meta": {
  "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/7798770004e472c8576912",
  "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/8292675195707f19d932af",

```

```

    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/8292675195707f19d932af",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/12046247915707e5d6a5c59",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the report
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the report.
access	list	Required. List of access control groups whose members can access the subchapter.  To deny access to the report, use "admin" as the only value for the element.
chapters	Top level item	A chapter of the report.
email_recipients	Top level item	Contains the list of e-mails where the generated report is sent.
recipients	list	Custom list of e-mails where the generated report is sent.  To use a custom list, the selection element must be set to other.
selection	string	This element can have two values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>default uses the e-mail address configured in the reporting_address element of the https://&lt;IP-address-of-SPS&gt;/api/configuration/management/email endpoint (or the <b>Basic Settings &gt; Management &gt; Mail settings &gt; Send reports to</b> field on the web UI).</li> <li>other uses the e-mails listed in the recipients element.</li> </ul>
frequency	Top	Contains the list of options for defining the

Element	Type	Description
	level item	frequency of generating the report.
day	boolean	Set it to true to generate the report each day.
month	boolean	Set it to true to generate the report each month.
week	boolean	Set it to true to generate the report each week.
logo_id	string	<p>The ID of the custom logo. The null value means the report is generated using the default logo.</p> <p>You can upload a custom logo on the web UI of SPS, using the <b>Reporting &gt; Configuration &gt; &lt;report&gt; &gt; Choose new logo</b> button.</p>
name	string	The name of the report.
send_report_in_email	boolean	Set it to false if you do not want to include the generated report in the e-mail.

Chapters elements	Type	Description
name	string	Name of the chapter.
subchapters	list	List of subchapters included in the chapter.
name	string	<p>Name of the built-in subchapter included in the chapter. For the list of the built-in subchapters, see <a href="#">Built-in subchapters</a> on page 792.</p> <p>To include a built-in subchapter, use the value of its name element, not the key.</p>
reference	string	<p>The key of the custom, content, or statistics subchapter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For the keys of the reporting subchapters created from custom queries to the SPS connection database, see the custom_subchapters endpoint.</li> <li>For the keys of the reporting subchapters created from audit trail</li> </ul>

Chapters elements	Type	Description
		<p>content (statistics of search keywords, and screenshots), see the <code>reporting/content_subchapters</code> endpoint.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For the keys of the reporting subchapters created from connection statistics, see the <code>reporting/statistics_subchapters</code> endpoint.</li> </ul> <p>To include a custom, content, or statistics subchapter, use the value of its key element, not the name.</p>
	selection	<p>string</p> <p>This element can have two values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <code>builtin</code> for the default reporting subchapters.</li> <li>Set <code>custom</code> for all other subchapters (custom, content or statistics).</li> </ul>

### Examples:

Set the e-mail recipients to the default (as configured in the `reporting_address` element of the `/api/configuration/management/email` endpoint):

```
"email_recipients": {
  "selection": "default"
}
```

Create a custom set of e-mail recipients:

```
"email_recipients": {
  "recipients": [
    "<email-1>",
    "<email-2>"
  ],
  "selection": "other"
}
```

Add a reporting chapter with built-in subchapters:



```

"chapters": [
  {
    "name": "<custom-name>",
    "subchapters": [
      {
        "name": "system_health_filesystem_usage",
        "selection": "builtin"
      },
      {
        "name": "system_health_network_connections",
        "selection": "builtin"
      },
      {
        "name": "system_health_load_average",
        "selection": "builtin"
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

Add a reporting chapter with custom, content, or statistics subchapters:

```

"chapters": [
  {
    "name": "<custom-name>",
    "subchapters": [
      {
        "reference": "<key-of-subchapter>",
        "selection": "custom"
      },
      {
        "reference": "<key-of-subchapter>",
        "selection": "custom"
      }
    ]
  }
]

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.

Code	Description	Notes
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
400	IncompleteConfigurationSubtreeError	Possible cause: PUT operation on the reports endpoint, instead of POST.
400	IncompleteConfigurationSubtreeError "missing_paths": [ "email_recipients/recipients" ]	You have selected other for the selection element under email_recipients, but did not provide a list using recipients.
400	IncompleteConfigurationSubtreeError Syntax error: \"No such property; property='recipients'	Do not provide recipients if you set the selection element under email_recipients to default.
400	IncompleteConfigurationSubtreeError "missing_paths": [ "chapters/7/subchapters/0/name" ]	Verify that the selection element of the subchapter is correctly set to builtin or custom.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a report

To add a report, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object for the new report.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new report.

```
{
  "key": "26ddf648-9a21-4a7f-af56-9cea575785a9",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports/26ddf648-9a21-4a7f-af56-9cea575785a9",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a report

To modify a report, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the report.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports/<key-of-the-report>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Generate a report for a custom time period

To generate a report for a custom time period, you have to:

### 1. Define the custom time period for the report.

GET `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/reports`. Search for the name of the report that you want to run on a custom time period. Copy the

value of key.

2. POST the parameters to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/reports` endpoint. The following parameter is required:

- `configuration_id`

The following parameters are optional.

- `start`: start timestamp in the format of either `YYYY-MM-DD` or `YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM`.
- `end`: end timestamp in the format of either `YYYY-MM-DD` or `YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM`.
- `force`: By default: `False`. If you set it to `True`, you can regenerate a report that has already been generated before.

If you do not enter the optional parameters, the start timestamp defaults to `1970.01.01` and the end timestamp defaults to the timestamp of when the report was generated.

**NOTE:** Timestamps are according to UTC.

This means that for example, if you are located in an UTC+1 region, a report that has the end parameter configured as `2020-01-18` will actually have an end date/time of `2020-01-18 01:00`.

#### Example: Generate a report for a custom time period

```
https://198.51.100.0/api/reports?configuration_id=8292675195707f19d932af&start=2020-02-01&end=2020-02-18
```

3. You will receive a response similar to the following:

```
{
  "message": "Report generation started.",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/reports",
    "parent": "/api"
  }
}
```

## Built-in subchapters

To create reports, you can use a number of predefined reporting subchapters. The following sections list the short description of each subchapter, as displayed on the web UI of SPS, and its name you can use to configure reports using the REST API.

## Configuration changes

- Configuration changes - Changes by pages:  
configuration\_changes\_changes\_by\_pages
- Configuration changes - Changes by users:  
configuration\_changes\_changes\_by\_users
- Configuration changes - Changes in time:  
configuration\_changes\_changes\_in\_time
- Configuration changes - Special events:  
configuration\_changes\_special\_events
- Configuration changes - Password change:  
configuration\_changes\_password\_change

## Connection summary

- Channels table  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_channels
- Distribution of channels  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_channelldist
- Channels history  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_channelshist
- Verdicts history by channels  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_verdicthist
- Usernames  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_usernames
- Accepted usernames  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_accepted\_usernames
- Remote usernames  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_remote\_usernames
- Accepted remote usernames  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_accepted\_remote\_usernames
- Four-eyes authorizers  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_4eyes\_authorizers
- Source addresses  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_source\_addresses
- Server addresses  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_server\_addresses

- Top 10 usernames in denied channels  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_users\_in\_denied\_channels
- Top 10 denied usernames in channels  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_denied\_users
- Top 10 denied servers in channels  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_denied\_servers
- Top 10 denied channel types  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_denied\_channeltypes
- Top 10 longest sessions  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_longest\_sessions
- Top 10 shortest sessions  
connection\_aggregate\_scb\_top10\_shortest\_sessions

## System health

- System health - Filesystem usage  
system\_health\_filesystem\_usage
- System health - Network connections  
system\_health\_network\_connections
- System health - Load average  
system\_health\_load\_average

## All connections

- Top 10 usernames in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_users\_each
- Top 10 accepted usernames in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_accepted\_users\_each
- Top 10 remote usernames in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_remote\_users\_each
- Top 10 username/four-eyes authorizer in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_4eyes\_authorizers\_each
- Top 10 servers in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_servers\_each
- Top 10 username/server in each connection  
connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_username\_server\_connection\_each
- Top 10 username/remote user in each connection

connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_remoteusers\_each

- Top 10 commands over SSH session-exec channel in each connection

connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_exec\_commands\_each

- Top 10 channel types in each connection

connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_channel\_types\_each

- Top 10 Port forward targets in each connection

connection\_each\_scb\_top10\_portforward\_targets\_each

## Specific connections

You can also use subchapters for a specific connection. You have to use the protocol and the key of the connection.

The following examples assume that the connection's protocol is SSH, and its key is 8348340645707e2575e3c6.

- Top 10 usernames in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_users\_<protocol>-<key>

Example:

connection\_ssh\_scb\_top10\_users\_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6

- Top 10 accepted usernames in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_accepted\_users\_<protocol>-<key>

Example:

connection\_ssh\_scb\_top10\_accepted\_users\_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6

- Top 10 remote usernames in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_remote\_users\_<protocol>-<key>

Example:

connection\_ssh\_scb\_top10\_remote\_users\_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6

- Top 10 username/four-eyes authorizer in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_4eyes\_authorizers\_<protocol>-<key>

Example:

connection\_ssh\_scb\_top10\_4eyes\_authorizers\_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6

- Top 10 servers in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_servers\_<protocol>-<key>

Example:

connection\_ssh\_scb\_top10\_servers\_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6

- Top 10 username/server in "<connection\_name>"

connection\_<protocol>\_scb\_top10\_username\_server\_connection\_<protocol>-<key>

Example

```
connection_ssh_scb_top10_username_server_connection_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6
```

- Top 10 username/remote user in "<connection\_name>"

```
connection_<protocol>_scb_top10_remoteusers_<protocol>-<key>
```

Example:

```
connection_ssh_scb_top10_remoteusers_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6
```

- Top 10 commands over SSH session-exec channel in "<connection\_name>"

```
connection_<protocol>_scb_top10_exec_commands_<protocol>-<key>
```

Example:

```
connection_ssh_scb_top10_exec_commands_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6
```

- Top 10 channel types in "<connection\_name>"

```
connection_<protocol>_scb_top10_channel_types_<protocol>-<key>
```

Example:

```
connection_ssh_scb_top10_channel_types_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6
```

- Top 10 Port forward targets in "<connection\_name>"

```
connection_<protocol>_scb_top10_portforward_targets_<protocol>-<key>
```

Example:

```
connection_ssh_scb_top10_portforward_targets_ssh-8348340645707e2575e3c6
```

## Pre-defined reports

You can configure the compliance reports of SPS using the `predefined_reports` endpoint.

To help you comply with the regulations of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS), One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) can generate reports on the compliance status of SPS. Note that this is not a fully-featured compliance report: it is a tool to enhance and complement your compliance report by providing information available in SPS. The report corresponds with the document *Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard, Requirements and Security Assessment Procedures, Version 3.0*, published by the [PCI Security Standards Council](#).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports
```



## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the pre-defined reports available on SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific report.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api//configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/<report-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing pre-defined reports.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "next": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
```

```

    "key": "pcidss",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/pcidss"
    }
  }
]
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific report, the response is the following.

```

{
  "key": "pcidss",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/pcidss",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/pcidss",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/pcidss",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "pcidss": {
    "access": [
      "report"
    ],
    "email_recipients": {
      "selection": "default"
    },
    "name": "PCI-DSS",
    "send_report_in_email": true
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the report.
<id-of-the-report>	Top level item	The elements of the pre-defined report.
access	list	List of access control groups whose members can access the report.
email_recipients	Top level item	Contains the list of e-mails where the generated report is sent.

Element	Type	Description
recipients	list	Custom list of e-mails where the generated report is sent.  To use a custom list, the selection element must be set to other.
selection	string	This element can have two values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>default uses the e-mail address configured in the reporting_address element of the https://&lt;IP-address-of-SPS&gt;/api/configuration/management/email endpoint (or the <b>Basic Settings &gt; Management &gt; Mail settings &gt; Send reports to</b> field on the web UI).</li> <li>other uses the e-mails listed in the recipients element.</li> </ul>
name	string	The name of the report.
send_report_in_email	boolean	Set it to false if you do not want to include the generated report in the e-mail.

## Examples:

Set the e-mail recipients to the default (as configured in the reporting\_address element of the /api/configuration/management/email endpoint):

```
"email_recipients": {
  "selection": "default"
}
```

Create a custom set of e-mail recipients:

```
"email_recipients": {
  "recipients": [
    "<email-1>",
    "<email-2>"
  ],
  "selection": "other"
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
400	IncompleteConfigurationSubtreeError Syntax error: \"No such property; property='recipients'\"	Do not provide recipients if you set the selection element under email_recipients to default.
400	Bad Request \"message\": \"New Ids are not allowed\"	Error when committing your transaction. Creating new pre-defined reports is not allowed.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Modify a pre-defined report

To modify a report, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the report.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports/<report-key>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# Content subchapters

Reporting subchapters created from audit trail content (statistics of search keywords, and screenshots). You have to provide a list of keywords, and create the appropriate filters to narrow down the scope of the search. SPS searches the indexed content of all audit trails that fit the filter criteria, and provide the resulting statistics and screenshots in the report. Configure and enable indexing for all connections that you want to include in the reports.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the available content subchapters.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific subchapter.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters/<subchapter-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing content subchapters.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "next": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "13869311625707e0a3e0892",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters/13869311625707e0a3e0892"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific content subchapter, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "access": [
      "search"
    ],
    "filter": {
      "channel_policy": {
        "key": "-10200",
        "meta": {
          "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/-10200"
        }
      },
      "connection_policy": "8348340645707e2575e3c6",
      "protocol": "ssh",
      "server_address": "192.168.56.102",
      "server_port": 22,
      "source_address": "192.168.56.101",
      "source_port": 22,
      "username": "admin"
    },
    "name": "API_test_subchapter",
    "search_words": [
      "logout"
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    ]
  },
  "key": "13869311625707e0a3e0892",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_
subchapters/13869311625707e0a3e0892",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_
subchapters/13869311625707e0a3e0892",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_
subchapters/13869311625707e0a3e0892",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the subchapter.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the subchapter.
access	list	<p>Required. List of access control groups whose members can access the subchapter.</p> <p>To deny access to the subchapter, use "admin" as the only value for the element.</p>
filter	Top level element.	Filter options for narrowing the scope of the keyword search. See the corresponding table for more details.
channel_policy	string	<p>References the key of the channel policy. You can configure channel policies at the <a href="/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/channel_policies/&lt;policy-ID&gt;">"/api/configuration/&lt;protocol&gt;/channel_policies/&lt;policy-ID&gt;</a> endpoint.</p> <p>Note that the path is different for each protocol.</p> <p>To modify or add a channel policy, use the value of the returned key as the value of the channel_policy element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p>
connection_policy	string	The key of the connection policy specified for the search.

Element	Type	Description
		To use a connection policy, you must also set the protocol using the <code>protocol</code> element.
<code>protocol</code>	string	The protocol of the connection or channel policy specified for the search.
<code>server_address</code>	string	The target server's address. Use an IPv4 address.
<code>server_port</code>	int	The port of the target server's address.
<code>source_address</code>	string	The address from where the connection is initiated.
<code>source_port</code>	int	The port of the address from where the connection is initiated.
<code>username</code>	string	The username used to connect to the target server.
<code>name</code>	string	The name of the subchapter.
<code>search_words</code>	list	The list of search keywords to generate statistics and screenshots for in the subchapter.

## Examples:

Create a content subchapter for the occurrences of the "logout" keyword in SSH connections. Make the subchapter accessible to the search and report usergroups.

- Search connections where the "shell-only" channel policy is used.

```
{
  "access": [
    "search",
    "report"
  ],
  "filter": {
    "channel_policy": "-10000",
    "connection_policy": null,
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "server_address": null,
    "server_port": null,
    "source_address": null,
    "source_port": null,
    "username": null
  },
}
```



```

"name": "Shell_access",
"search_words": [
  "logout"
]
}

```

- Search connections of a specific connection policy. Provide the protocol of the connection. The key of the connection policy is available at the `/api/configuration/<protocol>/connections/` endpoint.

```

{
  "access": [
    "search",
    "report"
  ],
  "filter": {
    "channel_policy": null,
    "connection_policy": "<key-of-connection-policy>",
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "server_address": null,
    "server_port": null,
    "source_address": null,
    "source_port": null,
    "username": null
  },
  "name": "Controlled_access",
  "search_words": [
    "logout"
  ]
}

```

- Search connections where the "admin" username was used.

```

{
  "access": [
    "search",
    "report"
  ],
  "filter": {
    "channel_policy": null,
    "connection_policy": null,
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "server_address": null,
    "server_port": null,
    "source_address": null,
    "source_port": null,
    "username": "admin"
  }
}

```

```

    },
    "name": "Login_as_admin",
    "search_words": [
        "logout"
    ]
}

```

- Search connections made to a specific server address and port.

```

{
  "access": [
    "search",
    "report"
  ],
  "filter": {
    "channel_policy": null,
    "connection_policy": null,
    "protocol": "ssh",
    "server_address": "<server-ip>",
    "server_port": <port>,
    "source_address": null,
    "source_port": null,
    "username": null
  },
  "name": "Server_access",
  "search_words": [
    "logout"
  ]
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
400	Path: <endpoint>/filter/channel_policy Type: SyntacticError	You have included the key and meta elements of a channel_policy in a PUT or POST request.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the

Code	Description	Notes
		resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a content subchapter

To add a content subchapter, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new content subchapter.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

- To use a channel policy for filtering, use the key of the policy. You must also set the protocol element to the corresponding protocol.

For example, to use the `shell-only` channel policy, which is a default SSH policy provided by SPS, you have to configure both the `channel_policy` element...

```
"channel_policy": "-10000"
```

...and the protocol element:

```
"protocol": "ssh"
```

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new subchapter. For example:

```
{
  "key": "416bb324-b44e-4ed3-a49d-02e99e53e941",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters/416bb324-b44e-4ed3-a49d-02e99e53e941",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a content subchapter

To modify a content subchapter, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the subchapter.

You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#)

To use a channel policy for filtering, do not include the returned key and meta elements of the channel policy in your PUT request. Instead, set the value of the channel\_policy to the value of its key.

For example, if a GET request for the subchapter returns the following channel\_policy filter:

```
"channel_policy": {
  "key": "-10200",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/ssh/channel_policies/-10200"
  }
}
```

You have to change it in your PUT request to:

```
"channel_policy": "-10200"
```

You must also configure the protocol element to the protocol of the channel policy.

### 3. Upload the modified configuration

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters/<subchapter-key>` endpoint.

### 4. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Custom subchapters

List of the reporting subchapters created from custom queries to the SPS connection database. The list of tables and fields you can query are described in ["Database tables available for custom queries"](#) in the [Administration Guide](#).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command lists the available custom subchapters.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific subchapter.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters/<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing custom subchapters.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "next": "/api/configuration/reporting/predefined_reports",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "5983143445707eb740fee3",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters/5983143445707eb740fee3"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific subchapter, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "access": [
      "search"
    ],
    "chart": {
      "column_titles": [
        "col1",
        "col2"
      ],
      "type": "list"
    },
    "name": "API_test_adv_stats",
    "query": "select\n  to_timestamp(audit_trail_downloads.download_time),\n  audit_trail_downloads.username,\n  channels.channel_type,\n"
```

```

channels.connection,\n  audit_trail_downloads.ip\nfrom audit_trail_downloads,\n  channels\nwhere channels._connection_channel_id = audit_trail_
downloads.id\nand audit_trail_downloads.download_time <= :range_start\nand
audit_trail_downloads.download_time > :range_end\nand audit_trail_
downloads.username != 'admin'\norder by audit_trail_downloads.download_time;"
  },
  "key": "5983143445707eb740fee3",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_
subchapters/5983143445707eb740fee3",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_
subchapters/5983143445707eb740fee3",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_
subchapters/5983143445707eb740fee3",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the custom subchapter.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the custom subchapter.
access	list	Required. List of access control groups whose members can access the subchapter. To deny access to the subchapter, use "admin" as the only value for the element.
chart	Top level element	Defines the properties of the chart generated from the database query.
type	string	Defines the chart type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use bar to generate a bar chart. You have to provide the <code>y_axis_title</code> element for bar charts (its can be null).</li> <li>Use pie to generate pie a chart.</li> <li>Use list to generate a list. You have to provide the <code>column_titles</code> element for lists (it can be null).</li> </ul>

Element	Type	Description
y_axis_title	string	Required if the type element is set to bar. The name of the y axis for the generated bar chart.
column_titles	list	Required if the type element is set to list. The column titles for the generated list.
name	string	The name of the subchapter.
query	string	The SQL database query for creating the subchapter.



#### CAUTION:

**Generating a report that includes an Advanced statistics chapter that returns several thousands of entries requires significant CPU and memory resources from One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS). While generating such a partial report, the web interface of SPS can become slow or unresponsive.**

### Examples:

Create a bar chart with a custom title for the y-axis:

```
"chart": {
  "type": "bar",
  "y_axis_title": "Y_axis"
}
```

Create a pie chart:

```
"chart": {
  "type": "pie"
}
```

Create a list with custom column names:

```
"chart": {
  "column_titles": [
```



```

    "col1",
    "col2"
  ],
  "type": "list"
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a custom subchapter

To add a custom subchapter, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new subchapter.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new subchapter. For example:

```
{
  "key": "9a8f7f19-edbf-4327-9d3a-9f527e7331ee",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters/9a8f7f19-edbf-4327-9d3a-9f527e7331ee",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a custom subchapter

To modify a subchapter, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the subchapter.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/custom_subchapters/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 1. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

# Connection statistics subchapters

List of the reporting subchapters created from connection statistics.

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command lists the available subchapters.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific subchapter.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters/<subchapter-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing connection statistics subchapters. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/content_subchapters",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/reports",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
```

```

    "key": "21111736175707f1df8bea1",
    "meta": {
      "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_
subchapters/21111736175707f1df8bea1"
    }
  }
]
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific subchapter, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "access": [
      "search",
      "reporting"
    ],
    "chart": {
      "type": "list"
    },
    "name": "stats_simple",
    "query": {
      "column": "username",
      "filter": [
        {
          "column": "protocol",
          "is_exact": false,
          "is_inverted": false,
          "value": "ssh"
        },
        {
          "column": "username",
          "is_exact": false,
          "is_inverted": false,
          "value": "admin"
        }
      ],
      "limit": 15,
      "order": "top"
    }
  },
  "key": "496444806570e9c7e32c30",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_
subchapters/21111736175707f1df8bea1",
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_
subchapters/496444806570e9c7e32c30",
    "last": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_
subchapters/496444806570e9c7e32c30",

```

```

    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_
subchapters/1539306268570e9442cab6c",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the subchapter.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the subchapter.
access	list	Required. List of access control groups whose members can access the subchapter. To deny access to the subchapter, use "admin" as the only value for the element.
chart	Top level element	Defines the properties of the chart generated from the database query.
type	string	Defines the chart type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use bar to generate a bar chart.</li> <li>• Use pie to generate pie a chart.</li> <li>• Use list to generate a list.</li> </ul>
name	string	The name of the subchapter.
query	string	The search query that defines the connections to use for creating statistics. For details on using the search, see <a href="#">Searching in the session database</a> on page 717.

## Examples:

Create statistics about the 15 most common usernames used in SSH connections.

- Create a bar chart.

```

{
  "access": [
    "reporting",
    "search"
  ],

```

```

"chart": {
  "type": "bar"
},
"name": "stats_bar",
"query": {
  "column": "username",
  "filter": [
    {
      "column": "protocol",
      "is_exact": false,
      "is_inverted": false,
      "value": "ssh"
    }
  ],
  "limit": 15,
  "order": "top"
}
}

```

- Create a pie chart.

```

{
  "access": [
    "reporting",
    "search"
  ],
  "chart": {
    "type": "pie"
  },
  "name": "stats_pie",
  "query": {
    "column": "username",
    "filter": [
      {
        "column": "protocol",
        "is_exact": false,
        "is_inverted": false,
        "value": "ssh"
      }
    ],
    "limit": 15,
    "order": "top"
  }
}

```

- Create a list.

```

{
  "access": [
    "reporting",
    "search"
  ],
  "chart": {
    "type": "list"
  },
  "name": "stats_list",
  "query": {
    "column": "username",
    "filter": [
      {
        "column": "protocol",
        "is_exact": false,
        "is_inverted": false,
        "value": "ssh"
      }
    ],
    "limit": 15,
    "order": "top"
  }
}

```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a connection statistics subchapter

To add a connection statistics subchapter, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new subchapter.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters/` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new subchapter. For example:

```
{
  "key": "769e627d-515d-4d26-a03e-cb2ed0bbbee04",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters/769e627d-515d-4d26-a03e-cb2ed0bbbee04",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a connection statistics subchapter

To modify a subchapter, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the subchapter.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/reporting/statistics_subchapters//<key-of-the-subchapter>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.



# Health and maintenance

## Monitor appliance health status

To monitor the health status of an appliance, query the `/api/health-status` endpoint.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/health-status
```

The following is a sample response received.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

For details of the other objects, see tables [Cluster status details](#) and ["issues" object details](#).

```
{
  "health_status": {
    "cpu": 5.4,
    "disk": 10.3,
    "load1": 1.93,
    "load15": 1.98,
    "load5": 2.01,
    "memory": 46.3,
    "sessions": {
      "http": 0,
      "ica": 0,
      "mssql": 0,
      "rdp": 0,
      "ssh": 0,
      "telnet": 0,
      "vnc": 0
    },
    "sessions_total": 0,
    "swap": 0,
    "system_details": {
      "cpu": {
        "guest": 0.0,
        "guest_nice": 0.0,
        "idle": 94.6,
        "iowait": 0.0,
        "irq": 0.0,
        "nice": 0.5,
        "softirq": 0.0,
        "steal": 1.0,
        "system": 1.0,
        "user": 3.0
      },
    },
  },
}
```

```

    "disk": {
      "free": 26850131968,
      "percent": 10.3,
      "total": 31571550208,
      "used": 3094085632
    },
    "memory": {
      "active": 4459466752,
      "available": 4492849152,
      "buffers": 456245248,
      "cached": 3229765632,
      "free": 1336004608,
      "inactive": 1984532480,
      "percent": 46.3,
      "shared": 249368576,
      "total": 8364044288,
      "used": 3342028800
    },
    "swap": {
      "free": 0,
      "percent": 0,
      "sin": 0,
      "sout": 0,
      "total": 0,
      "used": 0
    },
    "pipeline-queues": {
      "session-events": 64.3,
      "indexer-events": 40.0
    }
  },
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/health-status",
    "parent": "/api",
    "remaining_seconds": 600
  }
}

```

Elements	Type	Description
health_status	null or object	The health status of a node. When queried, it lists data related to the given node's health (in the case of HA, this means the current master node).
memory	floating point number	Memory usage (percent)

Elements	Type	Description
disk	floating point number	Hard disk usage (percent)
swap	floating point number	Swap usage (percent)
cpu	floating point number	Overall CPU usage (percent)
load1	floating point number	The average system load during the last one minute.
load5	floating point number	The average system load during the last five-minute period.
load15	floating point number	The average system load during the last fifteen-minute period.
sessions	string	The protocol type and the number of ongoing sessions. For example: <div> <pre>"sessions": {   "ssh": 3,   "rdp": 4 },</pre> </div>
total_sessions	integer (number of)	The total number of ongoing sessions.
system_details	JSON object	Various details about the CPU, disk, memory and swap usage of the appliance. Note that the exact set of metrics is determined by the underlying kernel and system libraries, therefore it might change between different versions of Safeguard for Privileged Sessions without notice.
pipeline-queues	JSON object	Represents the fullness of the processing pipelines in percentages.

The number of CPUs determine the load a system can handle without causing the processes having to wait. As a generic rule of thumb, if the load is less than the number of processor cores of the appliance, the overall system load can be considered normal, otherwise it might be an indication of performance issues.

# Advanced authentication and authorization

## Usermapping policy

For SSH, RDP, Telnet, and Citrix ICA connections, usermapping policies can be defined. A usermapping policy describes who can use a specific username to access the remote server: only members of the specified local or LDAP usergroups (for example, administrators) can use the specified username (for example, root) on the server.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the existing usermapping policies.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific usermapping policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies<object-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing usermapping policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/userlists",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  },
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "11581153055704544883f77",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/11581153055704544883f77"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "9328731525704545f5e3de",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/9328731525704545f5e3de"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific host key, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "allow_other_remote_users_without_mapping": false,
    "mappings": [
      {
        "allowed_groups": [],
        "remote_user": "test"
      },
      {
        "allowed_groups": [
          "admins"
        ],
        "remote_user": "root"
      }
    ],
    "name": "Test"
  },
  "key": "9328731525704545f5e3de",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/277736452570454272e157",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/9328731525704545f5e3de",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/9328731525704545f5e3de",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/11581153055704544883f77",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the policy.
body	Top level element (string)	The elements of the usermapping policy.
allow_other_remote_users_without_mapping	boolean	<p>Default value: true.</p> <p>To allow access the remote servers for users who are not explicitly listed in the Usermapping Policy, configure true. Note that these users must use the same username on the SPS gateway and the</p>

Element	Type	Description
		remote server.
mappings	Top level list	Contains the list of user groups and the corresponding remote usernames the group members can use to log in.
allowed_groups	list	The usergroups allowed to log in as the remote_user on the remote server. Required element. Empty means all users.
remote_user	string	The username on the remote server that the users configured in allowed_groups can use to log in. Required element. Must have a value.

### Example mappings:

Anyone can log in to the remote server as the test user:

```
"mappings": [
  {
    "allowed_groups": [],
    "remote_user": "test"
  }
]
```

Only the members of the admin group can log in to the remote server as the root user:

```
"mappings": [
  {
    "allowed_groups": [
      "admins"
    ],
    "remote_user": "root"
  }
]
```

### Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	InvalidQuery	The requested filter or its value is invalid.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the

Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Add a usermapping policy

To add a usermapping policy, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new usermapping policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/usermapping` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new usermapping policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "2e8692fa-7fda-4753-8363-37e8244f6b80",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies/2e8692fa-7fda-4753-8363-37e8244f6b80",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify a usermapping policy

To modify a usermapping policy, you have to:



### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the usermapping policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/usermapping/<key-of-the-object>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Plugins

Contains the endpoints for configuring plugins.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

### Sample request

The following command lists endpoints for configuring plugins.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing endpoints for configuring plugins. For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "aa",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "configuration_sync",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/configuration_
sync"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "credentialstore",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "signingca",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/signingca"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/aaa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins",
    "last": "/api/configuration/x509",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/passwords",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

Element	Description
<a href="#">aa</a>	Endpoint for configuring authentication and authorization plugins.
<a href="#">configuration_sync</a>	Endpoint for configuring plugins that synchronize the configuration of SPS clusters that receive their configuration from the Central Management node.
<a href="#">credentialstore</a>	Endpoint for configuring credential store plugins.
<a href="#">signingca</a>	Endpoint for configuring plugins to sign certificates.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Upload a plugin

To upload or update a plugin, complete the following steps. To update a plugin, upload a new version. Starting with version 6.4, you can also delete plugins using the REST API. For details, see [Delete a plugin](#).

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Upload a plugin

POST the plugin as a zip file (application/zip) to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/plugins` endpoint, for example:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type: application/zip" --cookie cookies
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/upload/plugins --data-binary @<path-to-
plugin.zip>
```

If the POST request is successful, the response includes the key of the new plugin, as well as information about the uploaded plugin. For example:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/aa423b72-0d0f-4275-
be30-494e9a99ffad",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa"
  },
  "key": "aa423b72-0d0f-4275-be30-494e9a99ffad",
  "body": {
    "name": "Sample-Authentication-Plugin",
    "description": "My custom authentication plugin",
    "version": "1.12",
    "path": "/opt/scb/var/plugins/aa/Sample-Authentication-
Plugin",
    "api": "1.0"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

Note the following points.

- Re-uploading an already existing plugin overwrites the existing plugin.
- Uploading a newer version of an already existing plugin overwrites the existing plugin.

### Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The plugin has been successfully uploaded. The response should include the key of the created object.
400		The plugin does not support this version of SPS.
400	InvalidPlugin	The type or some other value in the Manifest file of the plugin is invalid, or this version of SPS

Code	Description	Notes
		does not support this type of plugin. Check the error key in the response for details.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
422	TransactionProcessingError	The plugin was uploaded but deploying the plugin failed for some reason.

## Delete a plugin

Starting with version 6.4, you can also delete plugins using the REST API.

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Delete a plugin

DELETE the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/aa/<ID-of-the-plugin-to-delete>` endpoint. For details, see [Delete an object](#) on page 43. If the DELETE request is successful, the response includes only the meta object, for example:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "href":
"/api/configuration/plugins/aa/b080b1ba546232548bb1a9",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa"
  }
}
```

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200		The plugin has been successfully deleted
400	SemanticError	The plugin cannot be deleted, because there is reference to it in the configuration (For example, AA plugin delete fails because there is an AA Plugin Configuration for it).
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404		There is no plugin with the given key.

## Check the integrity of a plugin

The authentication and authorization (AA) plugins used on SPS. To upload or update a plugin, see [Upload a plugin](#).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/plugin/integrity?key=<key-value-from-the-response-of-the-last-creation>&plugin_type=<type-of-the-plugin>&ops=zip_checksum&ops=zip_content&ops=unregistered
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command retrieves the results of the integrity check.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/plugin/integrity?key=<key-value-from-the-response-of-the-last-creation>&plugin_type=aa&ops=zip_checksum&ops=zip_content&ops=unregistered
```

- To retrieve the <key-value-from-the-response-of-the-last-creation> of the plugin that you have uploaded earlier, enter the following command:

```
curl https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/<plugin_type>
```

This will display all plugins that you have uploaded earlier, that belong to the specified plugin type. The value will be the value of the key parameter of the response.

- The following plugin\_type values are available:
  - Authentication and authorization: aa
  - Configuration synchronization: configuration\_sync
  - Credential Store: credentialstore
  - Signing CA: signingca

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the results of the integrity check.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "body": {
    "zip_checksum": {
      "verdict": "passed",
      "reason": "Plugin .zip checksums match"
    },
    "zip_content": {
      "verdict": "passed",
      "reason": "The plugin runtime files are the same since you have uploaded the plugin .zip"
    },
    "unregistered": {
      "verdict": "unavailable",
      "reason": "Cannot find checker. Make sure that you use an existing checker: unregistered"
    }
  }
}
```

Element	Type	Description
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the results of the response.
zip_checksum	string	The checksum of the uploaded .zip file.
verdict	string	The verdict of the integrity check.
reason	string	The reason of the integrity check verdict.
zip_content	string	The content of the .zip file.
verdict	string	The verdict of the integrity check.
reason	string	The reason of the integrity check verdict.
unregistered	string	Whether SPS was joined to Starling for online checksum.
verdict	string	The verdict of the integrity check.
reason	string	The reason of the integrity check verdict.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	MissingMandatoryParameter	One of the following keys is missing: key, plugin_type, ops.
400	InvalidFormat	The key is not valid plugin key.
404	MissingPlugin	The plugin is not found in the configuration.

# Authentication and authorization plugins

The authentication and authorization (AA) plugins used on SPS. To upload or update a plugin, see [Upload a plugin](#).



## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/aa
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command queries the list of AA plugins used on SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/aa
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific plugin.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/aa/<plugin-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the list of AAA plugins used on SPS.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "2080160955734bb2a1ddf9",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/2080160955734bb2a1ddf9"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa",
    "last": "/api/configuration/plugins/ticketing",
    "next": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific plugin, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "api": "1.0",
    "description": "test1",
    "name": "AAPPluginExample",
    "version": "1.1",
    "path": "/opt/scb/var/plugins/customgwauthplugin",
    "scb_max_version": "",
    "scb_min_version": "",
    "default_configuration": "",
    "entry_point": null,
    "sha256sum":
"c4bb901de6b2274dcb94f1eec429fd0f3565ac792a856b07b8895e56ca2d8f42"
  },
  "key": "2080160955734bb2a1ddf9",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/2080160955734bb2a1ddf9",
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/2080160955734bb2a1ddf9",
    "last": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/2080160955734bb2a1ddf9",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the plugin.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the plugin.

Element	Type	Description
api	string	The API version of the plugin.
description	string	The description of the plugin. This description is also displayed on the SPS web interface.
default_configuration	string	The default configuration of the plugin (an INI file as a string). For details, see the documentation of the particular plugin.
entry_point	string	The entry point of the plugin, for example, <code>main.py</code>
name	string	The name of the plugin. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
path	string	The path where the plugin is stored on SPS.
scb_max_version	string	The version number of the latest SPS release that is compatible with the plugin.
scb_min_version	string	The version number of the earliest SPS release that is compatible with the plugin.
sha256sum	string	The SHA-256 checksum of the plugin.
version	string	The version number of the plugin.

To configure a particular instance of a plugin, use the `/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/<key-of-the-plugin-instance>` endpoint.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# Configuring Authentication and Authorization plugin instances

You can configure instances of Authentication and Authorization (AA) plugins to use in your Connection Policies. To configure an instance of a plugin you must first upload the plugin to SPS. To upload or update a plugin, see [Upload a plugin](#).

## URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances
```

## Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

## Sample request

The following command queries the list of AA plugin instances available on SPS.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific instance.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/<plugin-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when querying the list of AA plugins used on SPS.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "name": "new_plugin_instance",
      "configuration": "test configuration",
      "plugin": "8876228625d67aa91e2253"
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific plugin instance, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "configuration": "[starling]\n# ..... disable_echo=yes\n",
    "name": "Demo_starling_plugin",
    "plugin": {
      "key": "8876228625d67aa91e2253",
      "meta": {
        "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa/8876228625d67aa91e2253"
      }
    }
  },
  "key": "8114402005d67adbeb38b6",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/8114402005d67adbeb38b6",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/8114402005d67adbeb38b6",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/8114402005d67adbeb38b6",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances",
  }
}
```

```

    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the plugin instance.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the plugin instance.
configuration	string	The configuration of the plugin instance (an INI file as a string). For details, see the documentation of the particular plugin.
name	string	The name of the plugin instance. This field can contain only letters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9) and the under-score (_) character, and must begin with a letter.
plugin	JSON object	Contains the details of the plugin object that this instance refers to: the ID of the plugin and its endpoint, for example,

```

"plugin": {
  "key": "8876228625d67aa91e2253",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/-
configuration/plugins/aa/8876228625d67aa91e2253"
  }
}

```

## Create a new plugin instance

To create a new instance of a plugin, you have to:

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

## 2. Create the JSON object of the plugin instance.

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Configuring Authentication and Authorization plugin instances](#).

## 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
400	SemanticError	The configuration of the instance is invalid. Check the error key in the response for details.

## Modify a plugin instance

To modify an instance of a plugin, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

### 2. Modify the JSON object of the policy.

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/<key-of-the-instance>` endpoint.

### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Delete a plugin instance

To delete an instance of a plugin, you have to:

### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. Remove any references to the plugin instance from your Connection Policies. You cannot delete a plugin instance that other parts of the configuration actively use.

3. **Delete the endpoint of the plugin instance.**

DELETE the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances/<key-of-the-instance>` endpoint.

4. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Credential store plugins

The credential store plugins used on SPS. To upload or update a plugin, see [Upload a plugin](#).

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code> . For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.  <b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..

### Sample request

The following command lists the credential store plugins stored on SPS.



```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific plugin.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/<plugin-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing the credential store plugins used on SPS.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "2534221015734bb18aaf32",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/2534221015734bb18aaf32"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa",
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore",
    "last": "/api/configuration/plugins/ticketing",
    "next": "/api/configuration/plugins/ticketing",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/plugins/aa",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific plugin, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "api": "1.0",
    "description": "Demo credentialstore plugin for demonstration purposes",
    "name": "DemoCredentialStorePlugin",
    "path": "/opt/scb/var/plugins/credentialstore/DemoCredentialStorePlugin",
    "version": "1.1",
    "scb_max_version": "",
    "scb_min_version": "",
    "default_configuration": "",
    "entry_point": null,
  }
}
```

```

    "sha256sum":
    "c4bb901de6b2274dcb94f1eec429fd0f3565ac792a856b07b8895e56ca2d8f42"
  },
  "key": "2534221015734bb18aaf32",
  "meta": {
    "first":
    "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/2534221015734bb18aaf32",
    "href": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/2534221015734bb18aaf32",
    "last": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/2534221015734bb18aaf32",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the plugin.
body	Top level element (string)	Contains the properties of the plugin.
api	string	The API version of the plugin.
description	string	The description of the plugin. This description is also displayed on the SPS web interface.
default_configuration	string	The default configuration of the plugin (an INI file as a string). For details, see the documentation of the particular plugin.
entry_point	string	The entry point of the plugin, for example, main.py
name	string	The name of the plugin. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
path	string	The path where the plugin is stored on SPS.
scb_max_version	string	The version number of the latest SPS release that is compatible with the plugin.
scb_min_version	string	The version number of the earliest SPS release that is compatible with the plugin.
sha256sum	string	The SHA-256 checksum of the plugin.
version	string	The version of the plugin.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Credential stores

Credential Stores offer a way to store user credentials (for example, passwords, private keys, certificates) and use them to login to the target server, without the user having access to the credentials. That way, the users only have to perform gateway authentication on SPS with their usual password (or to an LDAP database), and if the user is allowed to access the target server, SPS automatically logs in using the Credential Store.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
			<p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the credential stores.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific credential store.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/policies/credentialstores/<policy-id>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing credential stores.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "1580973975727acedd51b2",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/1580973975727acedd51b2"
      }
    },
    {
      "key": "935272738572bc2ec1dbdd",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/935272738572bc2ec1dbdd"
      }
    }
  ],
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
  }
}
```

```

    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/indexing",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/content_policies",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific credential store, the response is the following.

```

{
  "body": {
    "name": "API_LOCAL",
    "type": {
      "authenticator_name": "auth_server_name",
      "default_namespace": "{HOST}",
      "dns_servers": {
        "primary": "192.168.56.1",
        "secondary": "192.168.56.2"
      },
      "domain_mappings": [
        {
          "domain": "domain",
          "host": {
            "selection": "fqdn",
            "value": "host"
          }
        }
      ],
      "login_mode": {
        "password": {
          "key": "e0ecbe98-bd17-4805-ba5d-17fb789f3971",
          "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/passwords/e0ecbe98-bd17-4805-ba5d-17fb789f3971"
          }
        },
        "selection": "fixed",
        "username": "fixed_username"
      },
      "proxy_server": "http://192.168.56.201:9999",
      "selection": "local",
      "server_certificate_check": {
        "enabled": true,
        "trusted_ca": {
          "key": "12269547065727ad6e79d9e",
          "meta": {
            "href": "/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/12269547065727ad6e79d9e"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  },
  "web_interface_url": "http://erpm_address"
}
},
"key": "935272738572bc2ec1dbdd",
"meta": {
  "first":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/1580973975727acedd51b2",
  "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/935272738572bc2ec1dbdd",
  "last":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/935272738572bc2ec1dbdd",
  "next": null,
  "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores",
  "previous":
"/api/configuration/policies/credentialstores/1580973975727acedd51b2",
  "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}
}

```

Element	Type	Description
key	string	Top level element, contains the ID of the credential store.
body	Top level element (string)	The configuration elements of the credential store.
name	string	The name of the credential store. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespace.
type	Top level item	All elements for the configured type of credential store.
authenticator_name	string	If your ERPM setup is configured to use an external authentication method, enter the name of the Authentication Server (Authenticator Source) set on your ERPM server. If empty, SPS uses the [Explicit] authenticator.
default_namespace	string	The default namespace of the accounts (for example, [Linux], [LDAP], [IPMI], W2003DOMAIN).
dns_servers	Top level	The IP addresses of the DNS servers to use

Element	Type	Description
	item	for resolving the hostnames provided in domain_mappings.
domain_mappings	Top level list	Use for RDP connections only. In a domainless environment, use default_namespace.
encryption	Top level item	Configures the encryption key for the local credential store.
login_mode	Top level item	Configures the account SPS uses to login to the ERPM server.
plugin	string	<p>Must be used if the selection element is set to external_plugin.</p> <p>References the Credential Store plugin. You can find the list of available plugins at the <a href="/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/">/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/</a> endpoint.</p> <p>To modify or add a plugin, use the value of the returned key as the value of the plugin element, and remove any child elements (including the key).</p> <p>Plugins can only be uploaded using the web interface of SPS.</p>
proxy_server	string	The IP address and port of the proxy server. Use the http:// or https:// prefix.
selection	string	<p>Configures the type of the credential store. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>local Local credential store. Can only be configured using the web interface of SPS.</li> <li>external_plugin Credential Store Plug-in. To upload or update a plugin, see <a href="#">Upload a plugin</a>.</li> </ul>
server_certificate_check	Top level item	To verify the certificate of the ERPM server, configure server_certificate_check.
web_interface_url	string	Name of the DN of the ERPM server. Use the http:// or https:// prefix.

Elements of dns_servers	Type	Description
primary	string	The IP address of the primary DNS server.
secondary	string	The IP address of the secondary DNS server.

Elements of domain_mappings	Type	Description
domain	string	The domain name used for Domain/Host mapping.
host	Top level item	The host name or address of the domain controller used for Domain/Host mapping.
selection	string	Declares if the value element contains an IP or an FQDN. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fqdn The value element contains a hostname.</li> <li>ip The value element contains an IP.</li> </ul>
value	string	The IP address or hostname of the domain controller.

Elements of encryption	Type	Description
selection	string	Defines the encryption of the local credential store. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>basic The local credential store uses the built-in protection of SPS.</li> <li>password The local credential store is protected by one or more passwords.</li> </ul>

Elements of login_mode	Type	Description
password	string	Must be used if the selection element is set to fixed_username. References the password SPS uses to authenticate on the ERPM server. You can configure passwords at the <a href="#">/api/configuration/passwords/</a> endpoint. To modify or add a password, use the value of the returned key as



Elements of login_mode	Type	Description
		the value of the password element, and remove any child elements (including the key).
selection	string	Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fixed_username SPS uses a fix username and password. Requires the username and password elements.</li> <li>gateway_auth_credentials SPS uses the username and password that the user provided during the gateway authentication process. Can only be used for SSH connections.</li> </ul>
username	string	Must be used if the selection element is set to fixed_username. The username SPS uses to authenticate on the ERPM server.

Elements of server_certificate_check	Type	Description
enabled	boolean	Set to true to verify the ERPM server's certificate.
trusted_ca	string	Must be used if server certificate checking is enabled. References the list of trusted Certificate Authorities. You configure trusted CAs at the <a href="/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/">/api/configuration/policies/trusted_ca_lists/</a> endpoint. To reference a trusted CA list, use the value of the returned key as the value of the trusted_ca element, and remove any child elements (including the key).

### Example:

**NOTE:** The following example is response only. Credential stores can only be configured using the web interface of SPS.

Use a credential store plugin.

```
{
  "name": "API_PLUGIN",
  "type": {
    "plugin": {
      "key": "2534221015734bb18aaf32",
      "meta": {
        "href":
"/api/configuration/plugins/credentialstore/2534221015734bb18aaf32"
      }
    },
    "selection": "external_plugin"
  }
}
```

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Completing the Welcome Wizard using REST

### Completing the Welcome Wizard using REST

The Welcome Wizard helps you complete the initial configuration of SPS. Starting with version 5 F4, you can complete the Welcome Wizard using REST as well.

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/setup
```

#### Prerequisites

You can complete the Welcome Wizard only if it has not been already completed. To verify this, access the `/api/setup` endpoint. If the value of the `status` field is `uninitialized`, you can complete the Welcome Wizard.

#### Sample request

The following command completes the Welcome Wizard. The data content of the request is read from the file `body.json`. For the details of the body of the request, see [Request body](#).

```
curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d @body.json -X POST https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/setup/
```

**NOTE:** The request automatically fails if there are any other clients connected to the REST or the web interface of SPS.

#### Response

If completing the Welcome Wizard is successful, you should receive the 303 status code. The body of the response is empty.

If you GET the /api/setup endpoint, the status field of the response should be completed, for example:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "eula": "https://www.oneidentity.com/legal/sta.aspx",
    "href": "/api/setup",
    "parent": "/api",
    "remaining_seconds": 0
  },
  "status": "completed"
}
```

## Request body

Element	Type	Description
accept_eula	boolean	Indicates that you have read and accept the terms of the <a href="#">Software Transaction, License and End User License Agreements</a> . Must be true to complete the Welcome Wizard.
<a href="#">network</a>	JSON object	Contains the initial networking configuration of SPS.
license	string	<p>Your SPS license as a string. You can download your license from <a href="#">support portal</a>. Replace the line-breaks in the license file with \n characters, for example:</p> <pre>"license": "Product: Shell Control Box\nEdition: Single\n[...]",</pre> <p>Note that you can complete the Welcome Wizard without uploading a license. In this case, SPS will start in demo mode. To skip uploading the license, use the null value:</p> <pre>"license": null,</pre> <p>To upload a license file, see <a href="#">Upload a new license</a>.</p>
<a href="#">certificates</a>	JSON object	Contains the initial certificates used on SPS: the internal Certificate Authority, Timestamping Authority, and the SSL certificate of the web and REST interface. After completing the Welcome Wizard, you can manage these certificates at <a href="#">Internal certificates</a> on page <a href="#">259</a> .

Element	Type	Description
administration	JSON object	Contains the passwords of the root and admin users, for example: <pre> "administration": {     "root_password": "asdgf- sdffe-aasc-oijernf",     "admin_password": "bd9r3- adedfk2-fsdf-fs" }, </pre>
email	JSON object	Contains the SMTP server to use, and the e-mail address of the SPS administrator. For example: <pre> "email": {     "smtp_server": "smtp.ex- ample.com",     "admin_email": "psm- administrator@example.com" }, </pre>
datetime	JSON object	Contains the timezone of SPS and the address of an NTP server to use for date synchronization. For example: <pre> "datetime": {     "timezone": "Europe/Bud- apest",     "primary_ntp_server": "time.test-domain" } </pre>

Element	Type	Description
network	JSON object	The initial networking configuration of SPS.
hostname	string	Name of the machine running SPS. For example: <pre> "hostname": "psm", </pre>
domainname	string	Name of the domain used on the network. For example: <pre> "domainname": "example.com", </pre>

Element	Type	Description
initial_address	IPv4 address/net-mask	<p>The IP address of interface 1 (or EXT, for older hardware) of SPS (for example, 192.168.1.1). The IP address can be chosen from the range of the corresponding physical subnet. Clients will connect to this interface, therefore it must be accessible to them. The IP prefix of the given range. For example, general class C networks have the /24 prefix.</p> <pre>"initial_address": "192.168.1.10/24",</pre> <p>Use an IPv4 address.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Do not use IP addresses that fall into the following ranges:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.2.0.0/16 (reserved for communication between SPS cluster nodes)</li> <li>127.0.0.0/8 (localhost IP addresses)</li> </ul>
vlan tag	string	<p>The VLAN ID of interface 1 (or EXT). Optional, use null if it is not set. For example:</p> <pre>"vlan tag": null,</pre> <p><b>CAUTION:</b></p> <p><b>Do not set the VLAN ID unless your network environment is already configured to use this VLAN. Otherwise, your SPS appliance will be unavailable using this interface.</b></p>
gateway	IPv4 address	<p>The IP address of the default gateway.</p> <pre>"gateway": "192.168.1.1",</pre> <p>Use an IPv4 address.</p>
primary_dns	IPv4 address	<p>The IP address of the name server used for domain name resolution.</p>

Element	Type	Description
		<pre>"primary_dns": "192.168.1.1",</pre> <p>Use an IPv4 address.</p>

Element	Type	Description
certificates	JSON object	<p>The internal certificates of SPS.</p> <p>The key must be in PKCS-1 PEM format.</p> <p>You need the certificate and the private key as well.</p> <p>Encrypted private keys are not supported.</p> <p>The attributes of the POST message that contain the certificate and the private key must be a single line, enclosed in double-quotes.</p> <p>Replace line-breaks in the PEM certificate with \n</p> <p>The certificate and the certificate chain must be valid, SPS will reject invalid certificates and invalid certificate chains.</p> <p><b>TIP:</b> One Identity recommends using 2048-bit RSA keys (or stronger).</p> <p>For example:</p>

```
"certificates": {
  "ca": {
    "certificate": "-----BEGIN
CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIETCCA0GgAwIBAgIBAgjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADCBzDELMA-
kGA1UEBhMCUK8x\n...\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n"
  },
  "webserver": {
    "certificate": "-----BEGIN
CERTIFICATE-----
\nMIIETCCA0GgAwIBAgIBAgjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADCBzDELMA-
kGA1UEBhMCUK8x\n...\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",
    "private_key": "-----BEGIN RSA
PRIVATE KEY-----\nMIIETCA-
gIBAAKCAQEA/JERC+o1Uks-
vUfbzS5Yp77CN1S6RkKdZLPj12i9+ACzv/10y\n...\n-----END
RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n"
  },
  "tsa": {
    "certificate": "-----BEGIN
```

Element	Type	Description
		<pre> CERTIFICATE----- \nMIIEWTCCA0GgAwIBAgIBAjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQ0FADCBzDELMA- kGA1UEBhMCUK8x\n...\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",       "private_key": "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\nMIIEo- gIBA AKCAQEA/JERC+o1Uks- vUfbzS5Yp77CN1S6RkdkZLPj12i9+ACzv/10y\n...\n-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n"     }   }, </pre>
ca	JSON object	The certificate of SPS's internal Certificate Authority.:
webserv- er	JSON object	The SSL certificate of SPS's web and REST interface.
tsa	JSON object	The certificate of SPS's internal Timestamping Authority.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
401	WebGuiOrRpcApiConfigInProgress	Web based or RPC API configuration is in progress — another client is connected to SPS. You can see the IP address of the client in the details key of the response, for example:

```

{
  "error": {
    "details": {
      "user":

```



Code	Description	Notes
		<pre> "admin@10.30.255.70"   },   "message": "Web based or RPC API configuration is in progress.",   "type": "WebGuiOrRp- cApiConfigInProgress"   },   "meta": {     "href": "/api/setup",     "next": "/api/transaction",     "parent": "/api",     "remaining_seconds": 0   } } </pre>
401	ConfigurationAlreadyInitialized	<p>The Welcome Wizard was already successfully completed on this SPS.</p> <pre> {   "error": {     "message": "The config- uration of the system is already initialized.",     "type": "Config- urationAlreadyInitialized"   },   "meta": {     "href": "/api/setup",     "parent": "/api",     "remaining_seconds": 0   } } </pre>

## Enable and configure analytics using REST

### Enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics

This endpoint allows you to enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics.

To enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics and analyze the behavior of your users, One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) requires a special license. Also, depending on the number of your users and sessions, the performance and sizing of SPS must be considered. If you are interested in One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, [contact our Sales Team](#), or your One Identity representative. For details on One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see the [One Identity One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics website](#). For details on enabling One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see [Safeguard for Privileged Analytics Configuration Guide](#).

#### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/analytics/
```

Querying this endpoint returns the true if One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics is enabled, false otherwise. For example:

```
{
  "body": {
    "enabled": false
  },
  "key": "analytics",
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
    "href": "/api/configuration/local_services/analytics",
    "last": "/api/configuration/local_services/user_web",
    "next": "/api/configuration/local_services/indexer",
```

```

    "parent": "/api/configuration/local_services",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/local_services/admin_web",
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}

```

## Enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics

To modify enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, you have to complete the following.

### Prerequisites

To enable One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics and analyze the behavior of your users, One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Sessions (SPS) requires a special license. Also, depending on the number of your users and sessions, the performance and sizing of SPS must be considered. If you are interested in One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, [contact our Sales Team](#), or your One Identity representative. For details on One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see the [One Identity One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics website](#). For details on enabling One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics, see [Safeguard for Privileged Analytics Configuration Guide](#).

For details on uploading a license, see [Upload a new license](#).

#### 1. Open a transaction.

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

#### 2. Change the enabled option to true.

PUT the enabled option with the true value as a JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/analytics/` endpoint. For example:

```

curl -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d '{"enabled": true}' -X POST
https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/local_services/analytics/

```

#### 3. Commit your changes.

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

### Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
200	OK	Updating the resource was successful
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The details section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

## Configure One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics

The `/api/configuration/policies/analytics` endpoint allows you to configure One Identity Safeguard for Privileged Analytics by adding and removing analytics policies.

### URL

```
GET https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics/
```

### Cookies

Cookie name	Description	Required	Values
session_id	Contains the authentication token of the user	Required	<p>The value of the session ID cookie received from the REST server in the authentication response, for example, <code>a1f71d030e657634730b9e887cb59a5e56162860</code>. For details on authentication, see <a href="#">Authenticate to the SPS REST API</a> on page 19.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This session ID refers to the connection between the REST client and the SPS REST API. It is not related to the sessions that SPS records (and which also have a session ID, but in a different format)..</p>

## Sample request

The following command lists the analytics policies configured.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics/
```

The following command retrieves the properties of a specific policy.

```
curl --cookie cookies https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics/<policy-key>
```

## Response

The following is a sample response received when listing analytics policies.

For details of the meta object, see [Message format](#) on page 10.

```
{
  "items": [
    {
      "key": "9316362595a747b24d295e",
      "meta": {"href":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e"}
    }, {
      "key": "9316362595a747b24d295f",
      "meta": {"href":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295f"}
    }
  ]
}
{
  "meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/usermapping_policies",
    "next": "/api/configuration/policies/audit_policies",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies",
    "previous": "/api/configuration/policies/aa_plugin_instances",
    "remaining_seconds": 599,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

When retrieving the endpoint of a specific analytics policy, the response is the following.

```
{
  "body": {
    "name": "my_analytics_policy",
    "scoring": {
      "command": "trust",
```

```

        "fis": "disable",
        "hostlogin": "use",
        "keystroke": "trust",
        "logintime": "use",
        "mouse": "disable",
        "windowtitle": "disable"
    }
},
"key": "9316362595a747b24d295e",
"meta": {
    "first": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "last": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "next": null,
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics",
    "previous": null,
    "remaining_seconds": 600,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
}

```

Element	Type	Description
body, or items when a list is returned	Top-level element (string)	Contains the properties of the analytics policy.
name	string	The unique name of the policy. This name is also displayed on the SPS web interface. It cannot contain whitespaces.
scoring	Top-level element	Scoring settings for analytics.
key	string	Top-level element, contains the ID of the policy.

Elements of scoring	Type	Description
command	string	Contains one of the following values:
fis	string	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disable: The algorithm is not used and is therefore not scoring session data.</li> <li>use: The algorithm is used and is therefore scoring session data. The highest and lowest scores given by this algorithm are ignored when aggregating scores.</li> <li>trust: The algorithm is used and is therefore scoring session data. The highest and lowest scores given by this algorithm are taken into account when aggregating scores.</li> </ul>
hostlogin	string	
keystroke	string	
logintime	string	
mouse	string	
windowtitle	string	

## Add an analytics policy

To add an analytics policy, complete the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Create the JSON object for the new analytics policy.**

POST the JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

If the POST request is successful, when querying `/api/configuration/policies/analytics`, the response includes the key of the new analytics policy. For example:

```
{
  "key": "1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
  "meta": {
    "href": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics/1e089e2a-76b4-4079-94e3-c83ebc74dc2e",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics",
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Modify an analytics policy

To modify an analytics policy, complete the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **Modify the JSON object of the analytics policy.**

PUT the modified JSON object to the `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics/<policy-key>` endpoint. You can find a detailed description of the available parameters listed in [Element](#).

3. **Commit your changes.**

For more information, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Delete an analytics policy

To delete an analytics policy, complete the following steps.

1. **Open a transaction.**

For more information, see [Open a transaction](#) on page 29.

2. **DELETE the JSON object of the analytics policy.**

DELETE the JSON object using the ID of the object as the key: `https://<IP-address-of-SPS>/api/configuration/policies/analytics/<policy-key>`. For details on how to delete an object, see [Delete an object](#) on page 43.

If the DELETE request is successful, when querying `/api/configuration/policies/analytics`, the response includes the key of the deleted analytics policy. For example:

```
{
  "meta": {
    "first":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "href":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "last":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "next":
"/api/configuration/policies/analytics/9316362595a747b24d295e",
    "parent": "/api/configuration/policies/analytics",
    "previous": null,
    "transaction": "/api/transaction"
  }
}
```

3. Commit your changes to actually delete the object from SPS. For details, see [Commit a transaction](#) on page 31.

## Status and error codes

The following table lists the typical status and error codes for this request. For a complete list of error codes, see [Application level error codes](#) on page 37.

Code	Description	Notes
201	Created	The new resource was successfully created.
400	SemanticError	The request to create an object has failed due to semantic errors in the configuration.
401	Unauthenticated	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the



Code	Description	Notes
		client is not authenticated and the resource requires authorization to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
403	Unauthorized	The requested resource cannot be retrieved because the client is not authorized to access it. The <code>details</code> section contains the path that was attempted to be accessed, but could not be retrieved.
404	NotFound	The requested object does not exist.

# About us

---

One Identity solutions eliminate the complexities and time-consuming processes often required to govern identities, manage privileged accounts and control access. Our solutions enhance business agility while addressing your IAM challenges with on-premises, cloud and hybrid environments.

# Contacting us

For sales and other inquiries, such as licensing, support, and renewals, visit <https://www.oneidentity.com/company/contact-us.aspx>.

# Technical support resources

Technical support is available to One Identity customers with a valid maintenance contract and customers who have trial versions. You can access the Support Portal at <https://support.oneidentity.com/>.

The Support Portal provides self-help tools you can use to solve problems quickly and independently, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The Support Portal enables you to:

- Submit and manage a Service Request
- View Knowledge Base articles
- Sign up for product notifications
- Download software and technical documentation
- View how-to videos at [www.YouTube.com/OneIdentity](http://www.YouTube.com/OneIdentity)
- Engage in community discussions
- Chat with support engineers online
- View services to assist you with your product